APPENDIX D

Supplemental Information

Appendix D – Supplemental Information

The City of Antioch respectfully requests that the information and reports listed below and attached to these comments be included in the Administrative Record for this matter.

Bernal, Ron, P.E. 2013. "Preliminary review of BDCP model scenarios and concern about definition of "existing condition"." Letter to Jerry Meral and Dale Hoffman-Floerke. Antioch, California: Department of Public Works. April 29, 2013.

CCWD, 2010, Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay: A summary of historical reviews, reports, analyses and measurements; Technical Report WR10-001, available at http://www.ccwater.com/salinity/HistoricalSalinityReport-2010Feb.pdf.

City of Antioch 2010. "Summary of Historical Freshwater Availability at Antioch." SWRCB Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding: March 22, 2010.

Harrington, Phil 2010. "Antioch's Concerns regarding the Bay Delta Conservation Plan (BDCP)." Letter to Phil Isenberg, Joe Grindstaff, Lester Snow, David Hayes, and Karen Scarborough. Antioch, CA: City of Antioch. November 15, 2010. Accessible at <http://archive.deltacouncil.ca.gov/docs/correspondence/11_2010/City_of_Antioch_111510.pdf>

Harrington, Phil. "Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding." Letter to Phillip Crader. Antioch, CA: City of Antioch. February 16, 2010. Accessible at <http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/deltaflow/docs/exhibits/antioch/coa_exh1_coverletter.pdf>

Harrington, Phil 2011. Letter to Jerry Meral. Antioch, CA: City of Antioch. May 19, 2011.

Means, Thomas. "Salt Water Problem: San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers. San Francisco, CA: Thos. H. Means, Consulting Engineer - 1928. p. 57.

Paulsen, Susan C., Ph.D. P.E. 2012. "Bay-Delta Workshop 1 – Ecosystem Changes and LSZ." Letter to the State Water Resources Control Board. Pasadena, CA: Flow Science Incorporated, Project 064136. August 7, 2012. Accessible at <http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/docs/cmnt081712/susan_paulsen.pdf>

Paulsen, Susan C., Ph.D., P.E. 2012. "Bay-Delta Workshop 3 – Analytical Tools for Evaluating the Water Supply, Hydrodynamic, and Hydropower Effects of the Bay-Delta Plan." Letter to the State Water Resources Control Board. Pasadena, CA: Flow Science Incorporated, Project 064136. November 11, 2012.

Paulsen, Susan C., Ph.D., P.E. 2010. "Delta Flow Criteria Closing Comments." Letter to the State Water Resources Control Board. Pasadena, CA: Flow Science Incorporated, Project 064136. April 14, 2010. Accessible at <http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/deltaflow/docs/closing_comments/city_antioch_closing.pdf>

Preston, Al, Ph.D., P.E. 2012 "Addendum to City of Antioch submittal for the Bay-Delta Workshop 1 – Ecosystem Changes and LSZ / Excerpts from Three Relevant Historical Documents." Letter to the State Water Resources Control Board. Pasadena, CA: Flow Science Incorporated, Project 064136. August 16, 2012. Accessible at <http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/docs/cmnt081712/al_preston.pdf>

April 29, 2013

Sent by email and regular mail

Jerry Meral
Deputy Secretary, California Natural Resources Agency
1416 Ninth Street, Suite 1311
Sacramento, CA 95814

Dale Hoffman-Floerke
Chief Deputy Director, California Department of Water Resources
1416 Ninth Street, Room 115-2
Sacramento, CA 95814

Subject: **Preliminary review of BDCP model scenarios and concern about definition of "existing condition"**

Dear Mr. Meral and Ms. Hoffman-Floerke:

The City of Antioch and its consultants are currently in the process of reviewing the potential effects of the proposed BDCP project on salinity at Antioch's drinking water intake in the western Delta. Our review of the Effects Analysis (Chapter 5 of the BDCP Draft, released in March 2013) indicates that there appear to be two different scenarios (EBC1 and EBC2) that have been modeled to represent "existing biological conditions."The main difference between these two scenarios appears to be whether the Delta outflows are managed to achieve the Fall X2 provision (hereafter referred to as "Fall X2") of the 2008 US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Opinion (the "2008 BiOp"). It appears that EBC1 does not include Fall X2, whereas EBC2 does include Fall X2. Because the 2008 BiOp represents the current legal requirement to operate to achieve Fall X2, the existing or baseline condition should include Fall X2 (i.e., EBC2 is the legally required baseline condition).

Furthermore, Antioch and its consultants have received from DWR modeling results obtained using the DSM2 model. Comparison of the EBC2 scenario with historical field data measured at Antioch indicated good agreement between model results and measured historic salinity; our analysis indicates that EBC2 is an appropriate scenario to use for an "existing condition." The modeling results obtained to date from DWR do not include the EBC1 scenario (we understand that these will be sent to us shortly), and as such no direct comparison has yet been made. However, the results provided in the Effects Analysis (e.g., Figures 5C.A-104 through 5C.A-107 of Attachment 5C.A) indicate that the exclusion of Fall X2 in the EBC1 scenario results in substantial increases in electrical conductivity (EC, a measure of salinity) in the western Delta in the fall of 1978, 1980, 1984, and 1986. These periods of higher EC are not consistent with field measurements, thereby indicating that EBC1 is not a technically appropriate scenario to use for an "existing condition."

As we have noted in prior comments on the BDCP process and in testimony to the State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB), salinity levels in the western Delta, including at Antioch's intake, will be substantially higher if Fall X2 is not included in project operations. Impacts to water quality at Antioch's intake are particularly severe in the summer and fall months of above-normal and wet years, and model results indicate these impacts are the result of the BDCP project (and not sea level rise).

In summary, Antioch is concerned that two "existing condition" scenarios (EBC1 and EBC2) appear to have been modeled, and in particular that EBC1 (which excludes Fall X2 requirements) does not accurately represent existing or baseline conditions. Our analysis at this point indicates that EBC2 (which includes Fall X2 requirements) is both legally and technically appropriate to use to describe existing or baseline conditions in the forthcoming EIR/S and in other discussions and analyses of the proposed BDCP project. Use of EBC1 (without Fall X2) would be neither legally nor technically appropriate, and could result in artificially misstating the anticipated impacts of the BDCP project. Thus, Antioch requests that Fall X2 be included in the model runs performed to describe both the existing/baseline and project conditions.

Please contact me at (925) 779-6820 or rbernal@ci.antioch.ca.us if you have any questions or would like to discuss these comments.

Sincerely,

Ron Bernal

Ron Bernal, P.E.
Public Works Director/City Engineer

cc: BG Heiland, California Department of Water Resources, 1416 Ninth Street, Room 115-2
Sacramento, CA 95814

Mayor and City Council Members
Jim Jakel, City Manager
Lynn Tracy Nerland, City Attorney
Matt Emrick, Legal Counsel
Susan Paulson, Flow Science
Ann Spaulding

Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay

A summary of historical reviews, reports, analyses and measurements

Water Resources Department

Contra Costa Water District

Concord, California

February 2010

Technical Memorandum WR10-001

Acknowledgements

CCWD would like to thank the City of Antioch for their contribution towards funding a technical review of CCWD's draft report "Trends in Hydrology and Salinity in Suisun Bay and the Western Delta" (June 2007); their review substantially improved the work and led to the final report "Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay". CCWD is grateful to the many reviewers including Richard Denton, Matthew Emrick, Gopi Goteti, Phil Harrington, E. John List, Susan Paulsen, David Pene, Mat Rogers, and Peter Vorster. We also thank the following for sharing their data and analyses: Roger Byrne, Chris Enright, Spreck Rosekrans, and Scott Starratt, and we thank Ann Spaulding for her contributions.

Foreword - Establishing the Historical Baseline

The watershed of the Sacramento–San Joaquin Delta (Delta) provides drinking water to more than 23 million Californians as well as irrigation water for millions of acres of agriculture in the Central Valley. The Delta itself is a complex estuarine ecosystem, with populations of many native species now in serious decline. The Delta estuary as we know it began to form about 6,000 years ago, following the end of the last ice age. Because the estuary is connected to the Pacific Ocean through San Francisco Bay, seawater intrusion causes the salinity of Suisun Bay and the Delta to vary depending on hydrological conditions. This seawater intrusion into the Delta affects estuarine species as well as drinking water and irrigation water supplies.

Successful restoration of the Delta ecosystem requires an understanding of the conditions under which native species evolved. Contra Costa Water District's report on "Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay" presents a detailed review of more than 100 years of studies, monitoring data, scientific reports, and modeling analyses that establish an historical record of the salinity conditions in the Western Delta and Suisun Bay.

Executive Summary

The historical record and published studies consistently show the Delta is now managed at a salinity level much higher than would have occurred under natural conditions. Human activities, including channelization of the Delta, elimination of tidal marsh, and water diversions, have resulted in increased salinity levels in the Delta during the past 150 years.

Eighty years ago, Thomas H. Means wrote ("*Salt Water Problem, San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers*," April 1928, pp 9-10):

> "Under natural conditions, Carquinez Straits marked, approximately, the boundary between salt and fresh water in the upper San Francisco Bay and delta region of the two tributary rivers—the Sacramento and San Joaquin. Ordinarily salt water was present below the straits and fresh water was present above. Native vegetation in the tide marshes was predominately of salt water types around San Pablo Bay and of fresh water types around Suisun Bay….
>
> The definite statement that salt water under natural conditions did not penetrate higher upstream than the mouth of the river, except in the driest years and then only for a few days at a time, is warranted….
>
> At present [1928] salt water reaches Antioch every year, in two-thirds of the years running further [sic] upstream. It is to be expected that it will continue to do so in the future, even in the years of greatest runoff. In other words, the penetration of salt water has become a permanent phenomenon in the lower river region.
>
> The cause of this change in salt water condition is due almost entirely to the works of man."

In 1928, Thomas Means had limited data over a short historical period from which to draw these conclusions. Nonetheless, his conclusions remain accurate and have been confirmed by numerous subsequent studies, including paleosalinity records that reveal salinity conditions in the western Delta as far back as 2,500 years ago. The paleosalinity studies indicate that the last 100 years are among the most saline of periods in the past 2,500 years. Paleoclimatology and paleosalinity studies indicate that the prior 1,500 years (going back to about 4,000 years ago) were even wetter and less saline in San Francisco Bay and the Delta. The recent increase in salinity began after the Delta freshwater marshes had been drained, after the Delta was channelized and after large-scale upstream diversions of water, largely for agricultural purposes, had significantly reduced flows from the tributaries into the Delta. It has continued, even after the construction of reservoirs that have been used in part to manage salinity intrusion.

Increased Salinity Intrusion into the Delta

Studies and salinity measurements confirm that despite salinity management efforts, Delta salinity is now at or above the highest salinity levels found in the past 2,500 to 4,000 years. Under equivalent hydrological conditions, the boundary between salt and fresh water is now 3 to 15 miles farther into the Delta than it would have been without the increased diversions of fresh water that have taken place in the past 150 years.

Reservoir operations artificially manage salinity intrusion to conditions that are saltier than had been experienced prior to the early 1900's. While these managed conditions are certainly fresher than would occur in today's altered system if operated without any salinity management, they are still saltier than what the Delta experienced under similar hydrological conditions in the past. While the Delta is being managed to a somewhat acceptable saline condition to meet many beneficial uses, it is still managed at a more saline condition than would have occurred prior to the anthropogenic changes of the past 150 years.

For example, the 1928-1934 drought was one of the driest periods in the past 1,000 years (Meko *et al.*, 2001a), and occurred after tidal marshes within the Delta had been reclaimed and water diversions began removing substantial amounts of fresh water from the Bay-Delta system. Nonetheless, the Delta freshened during the winter in those drought years. This winter freshening of the Delta has not occurred during recent droughts. While salinity intrusion into the Delta was previously only seen in the driest years, significant salinity intrusion now occurs in nearly every year – exceptions are only found in the wettest conditions.

Changed Variation in Salinity

The variability of fresh and saline conditions in the Delta has considerably changed because of upstream and in-Delta water diversions and water exports (Enright and Culberson, 2009). This change in variability results largely from the lack of fresh conditions in Suisun Bay and the western Delta, especially in the winter and spring. Restoring a variable salinity regime that more closely approximates conditions prior to the early 1900's would require much higher flows and much fresher conditions than current management practices provide, with larger outflows in the fall in most years and much larger outflows in the late winter and spring in all years.

Key Conclusions

The major conclusions of this study are:

1. Salinity intrusion during the last 100 years has been among the highest levels over the past 2,500 years. The Delta has been predominantly a freshwater tidal marsh for the last 2,500 years.
2. Human activities during the last 150 years, including channelization of the Delta, elimination of tidal marsh, construction of deep ship channels, and diversion of water, have resulted in the increased salinity levels in the Delta.

3. Conditions in the Delta during the early 1900's were much fresher than current conditions for hydrologically similar periods. Salinity typically intrudes 3 to 15 miles farther into the Delta today.
4. The historical record and published studies uniformly demonstrate and conclude the Delta is now managed at a salinity level that is much higher than would have occurred under pre-1900 conditions. Operation of new reservoirs and water diversion facilities for salinity management reduces salinity intrusion somewhat, but the levels still exceed pre-1900 salinities.
5. Seasonal and inter-annual variation in salinity has also been changed; however, this change is largely the result of reduced freshwater flows into the Delta. At any given location in the western Delta and Suisun Bay, the percentage of time during the year when fresh water is present has been greatly reduced or, in some cases, largely eliminated.

Background

Flows and water quality in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta (Delta) are strongly influenced by freshwater inflow from the rivers, by the tides in San Francisco Bay and by salinity from Bay waters. Prior to human influence, the historical distribution of salinity in the Delta was controlled primarily by the seasonal and inter-annual distribution of precipitation, the geomorphology of the Bay and Delta, daily tides, the spring-neap[1] tidal cycle, and the mean sea level at Golden Gate. Extended wet and dry periods are both evident in the historical record. Since about 1860, a number of morphological changes to the Delta landscape and operational changes of reservoirs and water diversions have affected flows and the distribution of salinity within the Delta.

Between 1860 and 1920, there was significant modification of the Delta by humans:
(i) marsh land was reclaimed,
(ii) hydraulic mining caused extensive deposition and then erosion of sediment, and,
(iii) Delta channels were widened, interconnected and deepened.

Large-scale reservoir construction began in about 1920 and continued through the 1970's, changing the timing and magnitude of flows to the Delta. Large volumes of water began to be diverted for agricultural use upstream of and within the Delta in the same time period. In more recent times, California's Delta water resources have been extensively managed to meet the water supply needs of the State's municipal, industrial, and agricultural water users, with attempts made to also provide flow and water quality conditions to meet fishery needs.

Proposals for significant additional alteration of the Delta and of flows within the Delta are currently being developed as part of the Bay-Delta Conservation Plan process[2]. To understand the effect of those proposals, it is important to accurately establish historical conditions. For example, for ecological restoration to be successful, it is necessary to establish and understand the conditions to which native species have previously adapted and survived in order to predict their response to future changes in climate or water management. This report uses available data and modeling to examine the consequences of structural changes in the Delta (channelization, channel dredging), increased diversions of water upstream of the Delta, reservoir operations, climate and sea level effects, and other factors on Delta salinity.

Objective

The objective of this report is to answer two major questions regarding the historical extent of fresh water and salinity in the western Delta and Suisun Bay:

I. What was the extent of fresh water and what were the salinity conditions prior to large-scale reservoir operations and water diversions (i.e., prior to early 1900's) and prior to structural changes in the Delta (i.e., prior to the 1860's)?

II. What are the effects of large-scale water management practices (reservoir operations and diversions) on salinity conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay?

Approach

Available data were used to characterize historical and present-day fresh water extent and salinity intrusion into the Delta. The data examined in this report include paleohistorical records (over geologic time scales) of river flow and salinity (Section 2), instrumental observations of hydrology and salinity (Section 3), and literature reports on the extent of fresh water in the Delta (Section 4). Additional details and supplemental information are presented in the Appendices to this report.

---

[1] During a spring tide, the gravitational forces from the sun and moon are largely the same direction and the high-low tidal range is greatest. During a neap tide, the gravitational forces sun and moon are largely not aligned and the tidal range is the lowest. The spring-neap tidal cycle, from strong spring tides through weak neap tides and back to spring tides, in San Francisco Bay has a period of about 14 days.

[2] www.baydeltaconservationplan.com

Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay

Tables

Figures

Acronyms

C&H	California and Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation
CCWD	Contra Costa Water District
CDEC	California Data Exchange Center
Cl	Chloride concentration
CVP	Central Valley Project
DPW	Department of Public Works
DSM2	Delta Simulation Model 2
DWR	California Department of Water Resources
DWSC	Deep water ship channel
EC	Electrical conductivity
ENSO	El Niño/Southern Oscillation
ESA	Endangered Species Act
IEP	Interagency Ecological Program
M&I	Municipal and Indutrial
NDO	Net Delta Outflow
PDO	Pacific Decadal Oscillation
PPIC	Public Policy Institute of California
SWRCB	State Water Resource Control Board
SRI	Sacramento River Index
STORET	Storage and Retrieval
SWP	State Water Project
TBI	The Bay Institute
TDS	Total Dissolved Solids

Units

AF	Acre-feet
MAF	Million acre-feet
TAF	Thousand acre-ft
µS/cm	MicroSiemens per centimeter, a measure of EC
cfs	Cubic feet per second
mg/L	Milligrams per liter
ppm	Parts per million
ppt	Parts per thousand

1. Introduction

1.1. Background

The Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta (Delta) is fed by fresh water from the Sacramento River and the San Joaquin River basins (Figure 1-1). The Delta is connected to the San Francisco Bay through Suisun and San Pablo Bays, and the movement of water back and forth between the Delta and the Bay results in mixing between saline water from the Pacific Ocean and fresh water from the rivers flowing into the Delta. The extent to which salty ocean water intrudes into the Delta is a function of natural processes such as ocean tides and precipitation and runoff from the upstream watersheds. It has also been greatly influenced by anthropogenic activities (e.g. construction of artificial river channels, removal of tidal marsh, removal of floodplain connections to channels, deepening of channels for navigation purposes, reservoir storage and release operations, and water diversions).

Proposals for significant additional alteration of Delta channels and marshland, of flows within the Delta, and of reoperation of upstream reservoirs are currently being developed as part of the Bay-Delta Conservation Plan, which builds upon earlier work by the Delta Vision Blue Ribbon Task Force[3], and others (e.g., see Lund *et al.*, 2007). To understand the context and effect of those proposals, it is important to accurately understand the historical conditions previously experienced by Delta species.

An analysis of the salinity trends and variability in northern San Francisco Bay since the 1920's and the factors controlling those salinity trends has recently been published (Enright and Culberson, 2009), with a focus on a comparison of pre-1968 salinity and flows with post-1968 conditions. This report includes analysis and review of reports, data and information from the period prior to Enright and Culberson's analysis, and includes the review of salinity trends using paleohistorical data.

Historically, reproduction of most species in the Bay-Delta (biotic production phase) occurred during the high-flow periods (winter and spring) and biotic reduction occurred in the low-flow periods (summer and fall) (Baxter *et al.*, 2008). Multi-year wet periods most likely resulted in population increases, whereas drought periods likely resulted in reduced reproduction and increased predation. The recent report on Pelagic Organism Decline (POD, Baxter *et al.*, 2008) indicated that reduced flow variability under the current water management conditions may have exacerbated the effects of predation on the population abundance of pelagic fish species in the Bay-Delta estuary. Native species of the Bay-Delta system adapted to the historical salinity conditions that occurred prior to large-scale water management practices and physical changes in the Delta. The historical salinity conditions in the Delta provide insight into the response of fish species to proposed ecosystem restoration actions, and the response of species to future changes in climate or water management.

---

[3] Delta Vision Blue Ribbon Task Force was appointed by California Governor Arnold Schwarzenegger in February 2007 and adopted the Delta Vision Strategic Plan in October 2008.

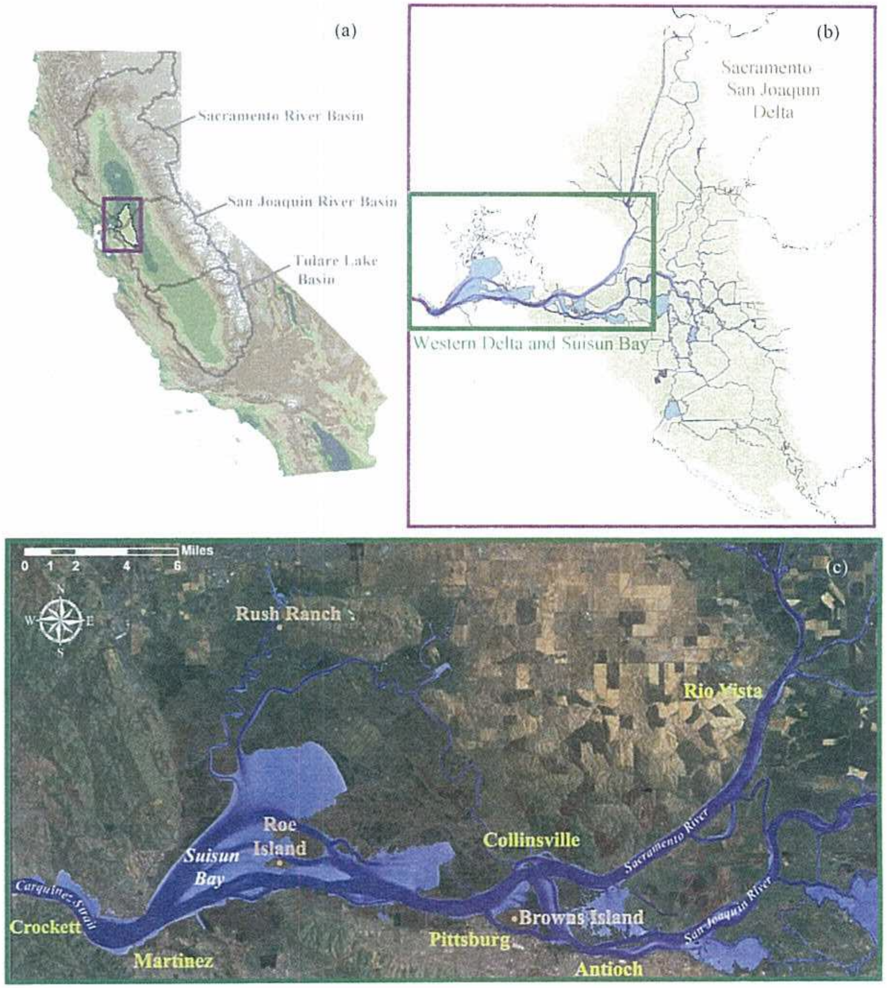


Figure 1-1 – Map

(a) Topographical map of California, with outlines of the Sacramento River, San Joaquin River, and Tulare Lake basins; purple rectangle indicates the extent of the inset in panel (b). (b) Sacramento San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay region; green rectangle indicates the extent of the Western Delta and Suisun Bay enlarged in panel (c). (c) Extent of salinity evaluations considered within this study, including names of locations referenced throughout this report.

The salinity concentrations in San Francisco Bay and the Delta are the result of tides that move seawater into the system and are controlled in large part by the amount of fresh water passing through the system (Denton, 1993; Uncles and Peterson, 1996; Knowles *et al.*, 1998). The salinity distribution is driven by the motion of the tides, which convey ocean water into the system on the flood tide and draw a mixture of ocean and river water back out again on the ebb tide. These tides act on natural diurnal (repeating twice per day) and spring-neap (repeating every 14 days) cycles driven by the gravitational forces of the sun and moon (Oltmann and Simpson, 1997; Burau *et al.*, 1999).

Other factors affecting Bay-Delta salinity (discussed in Appendix A) may be smaller but are not insignificant. When comparing historical salinity conditions in the Bay-Delta watershed, it is often helpful to compare periods with similar hydrological conditions so that the changes due to other factors can be discerned. This will reveal if there is an anomalous change in salinity, even if the specific cause of that change in salinity is not known.

Major anthropogenic modifications to the Delta that affect salinity intrusion began with the European settlement of the region and can be classified into two categories: physical modifications of the landscape (e.g., removal of tidal marsh, separation of natural floodplains from valley rivers, construction of permanent artificial river channels, and land-use changes) and water management activities (e.g. diversion of water for direct agriculture, municipal, or industrial use, and reservoir storage and release operations).

As shown in Figure 1-2, tidal marsh acreage in the Delta decreased significantly from nearly 346,000 acres in the 1870's to less than 25,000 acres in the 1920's and has since continued to decrease. Even after hydraulic mining for gold was banned in California in 1884, large quantities of mining debris continued to be carried by runoff into the Delta, where it was deposited as sediment, filling channels in the Delta and Suisun Bay. Between 1887 and 1920, Suisun Bay became an erosional environment and continued to lose sediment through 1990. Enright and Culberson (2009) discuss the effects of the changes in Suisun Bay bathymetry on salinity intrusion. Major dredging projects on the main Delta channels to create the Stockton and Sacramento Deep Water Ship Channels (DWSC) have also changed how flows and, therefore, salinity are distributed throughout the Delta.

Each of these factors has changed the salinity regime: loss of tidal marsh lands has allowed increased tidal energy deeper into the Delta, increasing tidal flows and salinity dispersion (Enright and Culberson, 2009), net erosion and increasing depth within Suisun Bay likely increased dispersive transport of salt up the estuary (Enright and Culberson, 2009), and deeper channels allow increased salinity intrusion due to increased baroclinic circulation and increased tidal flow and dispersion..

However, these physical modifications generally have had less effect on salinity intrusion in the Delta than the major water management activities that have resulted in large-scale diversion of water for reservoir storage and agricultural, domestic, and industrial water use (Nichols *et al*, 1986; Knowles, 2002). As will be seen in data presented in this document, early diversions before large-scale storage projects resulted in greatly increased salinity intrusion, especially in the summer irrigation season, peaking in September. Later, reservoir operations reduced salinity intrusion in the summer and fall, but increased it in the winter and spring, up until the mid-1980's. Subsequent water operations have resulted in increased salinity intrusion year round.

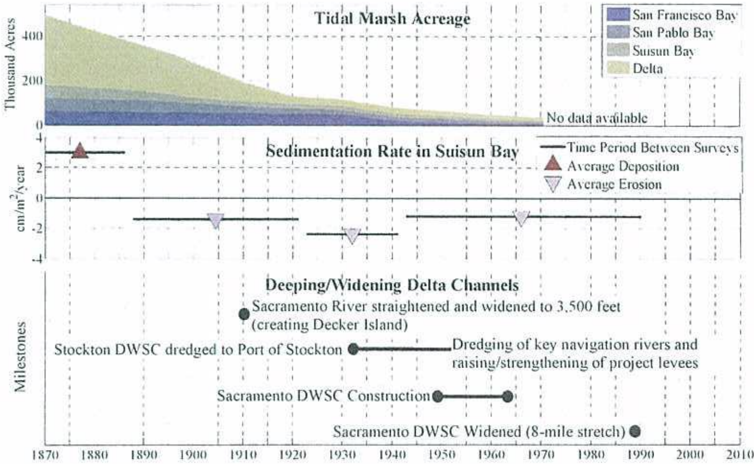


Figure 1-2 – Chronology of anthropogenic modifications to the Bay-Delta landscape

Bay-Delta landscape has undergone significant changes since the mid-1800's. Tidal marsh acreage (top panel) has been significantly reduced (data from Atwater, et al., 1979). Suisun Bay received a pulse of sediment from hydraulic mining in the late 1800's (middle panel), but lost sediment from 1887 to 1990 (data from Cappiella et al., 1999). Numerous efforts to widen and deepen the main channels within the Delta have occurred throughout the 20th Century (bottom panel).

The largest reservoir of the federal Central Valley Project (CVP), Lake Shasta, was completed in 1945, and the largest reservoir of the State Water Project (SWP), Lake Oroville, was completed in 1968. Total upstream reservoir storage capacity increased from 1 MAF in 1920 to more than 30 MAF by 1979. The CVP began exporting water from the southern Delta through Jones Pumping Plant (formerly known as the Tracy Pumping Plant) in 1951, and the SWP began exports through Banks Pumping Plant in 1968. By 1990, the combined export of water from the southern Delta through the Banks and Jones Pumping Plants was about 6 MAF per year.

Figure 1-3 shows that the greatest increase in upstream reservoir storage occurred from the 1920's through the 1960's. Prior to the construction of major water management reservoirs, irrigated acreage grew to about 4 MAF. The construction of the reservoirs allowed irrigated acreage to increase to about 9 MAF. Since 1951, when the first south Delta export facility was completed, annual diversions from the Delta have increased to a maximum of about 8 MAF; total annual diversions from the system are estimated at up to 15 MAF.

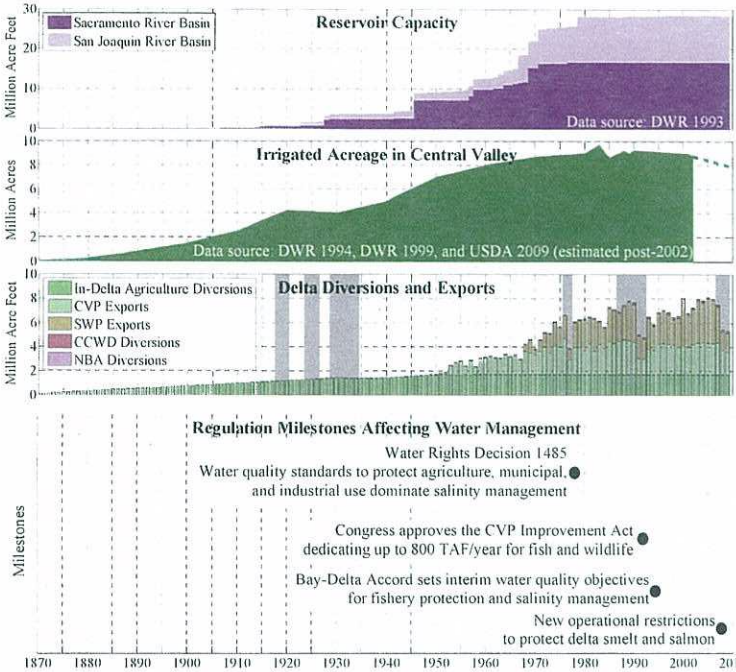


Figure 1-3 – Chronology of anthropogenic activities that affect water management
Reservoirs (top panel) and irrigated crops in the Central Valley (second panel) alter the timing and magnitude of water flow to reach the Delta. Diversions and exports within the Delta (third panel) further reduce the amount of water to flow through the Delta to Suisun Bay. Regulations (bottom panel) require modifications to water management activities to meet specific flow and water quality objectives.

Figure 1-3 also presents the timeline for recent regulatory milestones that have affected Delta water quality. Salinity management was dominated by water quality standards to protect Delta agriculture and municipal and industrial (M&I) uses in the 1978 Water Quality Control Plan and State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) Decision 1485. The Bay-Delta Accord of 1994 and subsequent SWRCB Water Rights Decision 1641 made fishery protection the dominant factor for salinity management with new estuarine habitat or "X2 Standards"[4] from February through June, with minimum outflows for the remainder of the

year. The relationship between X2 and estuarine habitat is discussed in detail in Jassby *et al.* (1995).

These regulations apply throughout the year and have modified how the large-scale water management reservoirs and export facilities are operated. For instance, delta smelt was listed as a threatened species under the federal Endangered Species Act in 1993, and Sacramento River winter-run salmon was listed as endangered in 1994. The subsequent biological opinions, 1994 Bay-Delta Accord, and the adoption of a new water quality control plan by the State Water Resources Control Board in 1995, required increased reservoir releases in some months for temperature control in the Sacramento River below Shasta and for salinity control in Suisun Bay. They also applied additional limits on pumping at the export facilities in the south Delta.

Changes in water diversions and reservoir operations have altered the magnitude and timing of river flows to the Delta, and anthropogenic modifications to the Delta landscape have altered the interaction of fresh water from the rivers with salt water from the ocean, thus changing patterns of salinity intrusion into the Delta.

1.2. Comparing Historical Conditions

Flow and salinity conditions prior to human interference varied according to seasonal and annual hydrological conditions, short-term and long-term drought cycles and other natural changes, so "natural" conditions include variability that must be considered in any analysis. Hydroclimatic variability is described by "unimpaired" runoff, which represents the natural water production of a river basin, unaltered by water diversions, reservoir storage and operation, and export of water to or import of water from other basins.

As discussed above, large-scale water management operations during the last 100 years superimposed on the anthropogenic modifications to the Delta landscape have significantly changed Delta conditions. It is possible to remove the effect that water management operations have had on flows and generate a corresponding set of unimpaired flows. However, it is not possible, without complex assumptions and modeling, to also remove the additional effect of the land use, channel and tidal marsh modifications to the Delta.

The historical conditions presented in this report have been determined from records in paleoclimatic fossils and measured directly with various scientific instruments. The paleoclimatic data start well before human influence, but continue through the 20th Century when anthropogenic modifications became significant.

Because of the natural hydroclimatic variability, no past historical period may fully represent "natural" conditions. Therefore, this report summarizes the available historical salinity information with reference to the time period of the observations, and then compares each period to the salinity regime during present day periods with similar upstream unimpaired hydrology. Where there are significant changes in salinity, despite similar upstream unimpaired hydrology, other factors such as landscape modifications and water management operations must be contributing factors.

---

[4] X2 is the distance, in kilometers from the Golden Gate, to the location of the 2 part per thousand salinity line. A larger X2 means salinity has intruded farther into the Delta.

1.3. *Objective*

The objective of this report is to answer two major questions regarding the historical extent of fresh water and salinity in the western Delta and Suisun Bay:

I. What was the extent of fresh water and what were the salinity conditions prior to large-scale reservoir operations and water diversions (i.e., prior to early 1900's) and prior to structural changes in the Delta (i.e., prior to the 1860's)?

II. What are the effects of large-scale water management practices (reservoir operations and diversions) on salinity conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay?

1.4. *Report Structure*

The remainder of this report is organized as follows:

Section 2: Paleoclimatic Evidence of the Last 10,000 Years

Estimated river flow data and salinity records for the past several thousand years have been obtained from paleoclimatic records, such as tree rings and sediment cores. These records capture the hydroclimatic variations over decadal and centennial time scales and are useful tools in understanding the freshwater flow and salinity regimes before modern instrumentation.

Section 3: Instrumental Observations of the Last 140 Years

Long-term precipitation and river runoff records from the 1870's to the present provide context for the salinity observations. Climatic variability of precipitation and runoff in the upper watershed has a significant influence on salinity intrusion, with greater salinity during dry periods and lower salinity during wet periods. If, for example, the salinity is greater or less than what would be expected based on the natural climatic variability, as measured by unimpaired runoff, other factors must be influencing salinity intrusion.

Reservoir operations, diversions and consumptive use (collectively termed "water management") alter the amount of runoff from the upper watershed that actually flows out of the Delta. Observations and common computer models are used to assess the effects of this water management on Net Delta Outflow (the net quantity of water flowing from the Delta to the Suisun Bay) and on salinity in the western Delta and Suisun Bay. Observations include measurements of salinity indicators by the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H) from the early 1900's and long-term monitoring data from the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP). Modeling tools include the DAYFLOW program from IEP, the DSM2 model from the California Department of Water Resources, the X2[5] equation (Kimmerer and Monismith, 1992) and Contra Costa Water District's salinity outflow model (also referred to as the G-model) (Denton, 1993; Denton and Sullivan, 1993).

Section 4: Qualitative Observations of Historical Freshwater Flow and Salinity Conditions

Qualitative observations on salinity conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay from an early water rights lawsuit and from various literature reports are discussed to provide a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the late 1800's and early 1900's. The 1920 lawsuit filed by the Town of Antioch against upstream irrigation districts alleged that the upstream water diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch (Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District, 1922). Briefings and testimony from the legal proceedings are indicative of the salinity conditions prevailing in the early 1900's, as are literature reports of conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay. These reports contain both qualitative observations and anecdotal information regarding historical salinity conditions. Because the proceedings were adversarial in nature, this report focuses on the testimony of the upstream interests, who were trying to demonstrate the extent of salinity intrusion in the Delta prior to their diverting water. Note that the Supreme Court did not base its final decision on the evidence of whether or not Antioch had continuous access to fresh water. The Court's decision was based on the State policy to irrigate as much land as possible for agriculture; the Court did not pass judgment on the accuracy of the testimony of either side.

Section 5: Conclusions

This section synthesizes the findings from Sections 2 through 4 and presents the overall conclusions regarding trends in the historical Delta salinity.

---

[5] X2 is defined as the distance from the Golden Gate to the 2 part-per-thousand isohaline (equivalent to a salinity of 2 grams of salt per kilogram of water), measured along the axis of the San Francisco Estuary. X2 is often used as an indicator of freshwater availability and fish habitat conditions in the Delta (Jassby *et al.*, 1995; Monismith, 1998).

2. Paleoclimatic Evidence of the Last 10,000 Years

Paleoclimatic evidence from the watershed of San Francisco Bay (Bay) and Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta (Delta), obtained from proxy information such as tree rings and sediment deposits, provides a history of conditions before modern direct instrumental observations. Evidence of major regional climatic events that represent long-term wet period and drought cycles will be discussed, followed by discussions of Delta watershed runoff and Delta salinity, as measured by flow and electrical conductivity instrumentation.

2.1. *Major Regional Climatic Events*

The modern Bay-Delta is relatively young in terms of geologic timescales. The estuary started forming around 8,000 to 10,000 years ago (Atwater *et al.* 1979), when rapid sea level rise allowed the ocean to enter the Golden Gate. At this time, there was no Bay or Delta, but simply river valleys. Rapid sea level rise continued, such that approximately 6,000 years ago, the outline of San Francisco Bay, including San Pablo Bay and Suisun Bay, resembled the modern extent. At about the same time, sea level rise slowed to a more moderate pace, allowing tidal marshes to begin to form.

Malamud-Roam *et al.* (2007) review paleoclimate studies in the Bay-Delta watershed, summarizing evidence of climate variability through the development of the present day Bay-Delta system (Table 2-1).

Table 2-1 – Climate during the evolution of the Bay-Delta estuary

Overview of precipitation, temperature, and sea level conditions during the last 10,000 years based on data from Malamud-Roam et al. (2007) and Meko et al. (2001). Time periods are given in terms of number of years ago (represented as age, a; or ka for 1,000 year ago) and the Common Era (BCE CE) calendar system. The shading indicates relatively dry periods.

Approximate Time Period	*Prevailing Climate and Geomorphology*
10 ka to 8 ka 8000 BCE to 6000 BCE	▪ Rapid sea level rise ▪ Ocean enters Golden Gate ▪ San Francisco Bay is just a river valley ▪ Cooler than 20th Century, but becoming warmer and drier
6 ka to 5 ka 4000 BCE to 3000 BCE	▪ Sea level rise slows to more moderate pace ▪ Outline of San Francisco Bay resembles modern extent ▪ Tidal marsh begins to form in the Delta ▪ Temperature reaches a maximum of the last 10,000 years ▪ Relatively dry conditions ▪ Central Valley floodplain system began to develop
4 ka to 2 ka 2000 BCE to 1 CE	▪ Cooling trend with increased precipitation ▪ Large flood occurred ~ 3,600 years ago (1600 BCE)

2 ka to 0.6 ka
1 CE to 1400 CE
	▪ Trend to more arid, dry conditions
	▪ Severe droughts:
	  ▪ 1,100 to 850 years ago (900 CE to 1150 CE)
	  ▪ 800 to 650 years ago (1200 CE to 1350 CE)

0.6 ka to 0.2 ka 1400 CE to 1800 CE	▪ Relatively cool and wet conditions ▪ Numerous episodes of extreme flooding ▪ Includes "Little Ice Age" (1400 CE to 1700 CE)

90 a to 50 a
1910 CE to 1950 CE
	▪ Dry period in the Sacramento River Basin.
	  ▪ Longest dry period in the last 420 years (34 years centered on the 1930's)
	  ▪ Driest 20-year period in the last 370 years (1917 CE to 1936 CE)

A number of scientific studies have used paleo-reconstruction techniques to obtain long-term (decadal, centennial and millennial time scale) records of river flow (e.g., Earle, 1993; Meko *et al.*, 2001) and salinity of the Bay and Delta (e.g., Ingram and DePaolo, 1993; Wells and Goman, 1995; Ingram *et al.*, 1996; May, 1999; Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Goman and Wells, 2000; Starratt, 2001; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004; Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2006; Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2007; and Goman *et al.*, 2008). The reconstructions described in the following sections focus on the 2,000 years before present. As indicated in Table 2-1, this period was relatively dry with two extreme regional droughts, followed by relatively cool and wet conditions during the "Little Ice Age," then by a return of dry conditions at the early part of the 20th Century.

2.2. *Reconstructed Unimpaired Sacramento River Flow*

Meko *et al.* (2001a,b) used tree-ring chronologies in statistical regression models to reconstruct time series of annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow[6] for approximately the past 1,100 years (for the period 869 CE – 1977 CE). As discussed in Section 1.2, unimpaired flow is an estimate of the flow that would occur in the basin without the effects of water management activities.

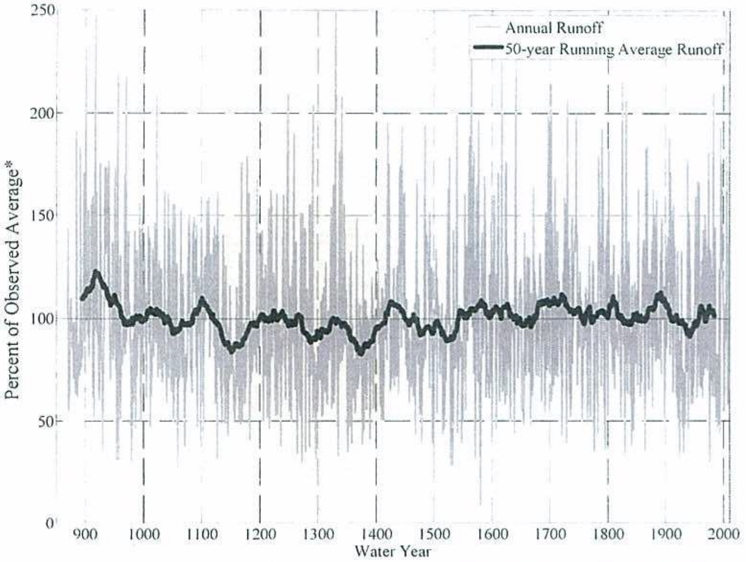
The 1,100-year record shows strong variability between individual water years (Figure 2-1), with annual flow ranging from approximately 8% of average to 265% of average, where average is defined here for practical purposes as the average observed unimpaired flow from

---

[6] Meko *et al.* (2001a) used the annual unimpaired flow record for the Sacramento River provided by the Department of Water Resources, which is the sum of the following: flow of the Sacramento River at Bend Bridge, inflow of the Feather River to Lake Oroville, flow of the Yuba River at Smartville, and the flow of the American River to Folsom Lake. This definition is consistent with the definition typically used in hydro-climatic studies of this region (e.g., http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST)

1906 to 2009 of 18 million acre-feet per year (MAF/yr). The reconstructed record shows alternating periods of wet and dry conditions and is consistent with historical droughts (such as the drought in the Mono Lake region of California in the medieval period, around 1150 CE) reported by other paleoclimate studies (Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2006).

As indicated by the shading in Figure 2-1, the driest long-term drought in the Sacramento River basin in the last 1,100 years occurred from approximately 1130 CE to 1415 CE when the 50-year average flow was seldom above normal for nearly 300 years. Following this drought, conditions were relatively wet (from approximately 1550 CE to 1900 CE). The timing of these droughts and wet periods will be compared to paleosalinity records in the following section.



* Average of 1906-2009 Observed Runoff is 18 MAF/yr.

Figure 2-1 – Reconstructed annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow 869 CE to 2009 CE
Annual reconstructed unimpaired Sacramento River flow (grey line) as a percentage of the average annual observed runoff from 1906 to 2009 shows strong variability between years. The 50-year running average (thick black line) illustrates there were extended periods of above-normal and below-normal runoff conditions. The orange shading highlights an extended dry period in the reconstructed unimpaired Sacramento River data when the 50-year average flow is seldom above normal for nearly 300 years. Data for 869 CE to 1905 CE were reconstructed by Meko et al. (2001b); data for 1906 CE to 2009 CE are observed records from the California DWR (2009).

Meko *et al.* (2001a) indicated that for their 1,100-year reconstructed period, the 1630-1977 data are more reliable than the earlier time period, because of better availability of tree-ring information and superior regression model statistics. Figure 2-2 shows the reconstructed time series of annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow from 1630 to 1977 from Meko *et al.* (2001b). The inset in Figure 2-2 shows there is a good match between the reconstructed flows (grey line) and the observed annual flows (red line) during the period of overlap between the reconstructed and observed records (from 1906 to 1977).

Multi-decadal periods of alternating wet and dry conditions are pervasive throughout the reconstructed record. The wet conditions of the late 1800's and early 1900's, which were followed by severe dry conditions in the 1920's and 1930's, are consistent both with observed precipitation and estimated Sacramento River runoff for these time periods (see Section 3) and with literature reports of historical conditions (see Section 4).

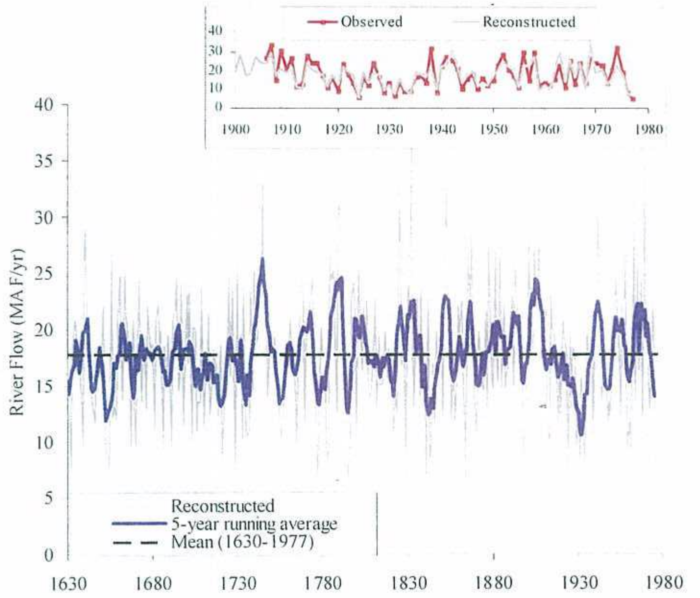


Figure 2-2 – Reconstructed annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow from 1630-1977. *Annual reconstructed unimpaired Sacramento River flow (grey line in main panel and inset) for the 1630 to 1977 time period was identified by Meko et al. (2001a) as the most accurate period of reconstruction. Inset panel illustrates the comparison between observed (red) and reconstructed (grey) unimpaired flows during the overlap period. The mean of the reconstructed unimpaired flow for 1630-1977 is 17.7 MAF yr (dashed horizontal line in main panel). The 5-year centered running average (thick solid blue line in main panel) illustrates the decadal trends.*

Meko *et al.* (2001a) identified the severe drought periods in the reconstructed Sacramento River flow record (1630-1977) by computing the lowest *n*-year moving average. For instance, to determine the most severe 6-year drought, Meko *et al.* calculated the moving average using a 6-year window for the entire data set and then identified the lowest 6-year average. Meko *et al.* found that the period from the early 1920's to late 1930's experienced the lowest 6-year, 10-year, 20-year, and 50-year averages (or droughts), both in the reconstructed and observed records. The observed droughts in Table 2-2 have been updated through present (1906-2009) using the same analysis; this update did not change the drought time periods identified by Meko *et al.* The reconstructed record of unimpaired Sacramento River flow shows the period from early 1920's to late 1930's experienced some of the worst drought conditions since 1630. Additional data are presented in Appendix B.

Table 2-2 – Periods of drought from the reconstructed and observed records of unimpaired Sacramento River flow
Severe drought periods in the reconstructed Sacramento River flow record (1630-1977) were determined by Meko et al. (2001a) by computing the lowest n-year moving average of the reconstructed annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow. The same method was used to determine the most severe droughts of the observed record (1906-2009).

	Period of lowest *n*-Year moving average Sacramento River flow					
	1-Year	3-Year	6-Year	10-Year	20-Year	50-Year
Reconstruction (1630-1977)	1924	1775 to 1778	1929 to 1934	1924 to 1933	1917 to 1936	1912 to 1961
Observations (1906-2009)	1977	1990 to 1992	1929 to 1934	1924 to 1933	1918 to 1937	1917 to 1966

Conclusions

Reconstruction of unimpaired Sacramento River flow indicates:

- Annual precipitation is highly variable. Even during long dry periods, individual years can be very wet.
- The Sacramento River basin experienced a multi-century dry period from about 1100 C.E. to 1400 C.E.
- The drought period in the 1920's and 1930's represents some of the worst drought conditions in the last 400 years.

2.3. Reconstructed Salinity in the Bay-Delta Estuary

Tree Ring Data

The interaction between saline ocean water from the Pacific Ocean and fresh water from the rivers flowing into the Delta determines the ambient salinity conditions in the Delta and the Bay. Estimates of historical precipitation derived from tree ring data can therefore be used to estimate the corresponding salinity conditions in the Delta.

Stahle *et al.* (2001) used tree ring chronologies from blue oak trees located in the drainage basin to San Francisco Bay to reconstruct salinity at the mouth of San Francisco Bay. Recognizing that a number of factors influence salinity other than precipitation (estimated from tree rings), the authors chose a time period prior to substantial water development when the salinity data were fairly constant in mean and variance. During the calibration period (1922-1952), annual tree ring growth correlates well with average salinity near the Golden Gate Bridge (r^2=0.81). Using this transfer function, Stahle *et al.* (2001) reconstructed annual average January to July salinity for all years 1604 to 1997.

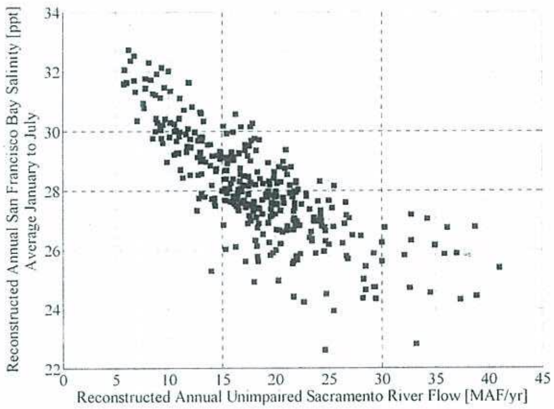


Figure 2-3 – Reconstructed salinity near the mouth of San Francisco Bay compares well with reconstructed unimpaired Sacramento River flow in the upper watershed *For each year from 1630 to 1952, the annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow (from Meko et al., 2001b) is plotted against the annual average salinity at Fort Point (from Stahle et al., 2001).*

As shown in Figure 2-3, the salinity reconstruction by Stahle *et al.* (2001) compares well with the unimpaired flow reconstruction by Meko *et al.* (2001b). The data follow the expected inverse exponential relationship between flow and salinity. Over the period from

1630 to 1952, reconstructed salinity increases as reconstructed unimpaired Sacramento River flow decreases. The agreement is strongest in dry years. The increased scatter in wet years may reflect the limitations in the tree ring methods.

Stahle *et al.* (2001) identified an increasing divergence of observed salinity relative to predicted (reconstructed) salinity after 1952 (Figure 2-4) and suggested that the majority of differences are due to increased water diversions. During the calibration period (1922-1952), the observed salinity is typically within +/- 5% of the reconstructed salinity. However, from 1953-1994, the data show an increasing trend for observed salinity to be greater than predicted, exceeding reconstructed salinity by over 15% in 1978, 1979, 1991, and 1993. Since 1969, observed salinity has exceeded reconstructed salinity in all years except the extremely wet years of 1982 and 1983.

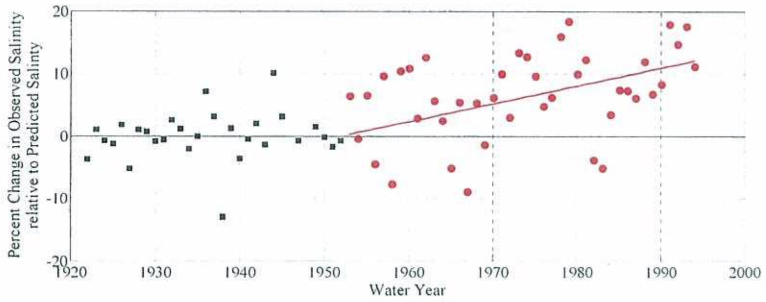


Figure 2-4 – Percent change in observed salinity relative to predicted (reconstructed) salinity for the period 1922 to 1994

The reconstructed salinity record by Stahle et al. (2001) overlaps with the observed salinity record from 1922 to 1994. During this period, the percent change of observed salinity relative to predicted salinity is determined as (observed salinity reconstructed salinity) divided by reconstructed salinity, with positive values indicating when observed salinity exceeded the reconstructed salinity prediction. The calibration period is indicated with black squares, with the period outside the calibration window indicated by red circles. The straight red line is the linear trend in the post-calibration period, indicating observed salinity is increasingly diverging from predicted (reconstructed) salinity.

These data suggest that since the 1950's, water management operations have increased salinity, with an escalating effect over the period of record. In addition, it is worth noting that significant anthropogenic modifications to the landscape and water usage had already occurred prior to the 1922-1953 calibration period (see Figure 1-2 and Figure 1-3). Although this study is unable to evaluate the effect of anthropogenic modifications prior to 1953, the following section examines salinity prior to human interference at multiple sites in the Bay-Delta.

Tree ring reconstructions such as Meko *et al.* (2001a) and Stahle *et al.* (2001) have the advantage of providing high temporal resolution (i.e. annual) over approximately the last 1,000 years. However, a possible disadvantage of this method is the age of trees, limiting high accuracy estimates to approximately the last 400 years. A second possible disadvantage of using tree ring reconstructions for paleosalinity is the remote location of the trees relative to the estuary. Paleosalinity estimates from tree rings in the upper basin necessarily assume that the precipitation patterns archived in the tree rings are representative of the quantity of water that reaches the estuary. However, as observed by Stahle *et al.*, anthropogenic water management affects the amount of water that flows through the estuary.

Sediment Core and Fossil Data

Because of uncertainties in estimates of precipitation and salinity derived from tree ring data, other paleosalinity methods that rely on local fossils to determine local salinity have also been explored. Organic deposits accumulated in the sediments contain signatures of the ambient conditions that can be used to infer the variations in salinity over geologic time scales. Although reconstructions from sediment cores have a coarser temporal resolution than tree rings, the variations in climate and landscape responses to change are better defined geographically because the evidence of localized climate change is preserved as a time series *in situ*, at the site of interest.

The San Francisco Bay-Delta has been the focus of several paleoclimatic reconstructions from sediment cores. Changes in wetland plant and algae communities are the dominant response in the Bay and Delta to climate change and associated fluctuations in temperature and precipitation. Proxies of plant and algae response to environmental conditions are preserved in the sediment cores and determined by:

- quantification and taxonomic identification of
  (i) diatom frustules (Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Starratt, 2001; Starratt, 2004),
  (ii) plant seeds and roots (Goman *et al.*, 2008),
  (iii) plant pollen (May, 1999; Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004), and,
- measurement of peat carbon isotope ratios (Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004).

Results from plant pollen identification for three sites in the western Delta and Suisun Bay and Marsh are summarized below in Figure 2-5. The data indicate that Browns Island tidal marsh, near the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers in the western Delta (Figure 2-5) was predominately a freshwater system for 2,500 years, even during century-long droughts. This condition prevailed until the early 1900's. The shading in Figure 2-5 corresponds to the nearly 300-year dry period identified in the reconstructions of annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow (Figure 2-1). Although salinity intrusion occurred during this period in Suisun Bay at Roe Island, and during earlier long drought periods, salinity did not affect the western Delta to the same degree. This suggests a change in spatial salinity gradient characteristics, and is possibly due to the effect on salinity intrusion of the vast tidal marshes that existed in the Delta until the early 20th Century.

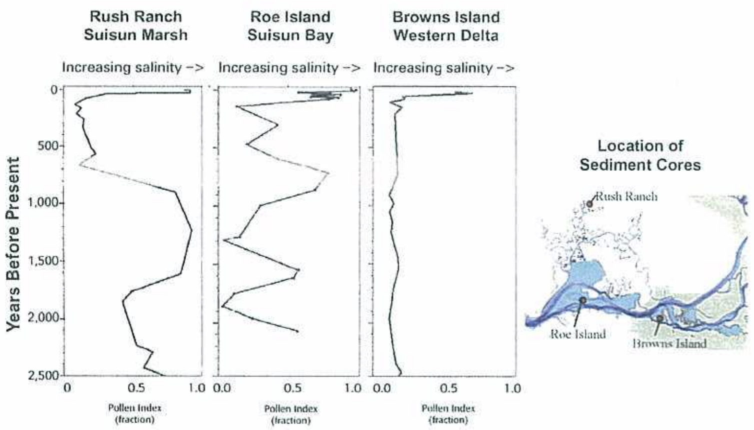


Figure 2-5 – Paleosalinity evidence derived from pollen data

Salinity variability over the last 2,500 years at Rush Ranch in Suisun Marsh (left panel), Roe Island in Suisun Bay (center panel), and Browns Island in the Western Delta (right panel). Data are reproduced from Malamud-Roam and Ingram (2004). Orange shading across each panel corresponds to the nearly 300-year dry period identified in the annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow reconstruction (see Section 2.2) Locations of each of the sediment cores are illustrated in the map on the right.

Malamud-Roam *et al.* (2006) attributed the differences between sites to a combination of methodological issues (such as sampling frequency and core chronology) and site-specific ecological differences (such as site elevation, location relative to channel and sedimentation rates over time). However, all of the paleosalinity reconstructions based on pollen, diatoms and carbon isotopes are in general agreement and suggest that salinity increased abruptly about 100 years ago, reaching or exceeding salinity levels at any other time in the 2,500 years of reconstructed records.

This increase in salinity may correspond to the reduction in unimpaired Sacramento River flow evidenced in the tree ring reconstructions by Meko *et al.* (2001a), which determined that the 1920's and 1930's experienced the worst droughts in the last 400 years. However, the droughts in the 1920's and 1930's do not appear to be as severe as the droughts between 1100 CE to 1400 CE (600 to 900 years ago), as categorized by unimpaired Sacramento River flow. Yet salinity in Suisun Bay and the western Delta appears to meet or exceed the level of the medieval droughts, indicating factors besides natural precipitation and runoff patterns have affected salinity in the last 100 years.

Conclusions

Reconstructions of salinity in the Bay and Delta indicate:

- Precipitation in the drainage basin for San Francisco Bay (as recorded in tree rings) is a good indicator of salinity near the mouth of the Bay for the period 1922-1953; however, since 1953, increased water diversions have increased observed salinity above the level predicted from precipitation estimates.
- The Delta was a predominately freshwater system for 2,500 years, until the early 1900's, even during century-long droughts.
- The multi-century dry period identified in unimpaired Sacramento River flow reconstruction is evident in Suisun Bay sediments but not in Delta sediments, indicating that salinity did not intrude as far into the Delta during past droughts as it has during the last 100 years.
- The evidence from most sites suggests that current salinity levels are as saline as, or more saline than, previous historical conditions.

3. Instrumental Observations of the Last 140 Years

Field measurements of rain and snow have far greater accuracy and resolution than the paleoclimate records of precipitation; similarly, field measurements of salinity have far greater accuracy and resolution than the paleosalinity records from sediment cores. These instrumental observations will be used to analyze in more detail the salinity increase identified in the paleoclimate records approximately 100 years ago and determine if the increase in salinity has persisted.

The first sub-section presents observations of precipitation and unimpaired runoff in the upper basin, indicating the natural climatic variability and amount of fresh water available within the Bay-Delta watershed. The second sub-section examines Net Delta Outflow (NDO), which is the amount of water flowing through the Delta into Suisun Bay, directly affecting the level of salinity intrusion into the Delta. NDO is analyzed under both unimpaired (without water diversions and reservoir storage and releases) and historical (actual) conditions; comparison between unimpaired and actual conditions reveals the effect of water management practices. The third sub-section presents field measurements and model-based estimates of salinity at various locations within the Delta and Suisun Bay.

3.1. Precipitation and Unimpaired Flow in the Upper Basin

Precipitation in the Bay-Delta watershed indicates the amount of water available within the system, which could ultimately reach the Bay and affect salinity conditions. However, since precipitation falls as both rain and snow, the timing of runoff to the river channels is often lagged a few months due to snow melt conditions. For this reason, estimates of unimpaired flow (runoff) are generally used to characterize hydrological variability. Unimpaired runoff represents the natural water production of a river basin, unaltered by water diversions, reservoir storage and operation, and export of water to or import of water from other basins.

Figure 3-1 illustrates the total annual precipitation at Quincy[7] in the northeastern Sierra, the total annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow[8] and total unimpaired San Joaquin River flow[9]. Figure 3-2 shows the locations of the eight precipitation stations in northern California used to compute the Sacramento eight-station precipitation index (left panel) and the measurement locations of eight flow gages used to calculate the Sacramento and San Joaquin unimpaired flow data (right panel). Additional information on the annual unimpaired flows is provided in Appendix C.

As discussed in Section 2.2, the total annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow exhibits strong variability between years, both in the reconstructed and observed data. Figure 3-1 indicates that the trends revealed in the total annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow (middle panel) are also evident in the total annual precipitation at Quincy (top panel) and the total annual unimpaired San Joaquin River flow (bottom panel). Alternating periods of wet and dry conditions are evident in both river basins. These data indicate there were wetter than normal conditions in the late 1800's and early 1900's, followed by severe dry conditions in the 1920's and 1930's. These were then followed by generally wetter conditions until the mid-1970's.

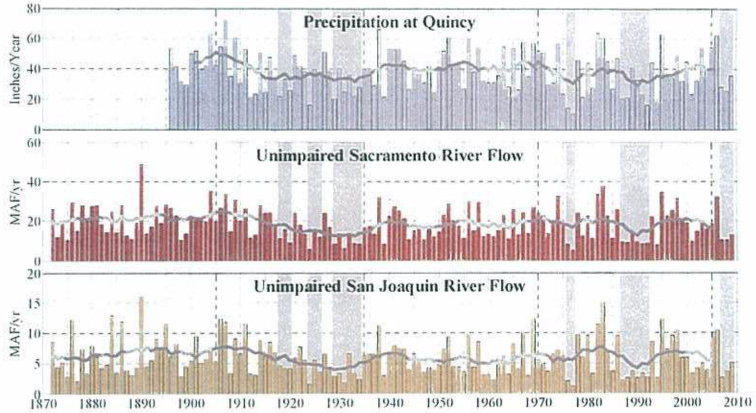


Figure 3-1 – Total annual precipitation and unimpaired flow in the upper Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins (1872-2009)

Total annual precipitation at Quincy in the northeastern Sierra (top panel), total annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow (middle panel), and total annual unimpaired San Joaquin River flow (bottom panel). Bar color on each panel indicates the regional location of the measurements, reflected in the remaining figures of this section (Figure 3-2, Figure 3-3 , and Figure 3-4). Grey line within each panel is the 10-year moving average for each parameter.

---

[7] Precipitation data are from Menne *et al.* (2009)

[8] "Unimpaired Sacramento River flow" is defined as the sum of the "full natural flows" from the Sacramento River at Bend Bridge, Feather River inflow to Lake Oroville, Yuba River at Smartville, and the American River inflow to Folsom Lake. (http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST)

[9] "Unimpaired San Joaquin River flow" is defined as the sum of the full natural flows from the Stanislaus River inflow to New Melones Lake, Tuolumne River inflow to New Don Pedro Reservoir, Merced River inflow to Lake McClure, and San Joaquin River inflow to Millerton Lake (http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST)

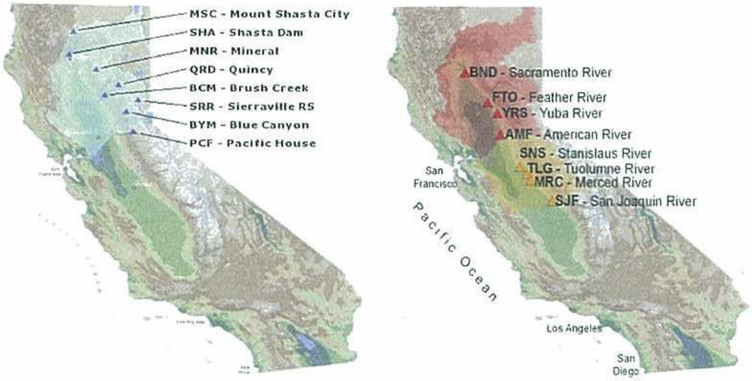


Figure 3-2 – Locations of Precipitation and Runoff Measurements

Location of stations used in the determination of the 8-station precipitation index for northern California (left map), including the location of Quincy (QRD), and the unimpaired Sacramento River flow (red stations, right map) and unimpaired San Joaquin River flow (orange stations, right map).

Knowles (2000) illustrated that the seasonal timing of runoff can significantly alter salinity intrusion without any change to the total annual runoff. For this reason, it is critical to examine the monthly variability in precipitation and unimpaired runoff. Monthly precipitation and unimpaired flow values are available for a shorter time period (generally 1921 to present) than the total annual values (generally 1870's to present).

The monthly distribution of the Sacramento eight-station precipitation index[10] indicates that most of the precipitation in northern California occurs during November through March (Figure 3-3). The variability between years, represented by the vertical bars and '+' marks, shows the distribution is positively skewed, i.e., excessively high precipitation occurs in relatively few years.

Figure 3-4 presents the monthly distribution of unimpaired flow for both the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins. River flow lags precipitation by about two months because of storage of some precipitation in the form of snow and subsequent snowmelt in the spring. Most of the unimpaired inflow to the Delta originates from the Sacramento Basin, although the contributions from the two basins are approximately the same during the months of late-spring and early-summer snow melt, when unimpaired runoff from the San Joaquin Basin peaks.

---

[10] Data from 1921 through 2008, downloaded from http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/precip1/8STATIONHIST

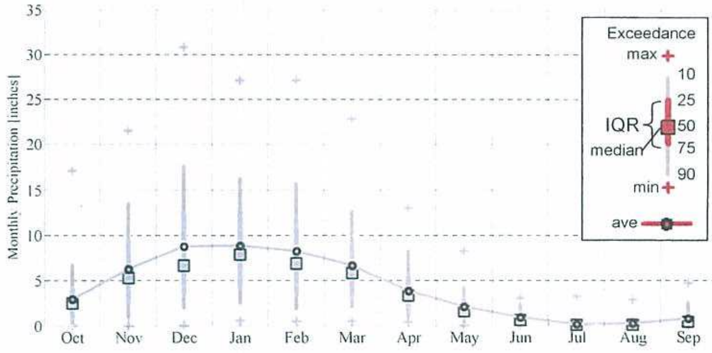


Figure 3-3 – Monthly Distribution of Precipitation in the Sacramento River Basin

Distribution of monthly precipitation for water years 1921 through 2008. Monthly averages are indicated by the blue line with black circles. Monthly median is given by the blue squares, while the interquartile range is indicated by the vertical blue line for each month and the vertical grey line extends to the 10^{th} and 90^{th} percentiles. Maximum and minimum values are indicated by '+' marks.

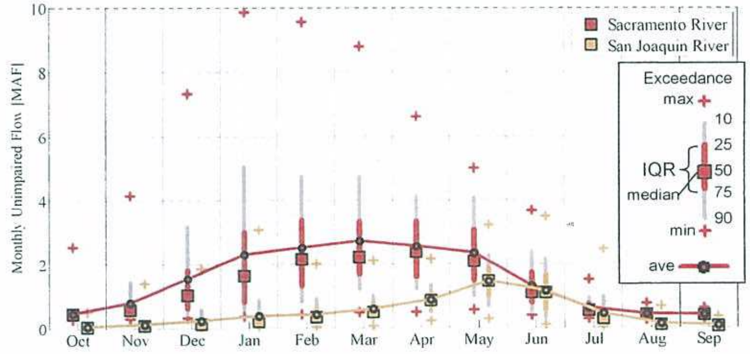


Figure 3-4 – Monthly distribution of unimpaired flow in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins

Distribution of monthly unimpaired flows for water years 1921 through 2008. Monthly averages are indicated by the lines with black circles. Monthly median is given by the squares, while the interquartile range is indicated by the vertical line for each month and the vertical grey line extends to the 10th and 90th percentiles. Maximum and minimum values are indicated by '+' marks.

Conclusions

The long-term observations of precipitation and unimpaired flow indicate:

- Relatively wet conditions occurred in the late 1880's to about 1917 in both the Sacramento and San Joaquin River watersheds prior to large-scale water management operations.
- Unusually dry conditions occurred from about 1918 through the late 1930's; these persistent dry conditions are not representative of the average conditions over the last 130 years.
- Precipitation in Sacramento River watershed peaks between December and March; the unimpaired river flow lags by about 1 to 2 months because of snow melt.

3.2. Net Delta Outflow

The quantity of water flowing from the Delta into Suisun Bay, defined as Net Delta Outflow (NDO), is the primary factor in determining salinity intrusion in Suisun Bay and the western Delta. Unimpaired NDO is calculated using unimpaired flow in the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers (Section 3.1) as well as contributions from other minor tributaries.[11] Unimpaired NDO is the hypothetical Delta outflow that would occur in the absence of any upstream diversion or storage, but with the existing Delta channel and upstream channel configuration.

Because the outflow from the Delta at the wide and deep entrance to Suisun Bay cannot be measured accurately, the parameter of historical (actual) NDO is estimated from a daily mass balance of the measured river inflows to the Delta, measurements of water diversions at major pumping plants in the Delta, and estimates of net within-Delta consumptive use (including Delta precipitation and evaporation).

The effect of anthropogenic water management on NDO is illustrated below by comparing monthly estimates of unimpaired NDO[12] and historical (actual) NDO[13] (Figure 3-5). Since unimpaired flow estimates also assume the existing Central Valley and Delta landscape (reclaimed islands, no natural upstream flood storage, current channel configuration, etc.), this comparison reveals the net effect of water management only. This analysis does not address the change due to physical modification to the landscape or sea level rise.

For the period of joint record, when both unimpaired and historical NDO values are available (water year 1930 through 2003), historical NDO decreased even though unimpaired NDO increased slightly. The long-term (74-year) linear trend in monthly unimpaired NDO (the black dashed line in top panel of Figure 3-5) increased on average 0.49 MAF/month; thus, by 2003, the average annual unimpaired NDO had increased 5.9 MAF/year since 1930. In contrast, the long-term linear trend in monthly historical NDO (the black dashed line in middle panel of Figure 3-5) decreased on average -0.29 MAF/month, totaling a decrease in historical (actual) NDO of -3.5 MAF/year. This corresponds to a net increase in diversion of 9.4 MAF/year of water from the Delta upstream watershed relative to the 1930 level[14].

Increased diversion and export of water have decreased historical NDO (middle panel of Figure 3-5), but this has been partially offset by a natural increase in unimpaired NDO (top panel). The difference between historical and unimpaired NDO (bottom panel) is due to the cumulative effects of upstream diversions, reservoir operations, in-Delta diversions, and

---

[11] Unimpaired NDO does not include water imported from the Trinity River system, which is outside the Delta watershed.

[12] Unimpaired NDO data was obtained from Ejeta (2009), which is an updated version of DWR (1987).

[13] Historical NDO data was obtained from the IEP's DAYFLOW program (http://www.iep.ca.gov/dayflow/index.html).

[14] This is consistent with current estimates of approximately 15 MAF/year total diversion from the system, which includes the 4-5 MAF/year diversions established prior to 1930 and approximately 1 MAF/year additional water supply imported from the Trinity River system.

south-of-Delta exports. During most months, water management practices have historically resulted in historical (actual) NDO that is less than unimpaired conditions, indicated by a negative value for the quantity (historical NDO – unimpaired NDO).

Because the difference between monthly historical and unimpaired NDO has become more negative over time, the periods of excess conditions (when historical NDO exceeds unimpaired NDO) have become very infrequent. The only occurrences are now following the wettest years, primarily due to releases from reservoirs in the fall to make room for winter flood control storage.

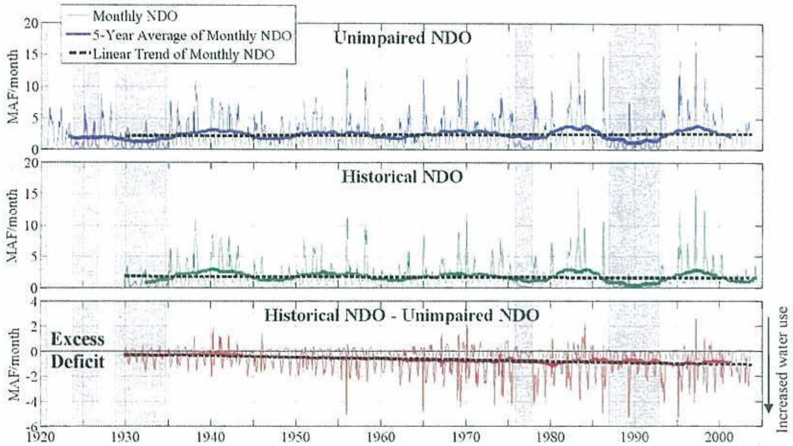


Figure 3-5 – Time series of Monthly Net Delta Outflow under unimpaired conditions and historical (actual) conditions

The thin color line on each panel indicates the monthly NDO, the thick color line indicates a running 5-year average of the monthly NDO, and the dashed black line indicates the linear long-term trend.

The monthly distribution (Figure 3-6) of unimpaired NDO and historical NDO for water years 1930 to 2003 reveals that for all months except September and October (when NDO is low), average unimpaired NDO is greater than average monthly historical NDO. The tendency in the average historical NDO toward greater flow in September and October is influenced strongly by the period prior to about 1975 when reservoir operations resulted in more flow in those months (see Figure 3-7 and related discussion below). On average from 1930-2003, water management practices reduced Delta outflows in the months of November through August (and in all months since about 1975, see Figure 3-7). The greatest reduction in Delta outflow relative to unimpaired conditions occurs in the months of March through June, when spring snow melt is captured in reservoirs and a portion of the river flow is diverted for direct use.

As also shown in Figure 3-6, water management practices also shift the peak flow periods to earlier in the year. The unimpaired NDO hydrograph peaks in May when snow melt contributes to high river flows, with at least 4.1 MAF in May in 50% of the years (averaging 4.2 MAF in May over all years). The historical NDO peaks in February with at least 2.9 MAF/month in 50% of the years (averaging 3.7 MAF/month over all years). The variability between years, represented by the vertical bars and '+' marks, indicates the distribution is positively skewed, which means a relatively few years have excessively high flows.

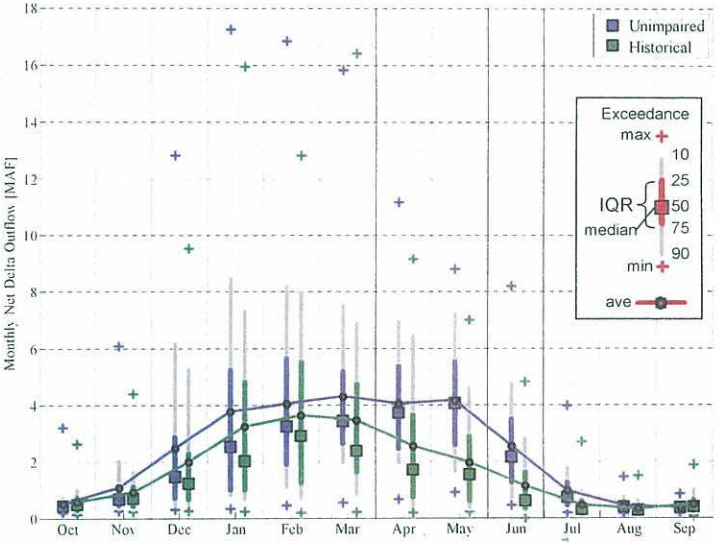


Figure 3-6 – Monthly distribution of Net Delta Outflow

Distribution of monthly NDO for water years 1930 through 2008. Monthly averages are indicated by the lines with black circles. Monthly median is given by the squares, while the interquartile range is indicated by the vertical line for each month and the vertical grey line extends to the 10th and 90th percentiles. Maximum and minimum values are indicated by '+' marks.

Figure 3-7 shows the long-term trends in the difference between historical (actual) monthly NDO and unimpaired monthly NDO. Increased water usage and increased diversion of water to storage has reduced historical NDO relative to unimpaired NDO in most months of the year. In July (and August, not shown in Figure 3-7), the deficit is reduced, likely due to reservoir releases which provide a portion of the water diverted by upstream users prior to reservoir construction. The 1994 Bay-Delta Accord called for higher minimum Delta outflows in July and August to protect Delta fish species, which should also serve to reduce the deficit. However, historical (actual) NDO still remains less than unimpaired NDO.

In September (and October, not shown in Figure 3-7), historical (actual) NDO exceeded unimpaired NDO from about 1945 to 1975, with an increasing trend in the percent change. Since 1975, the percent change has shown a downward trend with a deficit (historical NDO less than unimpaired NDO) during most years since 1975.

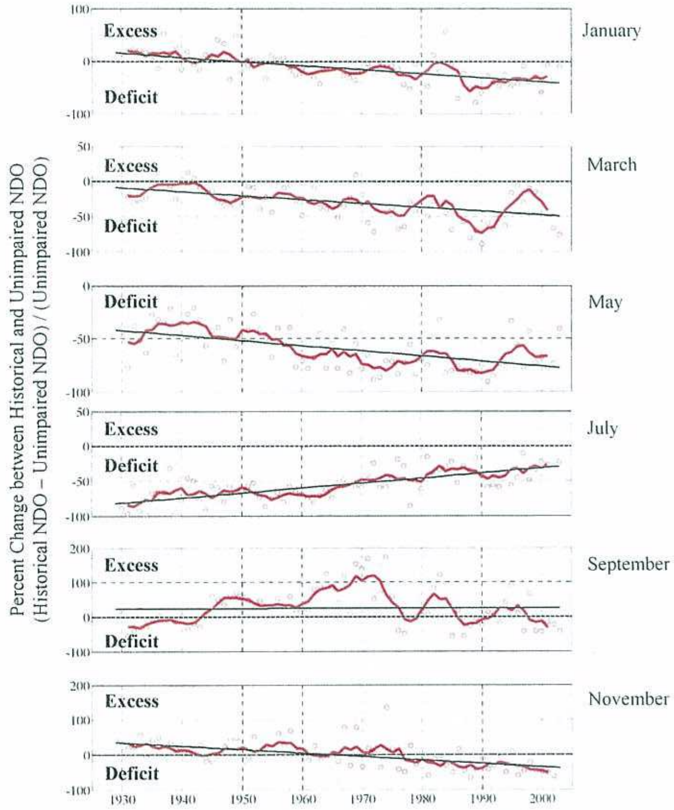


Figure 3-7 – Long-term trends in monthly NDO

Percent change of NDO relative to unimpaired conditions. Circles indicate the percent change for each month of the period of record. The red line indicates a moving 5-year average of the percent change, while the black line indicates the long-term linear trend over the entire period of record.

Conclusions

Anthropogenic water management practices have altered NDO in the following ways:

- Long-term data demonstrate that the difference between historical (actual) NDO and unimpaired NDO is increasing over time, indicating that water management actions have reduced Delta outflow significantly.
- During most months, water management practices have reduced Delta outflow relative to unimpaired conditions. From the mid-1940's to the mid-1980's, reservoir operations resulted in historical (actual) NDO slightly greater than unimpaired NDO slightly in a number of months, largely in the fall. However, since 1985, reservoir operations have resulted in increased NDO only in the wettest years, and NDO has declined in all other months.
- On average, water management practices have resulted in reduced Delta outflows in all months except September and October. The greatest reduction in Delta outflow relative to unimpaired conditions occurs in the months of March through June, when spring snow melt is captured in reservoirs and some of the remaining river flows are diverted for direct use.

3.3. *Salinity in the Western Delta and Suisun Bay*

Observations and model-based estimates can be used to examine historical variations in salinity in the western Delta and Suisun Bay. The observations examined in this section include records from the early 1900's from the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation in Crockett (C&H) and long-term monitoring data published online by the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP). Estimates of salinity intrusion were obtained using the Kimmerer-Monismith equation describing X2 (Kimmerer and Monismith, 1992).

Section 3.3.1 addresses the importance of consistency among salinity comparisons. The spatial variability of a specific salinity level is examined in Section 3.3.2 and Section 3.3.3, while the temporal variability of salinity at specific fixed locations is explored in Section 3.3.4 and Section 3.3.5.

3.3.1. Importance of Consistency among Salinity Comparisons

Water salinity in this report is specified either as electrical conductivity (EC) or as a concentration of chloride in water. EC is a measure of the ability of an aqueous solution to carry an electric current and is expressed in units of microSiemens per centimeter (μS/cm)[15]. Chloride concentration is specified in units of milligrams of chloride per liter of water (mg/L). Conversion between EC and chloride concentration can be accomplished using site-specific empirical relationships such as those developed by Kamyar Guivetchi (DWR, 1986).

Previous studies have evaluated the level of salinity in the Bay and Delta, using a variety of salinity units (e.g. EC, chloride concentration, or concentration of total dissolved solids in water) and various salinity parameters (e.g. annual maximum location 1,000 μS/cm EC, monthly average location of 50 mg/L chloride, or daily average EC at a specific location). Therefore, when comparing studies, it is critical to use consistent salinity units, parameters, and timing, including the phase of tide and time of year. These concepts are discussed further in Appendix D.

3.3.2. Distance to Fresh Water from Crockett

The California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H) is located in Crockett, near the western boundary of Suisun Bay (see Figure 3-8). C&H either obtained its freshwater supply in Crockett, or, when fresh water was not available at Crockett, from barges that traveled upstream on the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers. The barges generally travelled upstream twice a day beginning in 1908 (DPW, 1931). C&H recorded both the distance traveled by its barges to reach fresh water and the quality of the water they obtained. This provides the most detailed quantitative salinity record available prior to the initiation of salinity monitoring by the State of California in 1920. The distance traveled by the C&H barges serves as a surrogate for the prevailing salinity conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay. Operations by C&H required water with less than 50 mg/L chloride concentration.[16] Additional detail on C&H operations and the detailed barge travel data are included in Appendix D.

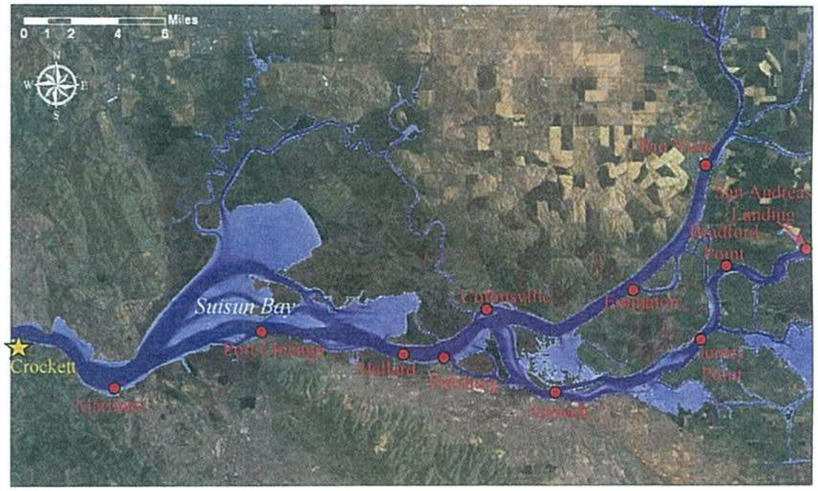


Figure 3-8 – Map of Suisun Bay and Western Delta with locations of continuous monitoring stations

C&H barges traveled up estuary from Crockett (yellow star). Locations of IEP continuous monitoring stations are shown in red. Scale in miles is indicated in the upper left corner of the map.

---

[15] The reported EC values are actually specific conductance, i.e., the electrical conductivity of the water solution at a reference temperature of 25° centigrade, as is standard practice.

[16] In comparison, the 50 mg/L concentration required for C&H operations is one-third the concentration of the industrial water quality standard under current conditions in the Delta.

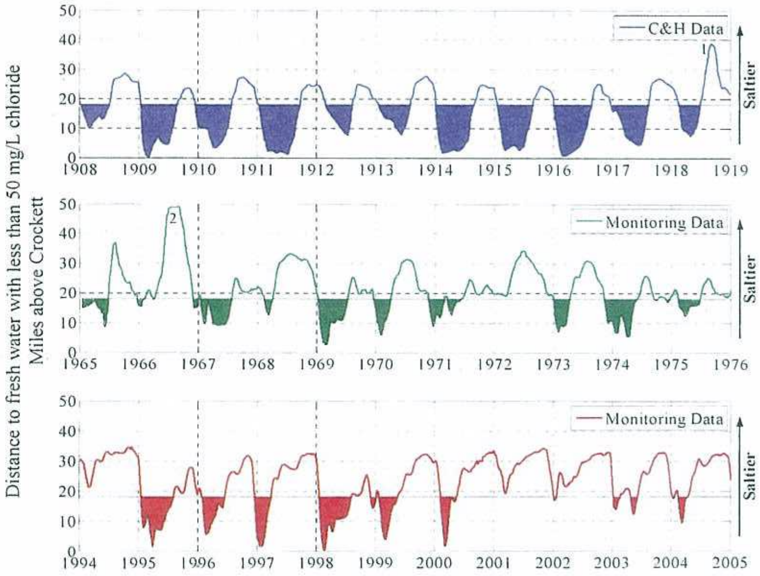


Figure 3-9 – Distance to fresh water from Crockett

"Distance to fresh water" is defined as the distance in miles upstream of Crockett to water with less than 50 mg/L chloride concentration. The horizontal line, at approximately 18 miles, is the distance from Crockett to the Delta. The shading represents the spatial extent and duration of the presence of fresh water within Suisun Bay, downstream of the Delta.

Data notes: (1) During August and September 1918, average water quality obtained by C&H exceeded 110 mg/L chlorides; (2) Salinity during 1966 is likely an overestimate due to relatively sparse spatial coverage of IEP monitoring stations. During 1966, salinity at Emmaton (28 miles from Crockett) exceeded 3,000 μS/cm; the nearest station upstream of Emmaton is near Courtland (58 miles from Crockett) and had a salinity of ~ 300 μS/cm. Location of 350 μS/cm isohaline based on data interpolation between these two stations (which are 30 miles apart) is not likely to be representative of the true location.

Figure 3-9 compares surface[17] salinity data from C&H with estimates derived from a network of continuous surface salinity monitoring stations (Figure 3-8) within Suisun Bay and the western Delta dating back to 1964. The monitoring data are published online by the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP, see http://iep.water.ca.gov/dss). The location of the 350 μS/cm EC isohaline, which approximately coincides with the C&H criterion of 50 mg/L chloride concentration, was estimated from the IEP measurements by linear interpolation between the average daily values at IEP monitoring stations.

---

[17] Due to the method of collection, C&H water samples are assumed to be from near the water surface.

As a cautionary note, depending on the source of information, the C&H barges are said to have traveled with the tide, indicating they either took water at high tide (moving up river on the flood and down on the ebb) or at low tide (traveling against the tide, but moving a shorter distance). Thus, the C&H records either represent the daily maximum or daily minimum distance traveled. In contrast, the distances to fresh water calculated from recent monitoring data are based on the average daily values of EC measured at fixed locations. The difference between daily average distance and daily minimum or maximum is approximately 2 to 3 miles. However, since the difference between the data from the early 1900's and the more recent time periods exceed this 2 to 3 mile uncertainty, the conclusions of this section remain unchanged regardless of the specific barge travel timing.

From 1908 through 1918, C&H was able to collect fresh water for a large portion of the year within Suisun Bay, without having to travel all the way from Crockett to the Delta. However, as can be seen in Figure 3-9, that would no longer be possible in many years (e.g., 2001-2004).

Figure 3-10 shows the monthly distribution of distance traveled by C&H barges during water years 1908 through 1917, and the equivalent distance from determined from observed data for water years 1966 through 1975 (top panel) and water years 1995 through 2004 (bottom panel). These two latter periods have similar hydrologic characteristics to the period of the C&H data.[18] The monthly distribution for each dataset illustrates the seasonal fluctuations of the salt field as well as the variability between years for each month.

During the early 1900's, the median distance traveled by C&H barges to procure fresh water was less than 8 miles in the spring (March-June) and about 25 miles (between Collinsville and Emmaton) in the fall (September-October). In contrast, due to water management conditions from 1995 to 2005, the equivalent distances would be 13 to 23 miles in the spring and up to 30 miles in the fall. It is worth noting that from 1966 to 1977, the distance to fresh water in the fall and early winter months (September through January) was generally less than the equivalent distance in the early 1900's, indicating that large-scale water management operations circa 1970 tended to reduce salinity in the fall and early winter. However, this trend has reversed in the more recent water management period (1995-2005), with salinity intrusion significantly increased over levels in the early 1900's during all months.

Figure 3-10 also shows that the range of the average annual distance from Crockett to fresh water from 1995 to 2005 was approximately 15 miles (from about 13 to 30 miles), while the range during the early 1900's was approximately 20 miles (from 6 to 25 miles). This analysis indicates that large-scale water management activities limit the fluctuating nature of the salt field by preventing fresh water from reaching as far downstream as it did in the early 1900's.

Finally, Figure 3-10 indicates that salinity intrusion in the Delta occurred later in the year (beginning in July) in the early 1900's than under more recent time period conditions (beginning in March).

---

[18] This similarity in hydrological characteristics between the periods was established by approximately matching the distribution of annual Sacramento River flow during these periods (see Appendix E).

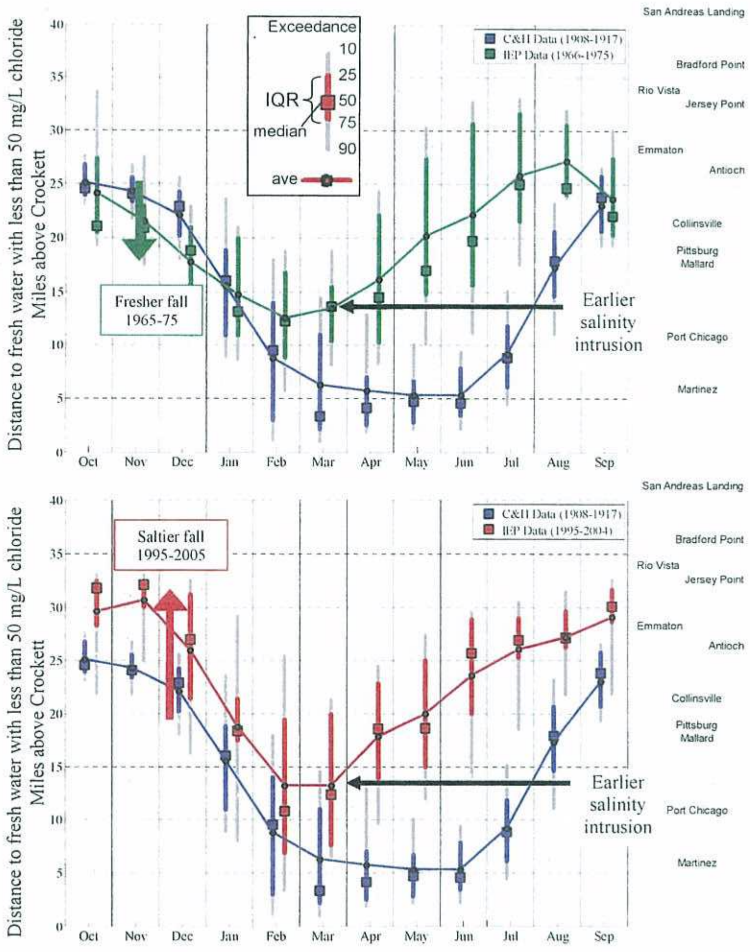


Figure 3-10 – Monthly distribution of distance to fresh water from Crockett

These comparisons (and other relevant comparisons in Appendix D) show that, on average, C&H barges would have had to travel up to 19 miles farther to procure fresh water under recent large-scale water management conditions than in the early 1900's. These comparisons also indicate that fresh water was present for significantly longer time periods, and over a larger area of the western Delta, in the early 1900's than during similar hydrological periods under current water management conditions. Abrupt changes in salinity just prior to 1920 caused C&H to abandon the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and switch to a water supply contract with Marin County beginning in 1920 (Appendix D).

The distance to fresh water during individual wet years and during individual dry years is presented in Appendix D. The data in Appendix D also show that salinity has been generally higher in recent times than in the early 1900's and that water management has restricted the range in salinity experienced during a water year. The periods when fresh water is present at given locations have been reduced, or, in some cases, eliminated.

Conclusions

The records of the distance traveled upstream from Crockett by C&H barges to procure fresh water and estimates of this distance under large-scale water management conditions (reservoir operations and water diversions) show that:

- Fresh water was present farther downstream and persisted for longer periods of time in the western Delta in the early 1900's than under recent time periods with similar hydrologic conditions;
- Water management practices result in greater salinity intrusion in the western Delta for most months of the year; and,
- Salinity intrusion begins earlier in the year, extends farther upstream, and persists for a longer period each year.

3.3.3. X2 Variability

An often-used indicator of fresh water availability and fish habitat conditions in the Delta is a metric called X2. X2 is defined as the distance from the Golden Gate to the 2 part-per-thousand isohaline (equivalent to a salinity of 2 grams of salt per kilogram of water), measured near the channel bed along the axis of the San Francisco Estuary. Higher values of X2 indicate greater salinity intrusion. Monthly values of X2 are estimated in this report using the monthly regression equation from Kimmerer and Monismith (1992):

Monthly $X2(t) = 122.2 + 0.3278*X2(t-1) - 17.65*\log_{10}(NDO(t))$

The K-M equation expresses X2 (in units of kilometers) in terms of Net Delta Outflow (NDO, see Section 3.2) during the current month and the X2 value from the previous month. The monthly K-M equation was based on a statistical regression of X2 values (interpolated from EC measurements at fixed locations) and estimates of NDO from IEP's DAYFLOW computer program. Hence, the K-M equation is only valid for the existing Delta channel configuration and existing sea level conditions.

The K-M equation can be used to transform unimpaired and historical NDO data into the corresponding X2 values for unimpaired (without reservoir operations or water diversions) and historical (with historical water management) conditions, respectively.

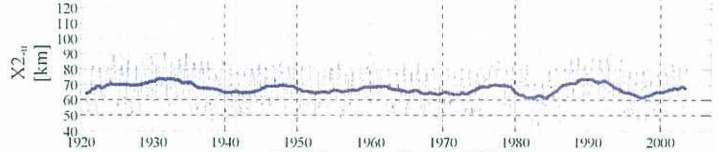
The seasonal and annual variations of X2 are dependent on the corresponding variations of NDO under both historical and unimpaired flow conditions (Figure 3-11). X2 under historical flow conditions is shifted landward relative to unimpaired conditions by approximately 5 km. During the 1930's, historical NDO was often negative, sometimes averaging approximately -3,000 cfs for several months. This was due to relatively low runoff and significant upstream water diversions. Unfortunately, the K-M equation, which includes the logarithm (base 10) of NDO, is unable to account for negative values of NDO. In the case of historical flow conditions, this results in high variability of X2 in the 1930's. The values of X2 under historical flow conditions during 1930's in Figure 3-11 are likely underestimated.

Figure 3-12 compares X2 under unimpaired and historical conditions for the period from 1945-2003, following initiation of the Central Valley Project (i.e., after the completion of the Shasta Reservoir of the CVP). Figure 3-12 shows that, compared to unimpaired conditions, X2 under historical conditions was higher by about 10 km during April-July and by about 5 km during the rest of the year.

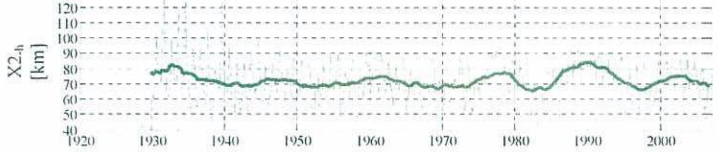
Salinity intrusion under historical water management conditions is, therefore, greater (higher X2) than the intrusion that would occur under unimpaired conditions. Moreover, the switch from declining X2 values during fall and winter months to increasing X2 values (increasing salinity intrusion) occurs in March under historical water management conditions and in June under unimpaired conditions. Thus, recent water management practices have resulted in a saltier Delta with earlier occurrence of salinity intrusion in the year.

Although current water management practices operate to provide salinity control, both the extent and duration of salinity intrusion are greater under current water management practices than under historical conditions. Likewise, current water management practices have changed the overall annual range in salinity (i.e., the difference between the highest and lowest salinity values during the year).

(a) X2 based on unimpaired NDO



(b) X2 based on historical NDO



(c) Change in X2 due to water management

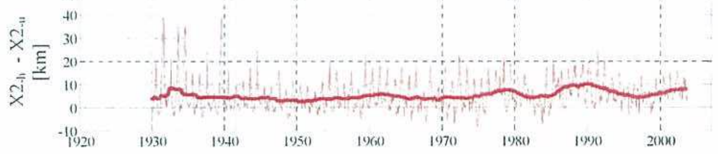


Figure 3-11 – Location of X2 under unimpaired and historical conditions
X2 has a strong seasonal and decadal variability under both unimpaired (top panel) and historical (middle panel) flow conditions reflecting the strong seasonal and decadal variability of NDO. The difference between historical and unimpaired conditions (bottom panel) illustrates the net effect of water management activities.

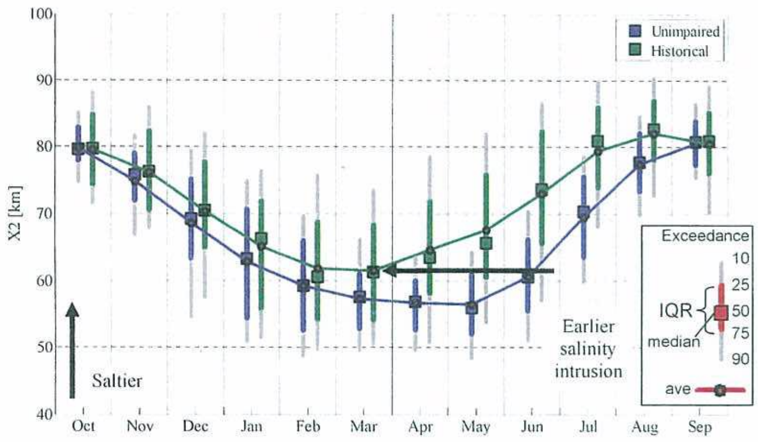


Figure 3-12 – Monthly distribution of X2 from 1945 through 2003

Figure 3-13 presents a comparison of unimpaired X2 and historical X2 during the 10 driest and the 10 wettest years of the CVP period (1945-2006).[19] During dry years (top panel), X2 is substantially greater under historical water management conditions than under unimpaired conditions (i.e., without water management); these effects are less dramatic but still occur during the wet years (bottom panel). Additionally, the annual range in salinity variability is significantly reduced under dry conditions (from approximately 22 km with unimpaired flows to 14 km with historical flows), but not wet conditions. The result of water management practices is a saltier Delta during both wet and dry years, with the greatest amount of salinity intrusion and reduced seasonal variability occurring in dry years.

Conclusions

The analysis of X2 (a measure of salinity intrusion in the Delta) shows that:

- Water management practices (reservoir operations and water diversions) result in a saltier Delta, with earlier salinity intrusion in the year.
- Water management practices result in a saltier Delta during both wet and dry years, but the effect is more pronounced in the dry years when the seasonal variability of salinity is also significantly reduced.

---

[19] Determination of the ten wettest and driest years is based on the total annual unimpaired Net Delta Outflow. The ten wettest years are 1952, 1956, 1958, 1969, 1974, 1982, 1983, 1986, 1995, and 1998. The ten driest years are 1947, 1976, 1977, 1987, 1988, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1994, and 2001.

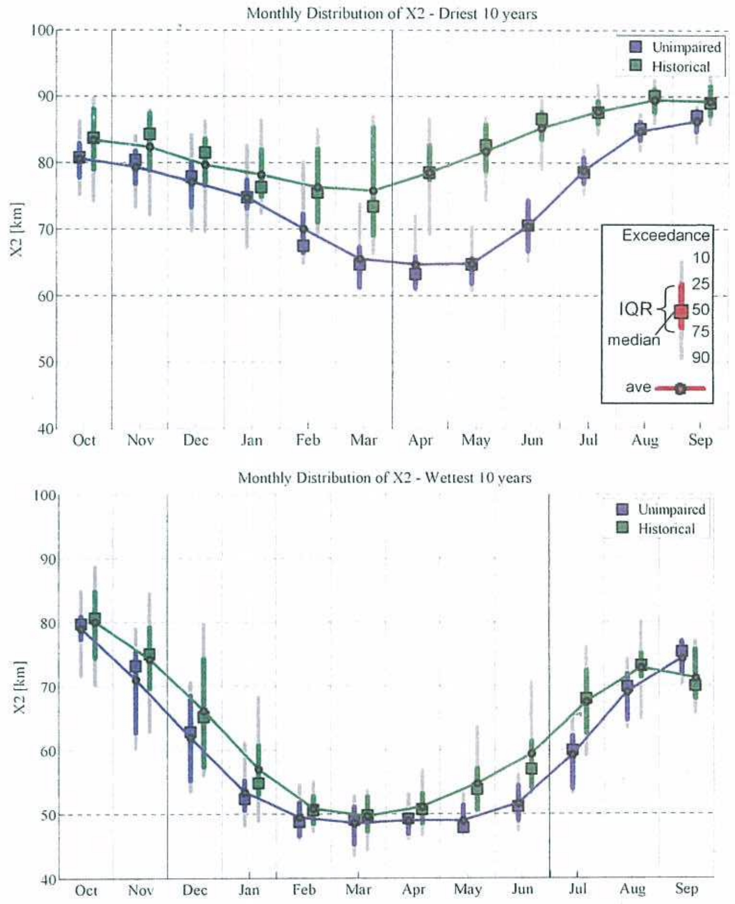


Figure 3-13 – Monthly X2 variability during wet and dry years (1945-2003)
Determination of the ten wettest and driest years is based on the total annual unimpaired Net Delta Outflow. The ten wettest years are 1952, 1956, 1958, 1969, 1974, 1982, 1983, 1986, 1995, and 1998. The ten driest years are 1947, 1976, 1977, 1987, 1988, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1994, and 2001.

3.3.4. Salinity at Collinsville

Collinsville, near the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, was one of the first long-term sampling locations implemented by the State of California. The Suisun Marsh Branch[20] of the DWR estimated monthly average salinity at Collinsville for the period 1920-2002, using a combination of 4-day TDS (total dissolved solids) grab samples from 1920-1971 and EC measurements from 1966-2002. Data from the overlap period of 5 years between the TDS grab samples and EC measurements were used in a statistical regression model, and the monthly averaged 4-day TDS samples were converted to monthly average EC (Enright, 2004). The result of this regression analysis was a time series of monthly EC values at Collinsville for the period of 1920-2002.

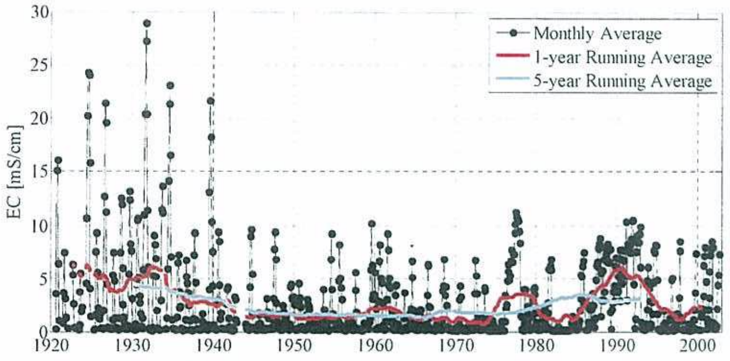


Figure 3-14 – Observed salinity at Collinsville

Monthly average salinity at Collinsville (black dots and black line), with the 12-month running average (red line) and 5-year running average (blue line).

Figure 3-14 shows the monthly average salinity at Collinsville for the period of 1920-2002, and Figure 3-15 shows the long-term trends in monthly salinity at Collinsville. Although the maximum values of salinity in the 1920's and 1930's far exceed subsequent salinity measurements at Collinsville, during the winters and springs of the 1920's and 1930's, the water at Collinsville freshened considerably. During the dry periods of 1920's and 1930's, monthly average salinity was below 350 µS/cm EC (approximately 50 mg/L chloride) for at least one month in every year. The one exception is 1924 which is inconclusive because no data were available from November through March. Monthly average EC data are missing for a portion of the winters and springs prior to 1926, and data for 1943 are missing entirely.

---

[20] Data provided by Chris Enright (DWR), personal communication, 2007.

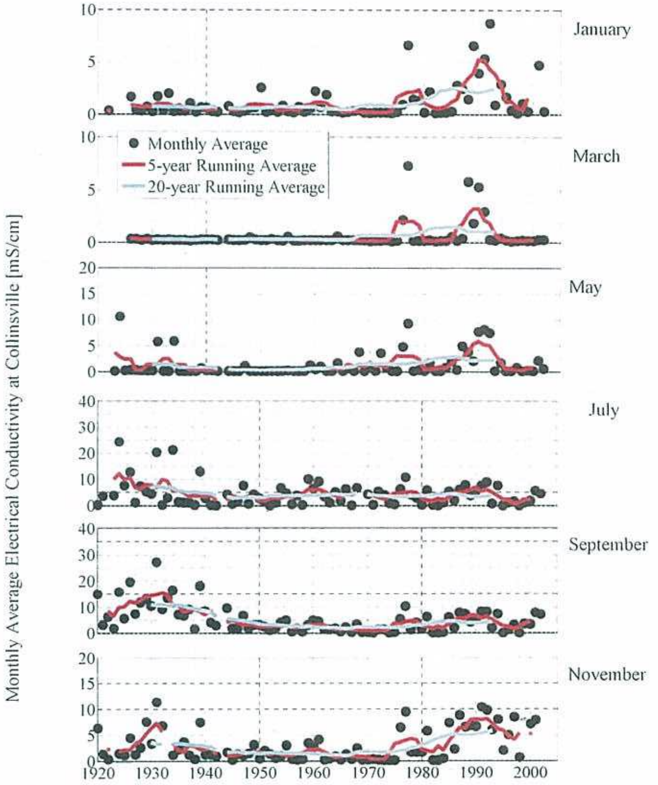


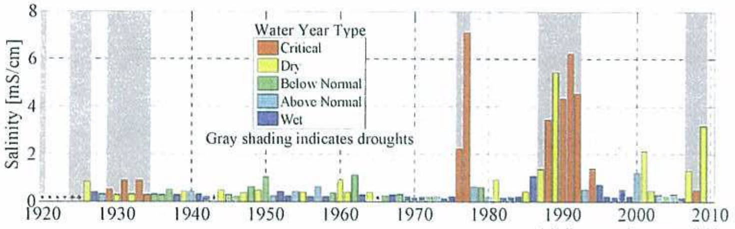
Figure 3-15 – Year-to-year trends in monthly-average salinity at Collinsville, 1920-2002

Monthly average salinity at Collinsville (black dots), with the 12-month running average (red line) and 5-year running average (blue line) for individual months.

Relatively fresh winters and springs during the 1920's are consistent with observations by C&H during that time period. However, monthly EC at Collinsville during the recent droughts (1976-1977 and 1987-1993) was always greater than 350 µS/cm EC, except for one month in both 1989 and 1992. These monthly observations of EC at Collinsville indicate that during the recent dry periods (1976-1977 and 1987-1993), EC at Collinsville was higher than that during similar dry periods in the 1920's and 1930's.

Enright and Culberson (2009) analyzed the trend in salinity variability at Collinsville from 1920-2006. They found increasing salinity variability in eleven of twelve months and attributed it to water operations. In seven months (January-May, September-October) the increasing trend was significant ($p<0.05$).

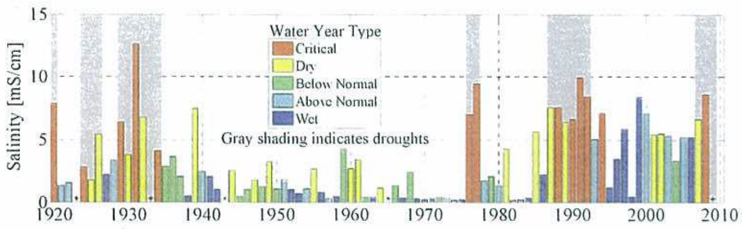
Even in the six-year drought from 1928 to 1934, the Delta still freshened every winter (Figure 3-16). However, as shown in Figure 3-16, the Delta has not freshened during more recent droughts (1976-1977, 1987-1994, and 2007-2009). This indicates that the historical "flushing" of the Delta with fresh water is no longer occurring. This lack of flushing can also allow waste from urban and agricultural developments upstream of and within the Delta to accumulate. Contaminants and toxics have been identified as factors in the decline of the Delta ecosystem (Baxter *et al.* 2007). The data indicate the effect of managing to the X2 standard (implemented in 1995), as the salinity levels attained in the most recent drought are not as high as the 1976-77 and 1987-1992 droughts.



* Indicates no data are available

Figure 3-16 – Average Winter salinity at Collinsville

Annual average salinity during the winter (January through March) for water years 1927 to 2009. Bars are colored by water year type as defined by the Sacramento 40-30-30 index. Grey shading indicates multi-year droughts that include at least one critical water year.



* Indicates no data are available

Figure 3-17 – Average Fall salinity at Collinsville

Annual average salinity during the fall months (October through December) for water years 1920 to 2009. Bars are colored by water year type as defined by the Sacramento 40-30-30 index. Grey shading indicates multi-year droughts that include at least one critical water year.

Figure 3-17 presents the variation in average fall salinity at Collinsville from 1920 to 2008 (October-December). Fall salinity is now high almost every year, while in the past, fall salinity was only high in dry and critical years. High salinity in the fall has been identified as a factor in the decline of the Delta ecosystem. Baxter *et al.* (2008) noted that "fall salinity has been relatively high during the POD years, with X2 positioned further [sic] upstream, despite moderate to high outflow conditions during the previous winter and spring of most years."

Conclusions

- In the 1920's and 1930's, the Delta freshened annually, even during droughts. In recent droughts, the Delta does not always freshen during the winter.
- Prior to 1976, fall salinity was high only in relatively dry years. Recently, fall salinity is high almost every year.

3.3.5. Salinity at Mallard Slough

A 1967 agreement between the Contra Costa Water District (CCWD) and the State of California requires the State to reimburse CCWD for the decrease in availability of usable river water, defined as water with less than 100 mg/L chlorides, at the Mallard Slough intake (CCWD, 1967). The 1967 agreement, and similar agreements between the State and other Delta water users, recognized the State Water Project (SWP) would increase salinity at Mallard Slough. The agreement defined a baseline of 142 days of usable water per year, based on the average number of days of usable water at the Mallard Slough intake from 1926-1967. Since 1967, the average number of days of usable water[21] (for the period 1967-2005) has declined to 122, indicating a 20-day (14%) reduction in the number of days of high quality water at Mallard Slough since the completion of the SWP.

---

[21] The data are from the USBR-CVO record of EC at Pittsburg, approximately 2 km upstream of Mallard Slough from 1967-2005. Since this station is located upstream of Mallard Slough, the number of days of usable water at Mallard Slough since the SWP was built may be overestimated.

4. Qualitative Observations of Historical Freshwater Flow and Salinity Conditions

In this section, qualitative observations of salinity conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay from the lawsuit filed by the Town of Antioch in 1920 and from various literature reports are discussed to provide a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the late 1800's and early 1900's. Qualitative observations from early explorers and settlers are discussed in Appendix E.

4.1. Town of Antioch Injunction on Upstream Diverters

In 1920, the Town of Antioch filed a lawsuit (hereinafter referred to as the "Antioch Case") against upstream irrigation districts, alleging that upstream water diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch. An overview of the Antioch Case is provided in Appendix E. The court decision, legal briefings, and petitions provide qualitative salinity observations from a number of witnesses. Although testimony in the Antioch Case is generally anecdotal, not quantitative, it provides a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the early 1900's. Because the proceedings were adversarial in nature, this report focuses on the testimony of the upstream interests, who were trying to demonstrate that salinity intrusion was common near Antioch prior to their diverting water (prior to 1920). Consequently, the testimony may be biased in support of this "more saline" argument.

The upstream interests in the Antioch Case provided information on the operation of pumping plants along the San Joaquin River at Antioch for domestic water supply and the quality of water obtained from the pumping plants, summarized in Table 4-1.

Table 4-1 – Testimony regarding pumping plant operations and water quality in the 1920 Antioch Case

Time period of observation	Relevant information from the testimony
1866-1878	Mr. Dodge ran a pumping/delivery operation at Antioch ▪ Dodge pumped water into a small earthen reservoir at Antioch and then hauled the water to residents in a wagon. ▪ Cary Howard testified that while he was living in Antioch (1867-1876), the water became brackish one or two years in the fall, when they had to drive into the country to get water. This likely occurred during the drought of 1870-71.
1878-1880	Mr. Dahnken bought and operated the Dodge operation ▪ Dahnken testified that the water became brackish at high tide every year in the late summer, and remained brackish at high tide until it rained "in the mountains."
1880-1903	Belshaw Company provided water ▪ Dahnken testified that Belshaw Company pumped only at low tide.
1903-1920	Municipal Plant ▪ William E. Meek (resident since 1910) testified the water is brackish at high tide every year, for some months in the year. ▪ James P. Taylor testified that for at least the last 5 years, insufficient storage required the plant to pump nearly 24 hours per day, regardless of tidal phase. ▪ Dr. J. W. DeWitt testified that during October of most years between 1897 and 1918, the water was too brackish to drink. Even when the city only pumped at low tide, the water was occasionally so brackish that it would be harmful to irrigate the lawns.

This testimony suggests that, in the late 1800's, water at Antioch was known to be brackish at high tide during certain time periods, but Antioch was apparently able to pump fresh water at low tide year-round. A possible exception was the fall season during a few dry years. Water at Antioch was apparently fresh at low tide until at least around 1915. At that time, due to increased demand and inadequate storage, the pumping plants started pumping continuously, regardless of tidal stage. The window of time each year when Antioch is able to pump fresh water from the river has been substantially reduced in the last 125 years.

As shown in Appendix A, DWR (1960) estimated that water with a chloride concentration of 350 mg/L or less would be available about 85% of the time if there were no water management effects. DWR (1960) estimated that chloride concentrations at Antioch would be less than 350 mg/L about 80% of the time in 1900 and about 60% of the time by 1940. DWR also projected further deterioration of water quality by 1960 and beyond but did not include the effects of reservoir releases for salinity control.

Observations of salinity at Antioch during recent years indicate that salinity is strongly dependent on ocean tides, and the diurnal range in salinity can be as much as the seasonal and annual ranges in salinity. This is discussed in more detail in Appendices D and E. For instance, salinity at high tide can be more than five times the salinity at low tide (Figures D-1, D-2, and D-3), and the salinity during the course of a single day may vary up to 6,000 µS/cm EC (Figure D-1). Average daily salinity at low tide during the period of 1983-2002 exceeded 1,000 µS/cm[22] EC for about four and a half months of the year (Figure D-3). During the driest 5 years between 1983 and 2002, salinity at low tide was always greater than 1,000 µS/cm EC (i.e., no fresh water was available at any time of day) for about eight months of the year. Fresh water is currently available at Antioch far less frequently than prior to the 1920's.

---

[22] The current water quality criterion for municipal and industrial use is 250 mg/L, equivalent to about 1,000 µS/cm EC.

Available data and observations indicate that, prior to about 1918, fresh water was available at least at low tide during almost the entire year, in all but a few dry years. Around 1918, an abrupt change to higher salinity occurred. Although a prolonged and severe drought also began about this time, salinity conditions at Antioch did not return to pre-drought levels when the drought ended, indicating that water management activities (increased upstream diversions and later storage of water in upstream reservoirs) were the primary causes of this increased salinity.

4.2. Reports on Historical Freshwater Extent

Several literature reports discuss the spatial extent and duration of salinity conditions in the western Delta and Suisun Bay during the late 1800's and early 1900's. Salinity conditions at several key Delta locations are summarized below.

Location: **Western Delta**

Source(s): DPW (1931)

Quotation: "*The dry years of 1917 to 1919, combined with increased upstream irrigation diversions, especially for rice culture in the Sacramento Valley, had already given rise to invasions of salinity into the upper bay and lower delta channels of greater extent and magnitude than had ever been known before.*" (DPW, 1931, pg. 22)

Quotation: "*It is particularly important to note that the period 1917-1929 has been one of unusual dryness and subnormal stream flow and that this condition has been a most important contributing factor to the abnormal extent of saline invasion which has occurred during this same time.*" (DPW, 1931, pg. 66)

Summary: Salinity intrusion into the Delta during the period 1917-1929 was much larger than experienced prior to that time.

Location: **Pittsburg, CA**

Source(s): Tolman and Poland (1935) and DPW (1931)

Quotation: "*From 1880 to 1920, Pittsburg (formerly Black Diamond) obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from New York Slough offshore.*" (DPW, 1931, pg. 60)

Quotation: "*There was an inexhaustible supply of river water available in the New York Slough* [near Pittsburg at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers], *but in the summer of 1924 this river water showed a startling rise in salinity to 1,400 ppm of chlorine, the first time in many years that it had grown very brackish during the dry summer months.*" (Tolman and Poland, 1935, pg. 27)

Summary: Prior to the 1920's, the water near the City of Pittsburg was sufficiently fresh for the City to obtain all or most of its fresh water directly from the river.

Location: **Antioch, CA**

Source(s): DPW (1931)

Quotation: "*From early days, Antioch has obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from the San Joaquin River immediately offshore from the city. This supply also has always been affected to some extent by saline invasion with the water becoming brackish during certain periods in the late summer and early fall months. However, conditions were fairly satisfactory in this respect until 1917, when the increased degree and duration of saline invasion began to result in the water becoming too brackish for domestic use during considerable periods in the summer and fall.*" (DPW, 1931, pg. 60)

Summary: Until 1917, the City of Antioch obtained all or most of its freshwater supplies directly from the San Joaquin River. Salinity intrusion has prevented domestic use of water at the Antioch intake in summer and fall after 1917.

Location: **Benicia, CA (Suisun Bay)**

Source(s): Dillon (1980) and Cowell (1963)

Quotation: "*In 1889, an artificial lake was constructed. This reservoir, filled with fresh water from Suisun Bay during the spring runoff of the Sierra snow melt water* ..." (Dillon, 1980, pg. 131)

Quotation: "*...in 1889, construction began on an artificial lake for the* [Benicia] *arsenal which would serve throughout its remaining history as a reservoir, being filled with fresh water pumped from Suisun Bay during spring runoffs of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers which emptied into the bay a short distance north of the installation.*" (Cowell, 1963, pg. 31)

Summary: In the late 19th Century, fresh water was available in the Suisun Bay and Carquinez Straits for use by the City of Benicia.

The reported presence of relatively fresh water in the western Delta and the Suisun Bay during the late 1800's and early 1900's is consistent with the relatively fresh conditions observed in the paleoclimate records for this time period (Section 2.3) and the relatively wet conditions observed in the Sacramento River runoff and precipitation records (Section 3.1).

Additional observations between 1775 and 1841 are included in Appendix E. These qualitative observations indicated the presence of "*sweet*" water near the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers in the vicinity of Collinsville in August 1775 (a period of average or above-average Sacramento River flow), and September 1776 (a period of below-average Sacramento River flow). The presence of "*very clear, fresh, sweet, and good*" water was reported in April 1776 (a dry year). Historical observations from 1796 and August 1841 (dry periods) indicated salinity "*far upstream*" at high tide and the presence of brackish (undrinkable) water in Threemile Slough. Current salinity controls and regulations put brackish water (averaged over 14 days) near Jersey Point and Emmaton, each about 2.5 miles below Threemile Slough, on a regular basis annually.

5. Conclusions

1. Measurements of ancient plant pollen, carbon isotope and tree ring data show that the Delta was predominately a freshwater marsh for the past 2,500 years, and that the Delta has become far more saline in the past 100 years because of human activity. Salinity intrusion during the last 100 years is comparable to the highest levels over the past 2,500 years.
2. Human activities during the last 150 years, including channelization of the Delta, elimination of tidal marsh, construction of deep water ship channels, and diversions of water, have resulted in increased salinity levels in the Delta. Today, salinity typically intrudes 3 to 15 miles farther into the Delta than it did in the early 20th Century.
3. Before the substantial increase in freshwater diversions in the 1940's, the Delta and Suisun Bay would freshen every winter, even during the extreme drought of the 1930's. However, that pattern has changed. During the most recent droughts (1976-1977, 1987-1994, and 2007-2009), the Delta did not always freshen in winter. Without seasonal freshening, contaminants and toxics can accumulate in the system and young aquatic species do not experience the same fresh conditions in the spring that occurred naturally.
4. While half of the past 25 years have been relatively wet, the fall salinity levels in 21 of those 25 years have resembled dry-year conditions. In terms of salinity, the Delta is now in a state of drought almost every fall because of human activity, including water diversions.
5. Seasonal and inter-annual variation in salinity has also been changed; however, this change is the result of reduced freshwater flows into the Delta. At any given location in the western Delta and Suisun Bay, the percentage of the year when fresh water is present has been greatly reduced or even eliminated.
6. The historical record and published studies show the Delta is far saltier now, even after the construction of reservoirs that have been used in part to meet State Water Resources Control Board water quality requirements in the Delta. Operation of reservoirs and water diversions for salinity management somewhat ameliorates the increased salinity intrusion, but the levels still exceed pre-1900 salinities.

6. Bibliography to the Main Report and the Appendices

Atwater, B. F., S. G. Conard, J. N. Dowden, C. W. Hedel, R. L. MacDonald and W. Savage. 1979. History, Landforms, and Vegetation of the Estuary's Tidal Marshes, in San Francisco Bay: The Urbanized Estuary, Editor T. J. Conomos, Pacific Division AAAS, San Francisco, California, 493 pp. See http://www.estuaryarchive.org/archive/conomos_1979/

Baxter, R., R. Breuer, L. Brown, M. Chotkowski, F. Feyrer, M. Gingras, B. Herbold, A. Mueller-Solger, M. Nobriga, T. Sommer, and K. Souza. 2008. Pelagic Organism Decline Progress Report: 2007 Synthesis of Results, Interagency Ecological Program, January 2008, See http://www.science.calwater.ca.gov/pdf/workshops/POD/IEP_POD_2007_synthesis_report_031408.pdf

Burau, J.R., S.G. Monismith, M.T. Stacey, R.N. Oltmann, J.R. Lacy, and D.H. Schoellhamer. 1999. Recent research on the hydrodynamics of the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta and North San Francisco Bay. Interagency Ecological Program Newsletter, v. 11, no. 2, p. 45-55. http://sfbay.wr.usgs.gov/publications/pdf/burau_1999_delta.pdf

Byrne, R., B.L. Ingram, S. Starratt, F. Malamud-Roam, J.N. Collins, and M.E. Conrad. 2001. Carbon-isotope, diatom, and pollen evidence for late Holocene salinity change in a brackish marsh in the San Francisco Estuary. Quaternary Research 55:66-76.

Cappiella, K., C. Malzone, R. Smith, and B. Jaffe. 1999. Sedimentation and bathymetry changes in Suisun Bay: 1867-1990. Menlo Park, CA: US Geological Survey Open-File Report 99-563. See http://geopubs.wr.usgs.gov/open-file/of99-563/

Cayan, D. R., P.D. Bromirski, K. Hayhoe, M. Tyree, M.D. Dettinger and R. E. Flick. 2008. Climate change projections of sea level extremes along the California coast, Climatic Change, Suppl (1), S57-S73.

Conomos T.J. 1979. San Francisco Bay: The Urbanized Estuary. Investigation into the natural history of the San Francisco Bay and Delta with reference to the influence of man. Pacific Division AAAS, San Francisco, California, 493 p. See http://www.estuaryarchive.org/archive/conomos_1979/

Contra Costa Water District. 1967. Mallard Slough Unilateral Water Entitlement Agreement. Unpublished archive (available by request).

Cowell, J. W. 1963. History of Benicia Arsenal: Benicia, California: January 1851 – December 1962. Berkeley, Howell-North Books.

Denton, R. A. 1993. "Accounting for antecedent conditions in seawater intrusion modeling – applications for the San Francisco Bay-Delta". ASCE Journal of Hydraulic Engineering, Vol. 1. pp. 448-453.

Denton, R. A. and G. D. Sullivan. 1993. "Antecedent Flow-Salinity Relations: Applications to Delta Planning Models." Contra Costa Water District. December 1993.

[DPW] Department of Public Works. 1923. Flow in California Streams – Appendix A to Report to the Legislature of 1923 on the Water Resources of California. Bulletin No. 5. State of California, Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation. See http://www.archive.org/details/flowincalifornia00calirich

[DPW] Department of Public Works. 1931. Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay. Bulletin No. 27. State of California, Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation. See http://www.archive.org/details/variationcontrol27calirich

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1960. Delta Water Facilities. Bulletin No. 76. State of California. See http://www.deltacorridors.com/uploads/Bulletin_No._76_Delta_Water_Facilities-Color.pdf

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1962. Salinity Incursion and Water Resources. Appendix to Bulletin No. 76. The Resources Agency of California. See http://www.archive.org/details/deltawaterrequir761962calirich

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1986. Salinity unit conversion equations. State of California Memorandum dated June 24, 1986, Kamyar Guivetchi to Peter Lee, Dick Kretsinger, and James McDaniel, 29 pp.

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1987. California Central Valley Unimpaired Flow Data. State of California. The Resources Agency. Division of Planning.

[DWR] Department of Water Resources, Division of Dam Safety. 1993. Dams within the jurisdiction of the State of California. Database downloaded from the California Spatial Information Library, February 2007 (no longer available online). See http://www.water.ca.gov/damsafety/damlisting/index.cfm

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1994. California Water Plan Update. Bulletin 160-93, California Department of Water Resources, Sacramento, CA.

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1995. Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Atlas. State of California. See http://baydeltaoffice.water.ca.gov/DeltaAtlas/index.cfm

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 2006. Progress on incorporating climate change into management of California's water resources. Technical Memorandum Report. State of California. July 2006. See http://baydeltaoffice.water.ca.gov/climatechange/DWRClimateChangeJuly06_update8-2-07.pdf

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 2007. Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Overview. State of California. See http://baydeltaoffice.water.ca.gov/sdb/tbp/deltaoverview/index.cfm

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 2009. California Cooperative Snow Surveys. Chronological Reconstructed Sacramento and San Joaquin Valley. Water Year Hydrologic Classification Indices. Based on measured unimpaired runoff (in million acre-feet), subject to revision. State of California. Accessed on December 12, 2009 at: http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/wsihist

Dettinger, M. D. 2005. Changes in Streamflow Timing in the Western United States in Recent Decades, U.S. Geological Survey, Fact Sheet 2005-3018.

Dillon, R. 1980. Great Expectations: The Story of Benicia, California, Fresno, California. 241 pp.

Earle, C. J. 1993. Asynchronous Droughts in California Streamflow as Reconstructed from Tree Rings, Quaternary Research, 39: 290-299

Ejeta, M. 2009. Unimpaired NDO data provided as an update to the February 1987 DWR publication "California Central Valley Unimpaired Flow Data". June 8, 2009.

Enright, C. 2004. "Long-Term Trends and Variability of Suisun Marsh Salinity" presented at the San Francisco Bay-Delta Science Consortium Suisun Marsh Workshop, March 1-2, 2004. See http://www.baydeltaconsortium.org/education/workshops/presentations

Enright, C. and S.D. Culberson. 2009. Salinity trends, variability, and control in the northern reach of the San Francisco Estuary. San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science, Volume 7, Issue 2, CALFED Bay-Delta Authority, December 2009. http://www.escholarship.org/uc/item/0d52737t

Fox, J. P. 1987a. Salinity and Temperature Variations in San Francisco Bay. State Water Contractors Exhibit Number 266. Bay Delta Hearings, Sacramento, CA. See http://oskicat.berkeley.edu/record=b11838183~S51

Fox, J. P. 1987b. Freshwater Inflow to San Francisco Bay Under Natural Conditions. State Water Contractors Exhibit Number 262. Bay Delta Hearings, Sacramento, CA. See http://oskicat.berkeley.edu/record=b11838181~S51

Goman, M. and L. Wells. 2000. Trends in river flow affecting the northeastern reach of the San Francisco Bay estuary over the past 7000 years. Quaternary Research 54:206-217

Goman, M., F. Malamud-Roam and B. L. Ingram. 2008. Holocene Environmental History and Evolution of a Tidal Salt Marsh in San Francisco Bay, California. Journal of Coastal Research, 24(5), 1126-1137.

Graumlich, L. 1987. Precipitation variation in the Pacific Northwest (1675-1975) as reconstructed tree rings. Annals of the Association of American Geographers, 77(1):19-29

Hulaniski, F. J. 1917. The History of Contra Costa County, California. Berkeley, California.

Ingram, B. L. and D. J. DePaolo. 1993. A 4,300 year strontium isotope record of estuarine paleosalinity in San Francisco Bay, California. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 119: 103-119.

Ingram, B. L., J. C. Ingle and M. E. Conrad. 1996a. Stable isotope record of late Holocene salinity and river discharge in San Francisco Bay, California. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 141: 237-247

Ingram, B. L., J. C. Ingle, and M. E. Conrad. 1996b. A 2000 yr record of Sacramento San Joaquin River inflow to San Francisco Bay Estuary, California, Geology, 24, 331– 334.

Interagency Ecological Program (IEP). 2007. HEC-DSS Time-Series Databases. Retrieved September 4, 2007 from http://www.iep.ca.gov/dss/all/

Jackson, W. T., and A. M. Paterson. 1977. "The Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta: The Evolution and Implementation of Water Policy: An Historical Perspective", California Water Resources Center, Technical Completion Report #163, June 1977, University of California, Davis. See http://repositories.cdlib.org/wrc/tcr/jackson/

Jassby, A. D., W. J. Kimmerer, S. G. Monismith, C. Armor, J. E. Cloern, T. M. Powell, J. R. Schubel and T. J. Vendlinski. 1995. Isohaline position as a habitat indicator for estuarine populations. Ecological Applications, 5: 272-289.

Kimmerer, W. and S. Monismith. 1992. An Estimate of the Historical Position of 2PPT Salinity in the San Francisco Bay Estuary. Issue Paper prepared for the fourth technical workshop on salinity, flows, and living resources of the San Francisco Bay/Delta Estuary. August 1992. Available online at: http://www.calwater.ca.gov/Admin_Record/C-047938.pdf

Knowles, N., D. Cayan, D. H. Peterson, and R. J. Uncles. 1998. Simulated effects of delta outflow on the Bay: 1998 compared to other years, Interagency Ecological Program Newsletter. 11, pp. 29–31, Dept. of Water Resources Environmental Services Office, Sacramento. (Available at http://iep.water.ca.gov/report/newsletter/)

Knowles, N. 2000. Modeling the Hydroclimate of the San Francisco Bay-Delta Estuary and Watershed. Dissertation. University of California, San Diego. Available online at: http://sfbay.wr.usgs.gov/publications/pdf/knowles_2000_phd_dissertation.pdf

Lund, J., E. Hanak, W. Fleenor, R. Howitt, J. Mount, and P. Moyle. 2007. Envisioning Futures for the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta. Public Policy Institute of California. San Francisco, California. http://www.ppic.org/content/pubs/report/R_207JLChapter2R.pdf

Malamud-Roam, F. and B.L. Ingram. 2004. Late Holocene δ13C and pollen records of paleosalinity from tidal marshes in the San Francisco Bay estuary, California. Quaternary Research 62:134-145.

Malamud-Roam, F., M. Dettinger, B.L. Ingram, M.K. Hughes, and J.L. Florsheim. 2007. Holocene climates and connections between the San Francisco Bay Estuary and its watershed: a review. San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Science Vol. 5, Issue 1 (February), Article 3.

Malamud-Roam, F.P., Ingram, B.L., Hughes, M., and J.L. Florsheim. 2006. Holocene paleoclimate records from a large California estuarine system and its watershed region: linking watershed climate and bay conditions. Quaternary Science Reviews 25:1570-1598.

May, M.D. 1999. Vegetation and salinity changes over the last 2000 years at two islands in the northern San Francisco Estuary, California. Master of Arts Thesis, (University of California, Berkeley), Spring 1999

Means, T.H. 1928. Salt Water Problem, San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, April 1928.

Meko, D. M., M. D. Therrell, C. H. Baisan and M. K. Hughes. 2001a. Sacramento River Flow Reconstructed to A.D. 869 from Tree Rings. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. 37(4):1029-1039.

Meko, D. M., M. D. Therrell, C. H. Baisan and M. K. Hughes. 2001b, Sacramento River Annual Flow Reconstruction. International Tree-Ring Data Bank. IGBP PAGES/World Data Center for Paleoclimatology Data Contribution Series #2001-081. NOAA/NGDC Paleoclimatology Program, Boulder CO, USA. See ftp://ftp.ncdc.noaa.gov/pub/data/paleo/treering/reconstructions/california/sacramento_flow.txt

Menne, M. J., C. N. Williams, Jr., and R. S. Vose, 2009. United States Historical Climatology Network (USHCN) Version 2 Serial Monthly Dataset. Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Center, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, Tennessee. Last updated June 2009. See http://cdiac.ornl.gov/epubs/ndp/ushcn/access.html

Monismith S. 1998. X2 workshop notes. IEP Newsletter 11(4):6-14. Available at: http://www.iep.water.ca.gov/report/newsletter

Mote, P. W., A. F. Hamlet, M. P. Clark and D. P. Lettenmaier. 2005. Declining mountain snowpack in western north America. Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society 86(1): 39-49.

Nichols F. H., Cloern J. E., Luoma S. N. and Peterson D. H. 1986. The modification of an estuary. Science 231:567-573.

Oltmann, R.N., and M.R. Simpson. 1997. Measurement of tidal flows in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, California. Poster. USGS San Francisco Bay and Delta Ecosystem Forum. U.S. Geological Survey, Sacramento, California, March 1997. http://sfbay.wr.usgs.gov/watershed/tidal_flow/images/miniposter.pdf

Smith, O.K. 1940. Martinez Waterfront: Book One. Compiled as a Report, Work Projects Administration Project, Official Project No. 65-1-08-146, Unit 2, 79 pp. Martinez, CA

Stahle, D.W., M.D. Therrell, M.K. Cleaveland, D.R. Cayan, M.D. Dettinger, amd N. Knowles. 2001. Ancient blue oaks reveal human impact on San Francisco Bay salinity. EOS Transactions, American Geophysical Union, Vol. 82, No. 12, March 20, 2001.

Starratt, S.W. 2001. "Diatoms as Indicators of Freshwater Flow Variation in Central California." PACLIM Conference Proceedings, pp. 129-144. See http://meteora.ucsd.edu/paclim/proceedings01.html

Starratt, S. W. 2004. Diatoms as indicators of late Holocene freshwater flow variation in the San Francisco Bay estuary, central California, U.S.A. In Poulin, M. (ed.) Proceedings of the Seventeenth International Diatom Symposium, Bristol, Biopress Limited: 371–397.

Stewart, I. T., D. R. Cayan and M. D. Dettinger. 2005. "Changes toward earlier streamflow timing across western North America." Journal of Climate 18(8): 1136-1155. Available online at http://meteora.ucsd.edu/cap/pdffiles/stewart_timing.pdf.

[TBI] The Bay Institute of San Francisco. 1998. From the Sierra to the Sea: The Ecological History of the San Francisco Bay-Delta Watershed. Novato, California. See http://www.bay.org/sierra_to_the_sea.htm

Tolman, C. F. and J. F. Poland. 1935. Investigation of the Ground-Water Supply of the Columbia Steel Company Pittsburg, California. Stanford University, California, May 30, 1935.

Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District (1922, 188 Cal. 451).

Uncles, R. J., and D. H. Peterson, 1996. The Long-Term Salinity Field in San Francisco Bay,Continental Shelf Research, 16, 2005-2039.

U.S. EPA Office of Water. 2003. National Secondary Drinking Water Standards. Accessed September 11, 2008 from http://www.epa.gov/safewater/contaminants

[USDA] United States Department of Agriculture, 2007. Census of Agriculture. See http://www.agcensus.usda.gov/Publications/2007/Full_Report/index.asp

Wells, L. E. and M. Goman. 1994. Late Holocene Environmental Variability in the Upper San Francisco Estuary as Reconstructed from Tidal Marsh Sediments, pp. 185-198, Proceedings of the Eleventh Annual Pacific Climate (PACLIM) Workshop, C. M. Isaacs and V. L. Tharp (Editors), April 19-22, 1994, Interagency Ecological Program, Technical Report 40, California Department of Water Resources.

Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay

A summary of historical reviews, reports, analyses and measurements

Appendices

Water Resources Department

Contra Costa Water District

Concord, California

February 2010

Technical Memorandum WR10-001

Historical Fresh Water and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay

Appendices
February 2010

Tables

Figures

Appendix A. Factors Influencing Salinity Intrusion

Salinity intrusion in the Delta is the result of the interaction between tidally-driven saline water from the Pacific Ocean and fresh water from rivers flowing into the Delta. Regional climate change (e.g., sea level rise and change in precipitation regime), physical changes to the Central Valley landscape (e.g., creation of artificial channels and land use changes), and water management practices (e.g., reservoir storage, water diversions for agricultural and municipal and industrial use) affect this interaction between the ocean tides and the freshwater flow, in turn affecting salinity intrusion in the Delta (The Bay Institute (TBI), 1998, Department of Public Works (DPW), 1931, Nichols *et al.*, 1986, Conomos, 1979, and Knowles, 2000).

These factors are grouped into three categories (Table A-1) and discussed individually and qualitatively to provide context for observed salinity variability, which is necessarily due to the cumulative impact of all factors.

Table A-1 – Factors Affecting Salinity Intrusion into the Delta

Natural and artificial factors affect the salinity of the Delta. The factors are grouped into three categories: regional climate change, physical changes to the landscape, and water management practices.

Category	Factors affecting salinity intrusion and specific effect on Delta salinity
Regional Climate Change	• Precipitation regime o Long-term reduction of spring (April-July) snowmelt runoff may increase salinity in the spring, summer, and fall. o A shift to more intense winter runoff may not decrease salinity in the winter because outflows are typically already high during winter storms. • Ocean conditions o Added periodic variability to precipitation (via mechanisms such as the El Niño/Southern Oscillation (ENSO) or Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO)) • Sea level rise o Expected to increase salinity intrusion (DWR, 2006). Actual salinity response to rising sea level will depend upon actions taken to protect against flooding or overtopping (e.g., new tidal marsh vs. sea walls or dykes).
Physical Changes to the Landscape	• Deepening, widening, and straightening of Delta channels o Generally increase salinity, but response will depend upon location within the Delta (DWR, 2006) • Separation of natural floodplains from valley rivers o Confining peak flows to river channels would reduce salinity during flood events. o Preventing floodplains from draining back into the main channel would increase salinity after floods (late spring and summer). • Reclamation of Delta islands o Varies (the effect on salinity depends on marsh vegetation, depth, and location), but marshes generally dampen tides, reducing salinity intrusion • Creation of canals and channel "cuts" o Generally creates more efficient routes for tidal flows to enter the Delta, thereby increasing salinity intrusion relative to native conditions • Deposition and erosion of sediments in Suisun Bay (Cappiella *et al.*, 1999) o Deposition of mining debris (occurred from 1860's to approximately 1887) reduced salinity in Suisun Bay and the western and central Delta (Enright, 2004, Enright and Culberson, 2009) o Erosion (occurring since 1887) increases salinity in Suisun Bay and the western and central Delta (Enright, 2004, Enright and Culberson, 2009)
Water Management Practices (reservoir operations, water diversions, and exports from the Delta)	• Decreasing Net Delta Outflow (NDO) by increasing upstream and in-Delta diversions as well as exports o Increases salinity • Increasing upstream storage capacity o Generally increases salinity when reservoirs are filling. Reservoir releases may decrease salinity if they increase outflow. Historically, this occurred when flood control or other releases were required in wetter years. However, as this study shows, this has generally been small and intermittent; salinity measurements indicate it occurred occasionally prior to 1985, and very seldom since. Increased early winter diversion of runoff to storage will maintain or increase high salinities in the winter.

A.1. Climatic Variability

Changes in precipitation regimes and sea levels, brought about by a changing climate, can affect the spatial and temporal salinity conditions in the Delta. Long-term variations in river runoff, precipitation and sea level are discussed below.

A.1.1. Regional Precipitation and Runoff

Precipitation in the Bay-Delta watershed sets the amount of water available within the system which could ultimately reach the Bay and affect salinity conditions. However, since precipitation falls as both rain and snow, runoff to river channels is spread over more months than the precipitation events themselves; any runoff from rain generally reaches the river channels within days of the precipitation event, but runoff resulting from snow is delayed until the spring snowmelt. For this reason, estimates of unimpaired flow (runoff), rather than precipitation, are generally used to characterize hydrological variability. Unimpaired runoff represents the natural water production of a river basin, unaltered by water diversions, reservoir storage and operation, and export of water to or import of water from other basins.

Knowles (2000) determined that variability in freshwater flows accounts for the majority of the Bay's salinity variability. The spatial distribution, seasonal timing, annual magnitude, decadal variability, and long-term trends of unimpaired flow all affect the hydrology and salinity transport in the Delta. Total annual unimpaired flow in the Sacramento and San Joaquin basins from 1872 through 2009 is presented in Section 3.1, with the seasonal distribution provided for 1921 through 2003.

The total annual unimpaired flow of the upper Sacramento Basin for water years 1906 through 2006 exhibits substantial year-to-year variability with a strong decadal oscillation in the 5-year running average (see Figure 3-1). On average, over the last 100 years, the total annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow is increasing by about 0.06% or 11 thousand-acre feet (TAF) each year. However, increased total annual unimpaired flow does not necessarily reduce salinity intrusion. Knowles (2000) illustrated that the seasonal timing of runoff can significantly alter salinity intrusion without any change to the total annual runoff.

Typically, most precipitation in California occurs during winter in the form of snow in the Sierra Nevada. The subsequent melting of this snow, beginning in the spring, feeds the rivers that flow into the Delta. The four months from April through July approximately span the spring season and represent the period of runoff due to snow melt. The long-term trend in spring (April-July) runoff decreased by approximately 1.3 MAF from 1906 to 2006 (Figure A-1). This effect is believed to be caused by climate change; as temperatures warm, more precipitation falls as rain instead of snow, and what snowpack that does accumulate tends to melt earlier in the year. This leads to higher runoff during winter months, but lower runoff in spring or summer, resulting in the potential for greater salinity intrusion. These observed changes in the magnitude and timing of spring runoff of the Sacramento River watershed are consistent with similar changes in spring runoff observed across river watersheds of the western United States (e.g., Dettinger, 2005; Mote *et al.*, 2005; Stewart *et al.*, 2005). Note that, from 1920 to 2006, the long-term trend in spring runoff actually increased slightly (approximately 0.5 MAF).

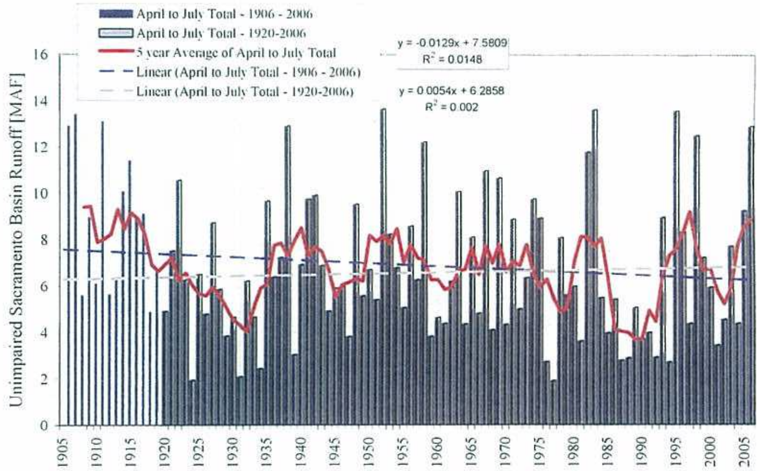


Figure A-1 – Unimpaired runoff from the Sacramento River basins from April to July
Data source: http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST.

Precipitation and runoff are influenced by regional events such as the Little Ice Age (about 1300 to 1850 CE) and the Medieval Warm Period (about 800 to about 1300 CE). During the Little Ice Age, the winter snowline in the Sierra was generally at a lower elevation, and spring and summer nighttime temperatures were significantly lower. This temperature pattern would allow the snowmelt to last further into the summer, providing a more uniform seasonal distribution of runoff such that significantly less salinity intrusion than occurs today would be expected. This expectation is borne out by paleosalinity studies (see Section 2.3).

At shorter time scales, oceanic conditions such as the Pacific Decadal Oscillation (PDO) and El Niño/Southern Oscillation (ENSO) also impact precipitation and runoff patterns. Runoff in the upper watershed is the primary factor that determines freshwater outflow from the Delta. Anthropogenic flow management (upstream diversions, reservoir operations, in-Delta diversions, and south-of-Delta exports) alters the amount and timing of flow from the upper watershed (see Section 2.3). Changes to the physical landscape further alter the amount and timing of flow (see Section 2.2).

A.1.2. Sea Level Rise

Sea level fluctuations resulting from the repeated glacial advance and retreat during the Pleistocene epoch (extending from 2 million years ago to 15,000 years ago) resulted in deposition of alternating layers of marine and alluvial sediments in the Delta (TBI, 1998). A warming trend starting about 15,000 years ago ended the last glacial advance and triggered rapid sea-level rise. At the end of this period (known as the "Holocene Transgression") approximately 6,000 years ago, sea level had risen sufficiently to inundate the Delta at high tide (Atwater *et al.*, 1979).

Sea level is estimated to have risen at an average rate of about 5 cm/century during the past 6,000 years and at an average rate of 1-2 cm/century during the past 3,000 years (Cayan *et al.*, 2008). Observations of sea level at the Golden Gate in San Francisco reveal that the mean sea level has risen at an average rate of 2.2 cm/decade (or 0.22 mm/yr) over the past 100 years (Cayan *et al.*, 2008). Future increases in sea level are expected to increase salinity intrusion into the Delta (DWR, 2006); actual salinity response to rising sea level will depend upon actions taken to protect against flooding or levee overtopping (e.g. new tidal marsh would generally reduce salinity intrusion, while construction of sea walls or dykes may further increase salinity).

A.2. Physical Changes to the Delta and Central Valley

Creation of artificial channels, reclamation of marshlands, land use changes and other physical changes to the landscape of the Delta and Central Valley have significantly altered water movement through the Delta and the intrusion of salinity into the Delta. Major physical changes to the Delta and Central Valley landscape have occurred over the last 150 years. As many of these physical changes were made prior to flow and salinity monitoring (which began in the 1920's), only a qualitative discussion is presented below.

A.2.1. Deepening, Widening, and Straightening Channels (early 1900's-present)

The lower Sacramento River was widened to 3,500 feet and straightened (creating Decker Island) around 1910 (Lund *et al.*, 2007). Progressive deepening of shipping channels began in the early 1900's. Original channel depths were less than 10 feet; channels were gradually dredged to depths exceeding 30 feet, and maintenance dredging continues today.

These changes to the river channels have increased salinity intrusion. Deepening the river channels increases the propagation speed of tidal waves, leading to increased salinity intrusion. Similarly, straightening the river channels provides a shorter path for the passage of the tidal waves and increases salinity intrusion. Widening of the river channels increases the tidal prism (the volume of water in the channels), resulting in further salinity intrusion. Larger cross-sections reduce velocities, lowering friction losses and maintaining more tidal energy, which is the driving force for dispersing salinity into the Delta.

A.2.2. Reclamation of Marshland (1850-1920)

In the Central Valley

The original natural floodplains captured large winter flows, gradually releasing the water back into the river channels throughout the spring and summer, resulting in a more uniform flow into the Delta (reduced peak flow and increased low flow) compared to current conditions. The increased surface area of water stored in these natural floodplains increased total evaporation and groundwater recharge, reducing total annual inflow into the Delta.

Even with less Delta inflow, the difference in the seasonal flow pattern may have limited salinity intrusion. The drainage of floodplains back into rivers during the spring and groundwater seepage back to the rivers in the summer and fall provided a delayed increase in river flows during the low flow period. Raising and strengthening natural levees in the Central Valley effectively disconnected the rivers from their floodplains, removing this natural water storage, increasing the peak flood flows and reducing the low flows. The net effect of these changes in the Central Valley was to reduce salinity during floods, when salinity is typically already low, and increase salinity during the following summers and falls, which is likely to have led to increased maximum annual salinity intrusion.

In the Delta

Reclamation of Delta marshland began around 1850. By 1920, almost all land within the legal Delta[1] had been diked and drained for agriculture (DPW, 1931). Before the levees were armored and the marshes were drained, the channels would have been shallower and longer (more sinuous), which would have slowed propagation of the tides into the Delta, reduced tidal energy and reduced salinity intrusion.

The natural marsh surface would have increased the tidal prism. However, the shallow marsh depth and native vegetation would have slowed the tidal wave progression. The combined effect on salinity intrusion depends on the location and depth of the marsh, the native vegetation distribution, and the dendritic channels that were removed from the tidally active system.

Figure A-2 shows the western, central, and southern portions of the Delta in 1869. For comparison, Figure A-3 shows the same area in 1992, with man-made channels highlighted grey.

A.2.3. Mining debris

Hydraulic mining in the Sierra Nevada began in the 1860's and produced large quantities of debris which traveled down the Sacramento River, through the Delta and into the Bay. Mining debris may have contributed to the extensive flooding reported in 1878 and 1881. Cappiella *et al.* (1999) estimate that, from 1867 to 1887, approximately 115 million cubic meters (Mm3) of sediment were deposited in Suisun Bay. This deposition was due to the inflow of hydraulic mining debris.

---

[1] The legal Delta is defined in California Water Code Section 12220.

Figure A-2 - Map of the Delta in 1869

Channels of the western, central, and southern Delta in 1869, prior to extensive reclamation efforts (Gibbes, 1869)

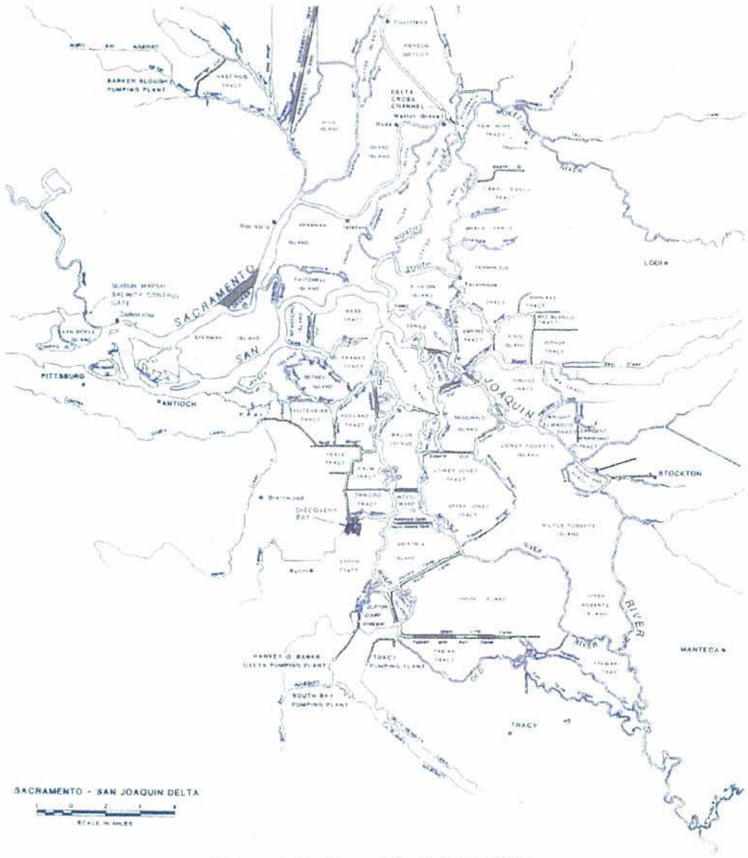


Figure A-3 – Map of the Delta in 1992

Channels of the western, central, and southern Delta from the Delta Atlas (DWR, 1992) Constructed waterways (highlighted in grey) generally create more efficient routes for tidal flows to enter the Delta, thereby increasing salinity intrusion relative to the native tidal marshes.

Cessation of hydraulic mining around 1884 resulted in erosion of Suisun Bay, which continues to erode even today. From 1887 to 1990, approximately 262 Mm3 of sediment were eroded from Suisun Bay. The net change in volume of sediment during 1867-1887 was 68 Mm3 (net deposition) and during 1887-1990 was -175 Mm3 (net erosion). As a result of these changes, the tidal flat of Suisun Bay increased from about 41 km^2 in 1867 to 52 km^2 in 1887, but decreased to 12 km^2 by 1990 (due to erosion subsequent to the cessation of hydraulic mining). Cappiella *et al.* (1999) attributed the change in the Suisun Bay area from being a largely depositional environment to an erosional environment not only to the hydraulic mining practices of the late 1800's but also to increased upstream water management practices. The Suisun Marsh Branch of the DWR estimated that erosion of Suisun Bay (modeled as a uniform change in depth of 0.75 meters) has increased salinity in Suisun Bay and the western Delta by as much as 20% (Enright, 2004; Enright and Culberson, 2009).

A.3. Water Management Practices

Extensive local, state, and federal projects have been built to move water around the state, altering the natural flow patterns throughout the Delta and in upstream watersheds. For clarity in the discussion that follows, definitions and discussions of actual flow and salinity, unimpaired flow and salinity, and natural flow and salinity, are given below.

Historical (actual) flow and salinity
Historical (or actual) flow and salinity refer to the flow and electrical conductivity, total dissolved solids concentration, or chloride concentration that occurred in the estuary. Historical conditions have been observed, measured, or estimated at various times and locations; they are now measured at monitoring stations throughout the estuary. Historical data are also used to estimate flow and water quality conditions at other locations with the following tools: the DAYFLOW program from IEP, the DSM2 model from the California Department of Water Resources, the X2[2] equation (Kimmerer and Monismith, 1992) and Contra Costa Water District's salinity outflow model (also referred to as the G-model) (Denton, 1993; Denton and Sullivan, 1993). The use of these tools to estimate flow and water quality is necessarily dependent upon the Delta configuration to which they were calibrated. Use of these tools in hypothetical configurations (such as pre-levee conditions, flooding of islands, etc) is subject to un-quantified error.

Unimpaired flow and salinity
Unimpaired flows are hypothetical flows that would have occurred in the absence of upstream diversions and storage, but with the existing Delta and tributary configuration. Unimpaired flows are estimated by the California Department of Water Resources (DWR) for the 24 basins of the Central Valley; the Delta is one of the 24 basins. Additionally, DWR estimates unimpaired in-Delta use and unimpaired net Delta outflow (NDO). Unimpaired NDO estimates can be used to estimate unimpaired water quality using a salinity-outflow relationship such as the X2 or G-model tools discussed above.

---

[2] X2 is defined as the distance from the Golden Gate to the 2 part-per-thousand isohaline (equivalent to a salinity of 2 grams of salt per kilogram of water), measured along the axis of the San Francisco Estuary. X2 is often used as an indicator of freshwater availability and fish habitat conditions in the Delta (Jassby *et al.*, 1995; Monismith, 1998).

Since unimpaired flows assume the existing Delta configuration, the use of these tools should not violate their basic assumptions. However, the results should be taken in context. Water quality based on unimpaired flows compared to water quality based on historical (actual) flows shows how water management activities affect water quality. Water quality based on unimpaired flows cannot be considered natural.

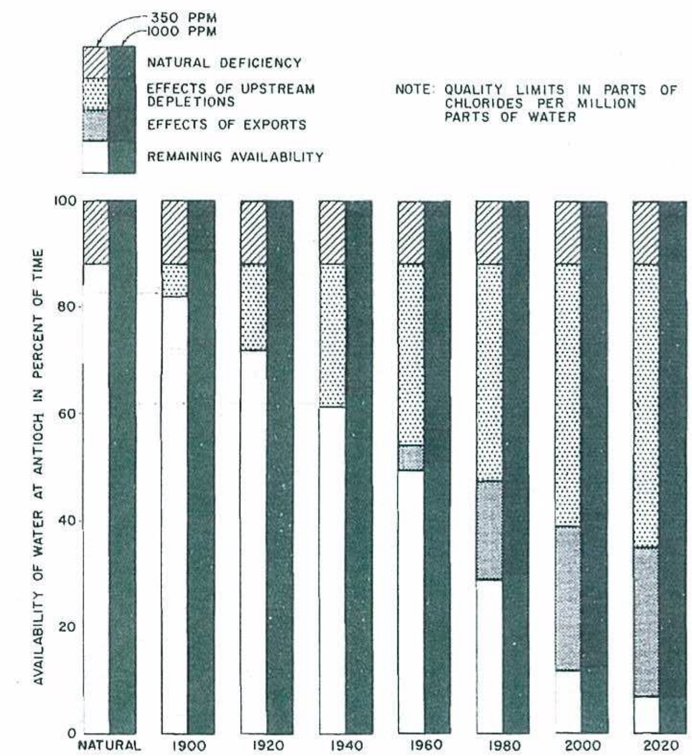
Natural flow and salinity
Natural flow and salinity reflect pre-European settlement conditions, with a virgin landscape in both the Central Valley and the Delta, native vegetation, and no diversions or constructed storage. As discussed above, the natural landscape included natural storage on the floodplains and extensive Delta marsh. Estimation of natural flow requires assumptions regarding the pre-European landscape and vegetation throughout the Central Valley. Estimation of natural salinity requires development of new models to account for pre-European Delta geometry, incorporating the estimates of natural flow. These assumptions induce an unknown level of error. For this reason, no attempt is made in this report to calculate natural flow or the resulting salinity. Instead, paleosalinity studies are examined to provide evidence of salinity in the pre-European era.

Water management practices have continually evolved since the mid-1850's. As discussed in Section 1.1, anthropogenic modification include diversion of water upstream and within the Delta, construction of reservoirs, and system operations to meet regulatory requirements.

The irrigated acreage in the Central Valley has been steadily increasing since 1880 (Figure 1-3), increasing the upstream diversions of water. There were two periods of rapid growth in irrigated acreage: from 1880 to 1920 and from 1940 to 1980. In-Delta diversions (Figure 1-3) began in 1869 with reclamation of Sherman Island; from 1869 to 1930, in-Delta diversions are assumed to have grown in proportion to the area of reclaimed marshland (from Atwater *et al.*, 1979).

Upstream diversions first became an issue with respect to Delta salinity around 1916 with the rapid growth of the rice cultivation industry (Antioch Case, Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District, 1922, 188 Cal. 451; see Appendix E.2). These early "pre-project" diversions for irrigation had particularly large impacts because of the seasonality of water availability and water use. Diversions for agriculture typically start in the spring and continue through the early fall (when river flow is already low). These early irrigation practices, combined with the decrease in spring and summer flow due to the separation of rivers from their natural floodplains, resulted in a significant reduction of the spring and summer river flow, leading to increased salinity intrusion.

Figure A-4 shows the Department of Water Resources' estimates of the effects of upstream diversions and south-of-Delta exports on the salinity in the San Joaquin River at Antioch (DWR, 1960). DWR's 1960 report indicated that water with less than 350 mg/L chlorides would be present at Antioch approximately 88% of the time on average "naturally," and that availability decreased to approximately 62% by 1940 due to upstream diversions. This illustrates that upstream depletions had a significant effect on salinity at Antioch during 1900-1940, prior to the construction of large upstream reservoirs. (For reference, Shasta Dam was completed in 1945.)



DELTA WATER QUALITY WITHOUT SALINITY CONTROL

Figure A-4 - Salinity on the San Joaquin River at Antioch (DWR, 1960)
The Department of Water Resources examined the effects of upstream depletions and south-of-Delta exports on salinity in the San Joaquin River at Antioch, estimating the percent of time water that a certain quality of water (with less than 350 mg/L chlorides; or less than 1,000 mg/L chlorides) would be available in the river without reservoir releases to provide salinity control. The estimates for 1960, 1980, 2000, and 2020 assume the reservoirs do not make releases for salinity control and therefore underestimate the actual quality of water during these years.

Figure A-4 also shows estimates of the availability of water in 1960, 1980, 2000, and 2020, without reservoir releases to provide salinity control, demonstrating that upstream depletions and in-Delta exports would have continued to degrade water quality at Antioch.

Exports from the south Delta started in 1951 with the completion of the federal Central Valley Project pumping facility near Tracy, California. Exports from the State Water Project Banks Pumping Plant, just to the west of the federal facility, began in 1967. As shown in Figure 1-3, south-of-Delta exports increased rapidly from 1951 through the mid-1970s, and since then the combined exports have averaged more than 4 million acre-feet per year.

Construction of upstream reservoirs also altered natural patterns of flow into the Delta. Figure A-5 and Figure A-6 show the extent and rapid rise of constructed reservoirs in the upstream watersheds of the Delta (DWR, 1993). The location, year of completion and approximate storage capacities (in acre-feet, AF) are shown in Figure A-5. Figure A-6 shows the temporal development of reservoir capacity. Reservoir construction began in 1850. The major reservoirs of the Central Valley Project (CVP) and State Water Project (SWP) are the Shasta (4.5 MAF capacity) and Oroville (3.5 MAF) reservoirs, respectively. These reservoirs capture the flow in the wet season (reducing the flow into the Delta in the wet season) and release water for irrigation and diversions.

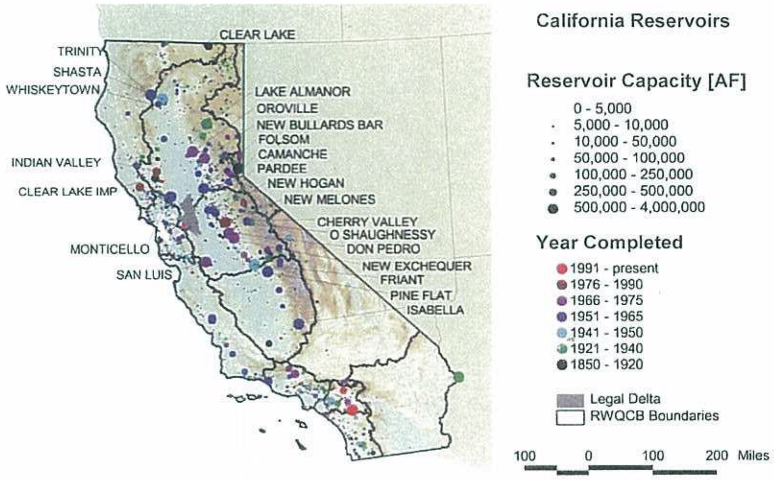


Figure A-5 – Storage reservoirs in California
Location of storage reservoirs within California. Reservoir capacity is indicated by the size of the circle, while the year construction was completed is indicated by color.

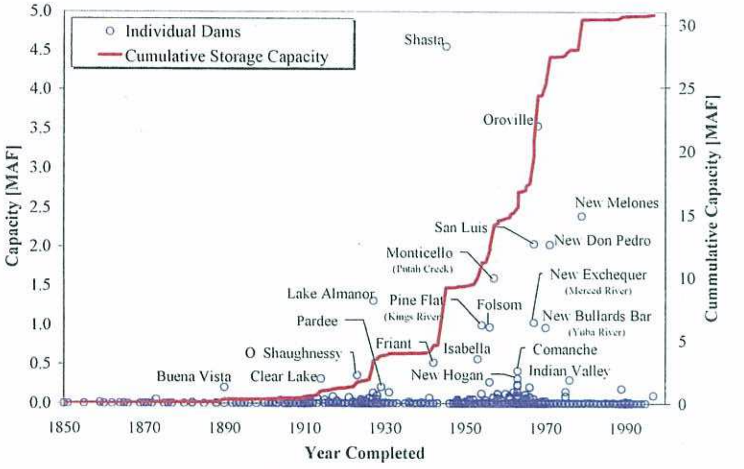


Figure A-6 – Surface Reservoir Capacity

Timeline of reservoir development in California. Individual reservoir capacity is indicated by the blue circles (left axis), while the cumulative capacity is indicated with the red line (right axis).

Water management practices have been altered by regulations that require maintenance of specified flow and salinity conditions at locations in the Bay-Delta region during certain periods of the year. The 1978 Water Quality Control Plan and State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) Decision 1485 established water quality standards to manage salinity to protect Delta agriculture and municipal and industrial (M&I) uses. The listing of delta smelt as a threatened species under the Endangered Species Act in 1993, followed by the Bay-Delta Accord in 1994 and the adoption of a new water quality control plan by the State Water Resources Control Board in 1995 changed the amount and timing of reservoir releases and south-of-Delta exports. California's Rice Straw Burning Act was enacted in 1992 to reduce air pollution by phasing out the burning of rice field stubble; by 1999, Sacramento Basin rice farmers were diverting additional water to flood harvested fields to decompose the stubble.

Changes in water diversions and reservoir operations have altered the magnitude and timing of river flows to the Delta, and anthropogenic modifications to the Delta landscape have altered the interaction of fresh water from the rivers with salt water from the ocean, thus changing patterns of salinity intrusion into the Delta.

Appendix B. Paleoclimatic Records of Hydrology and Salinity

This section presents paleoclimate records of hydrology (precipitation and unimpaired runoff) and salinity in the Bay-Delta region, in addition to those presented in Section 2 of the main report.

B.1. Methods of Paleoclimatic Reconstruction

The field of paleoclimatology aims to deduce climatological information from natural "archives" in order to reconstruct past global climate. These archives are created by such Earth processes as the formation of ice sheets, sediments, rocks, and forests. Examples of information sampled from such archives include atmospheric temperatures from ice cores and precipitation cycles from tree rings. When samples are dated, through radiometric or other methods, the data preserved therein become proxy indices, establishing a timeline of major events in the local environment of the sample. Multiple samples collected over larger spatial scales can be cross-dated to create regional climate and landscape process chronologies.

The material sampled for paleoclimatic reconstructions has limitations that decrease the resolution and confidence of data going back in time. Although paleoclimatic reconstructions have a coarser temporal resolution than modern measurements, the variations in climate and landscape responses to change are reliably described "in the first person" because the evidence of localized climate change is preserved as a time series *in situ*, absent of human influence.

The San Francisco Bay-Delta has been the focus of several paleoclimatic reconstructions. Surveys have sampled from Browns Island (Goman and Wells, 2000; May, 1999; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004), Roe Island (May, 1999; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004) Rush Ranch (Starratt, 2001; Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Starratt, 2004), and China Camp and Benicia State Parks (Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004).

Sediment cores are the predominate archive used to reconstruct Bay-Delta climate. Changes in wetland plant and algae communities are the dominant response in the Bay-Delta to climate change and associated fluctuations in temperature and precipitation. Proxies of plant and algae response to environmental conditions are preserved in the sediment cores and determined by quantification and taxonomic identification of diatom frustules (Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Starratt, 2001; Starratt, 2004), plant seeds and roots (Goman and Wells, 2000) and plant pollen (May, 1999; Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004) and measurement of peat carbon isotope ratios (Byrne *et al.*, 2001; Malamud-Roam and Ingram, 2004).

Plant communities in the Delta are characterized by salt tolerance. Salt-tolerant plant communities are dominated by pickleweed (*Salicornia* spp.) while freshwater plant assemblages are dominated by tule (*Scirpus* spp.) and cattail (*Typha* spp.) (Atwater *et al.*, 1979). Plants contribute pollen, seeds, and vegetative tissue in the form of peat to the sediment archive. Plant material deposited to surface sediments are significantly correlated to the surrounding standing vegetation, and thus plant material preserved in sediment cores are considered autochthonous to the type of wetland existent at the time of sediment deposition, allowing reconstruction of the salinity conditions in the Delta over time.

Diatom taxa are classified according to their salinity preference expressed as the Diatom Salinity Index (DSI) (Eq 1) (Starratt, 2004). Starratt (2001) classified salinity preference as freshwater (F; 0-2‰), freshwater and brackish water (FB; 0-30‰), brackish (B; 2-30‰), brackish and marine (BM; 2-35‰), and marine (M; 30-35‰). Samples dominated by marine taxa have a DSI range of 0.00 to 0.30.

$$DSI = \frac{F + FB + 0.5B}{F + FB + B + BM + M} \qquad (1)$$

Carbon-isotope ratios ($^{13}C/^{12}C$) (Eq 2) are measured by spectrometry and the δ notation calculated as

$$\delta^{13}C = \left[\left(\frac{{}^{13}C/{}^{12}C_{sample}}{{}^{13}C/{}^{12}C_{std}}\right) - 1\right] \times 1000 \qquad (2)$$

The $\delta^{13}C$ value of peat samples is a proxy for the composition of the plant assemblages contributing vegetation to the formation of the peat. Plants utilizing the C_4 mechanism have higher $\delta^{13}C$ values (~-14‰) than those utilizing the C_3 or CAM (~-27‰) (Table B-1). Using the $\delta^{13}C$ proxy can detect the presence of upland bunchgrasses such as *Spartina* and *Distichlis*.

Pollen can be classified to the taxonomic family level. *Chenopodiaceae (*now *Salicornioideae*) is representative of salt-tolerant *Salicornia*. *Cyperaceae* is representative of freshwater species including *Scirpus*. The ratio of *Chenopodiaceae* to the sum of *Chenopodiaceae* and *Cyperaceae* (Eq. 3) is a proxy of the percent relative abundance of salt-tolerant species (May, 1999).

$$\%ST = \frac{Chenopodiaceae}{Chenopodiaceae + Cyperaceae} \qquad (3)$$

To establish chronologies for sediment archives, dates must be established for when material was deposited through the length of the sediment cores. Radiocarbon dating by Accelerator Mass Spectrometry (AMS) determines age by counting the ^{14}C content of plant seeds or carbonate shells calibrated against a northern hemisphere atmospheric carbon calibration curve (Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2006). Radiocarbon dating is valid to about 40,000 years before present (BP)[3], making it an ideal method for establishing dates through the period of interest for the Bay and Delta. When archived proxies are correlated with the sediment core chronology, a timeline is established reconstructing past climate and landscape response.

Table B-1 – Carbon Isotope Ratios ($\delta^{13}C$) of Plant Species in the San Francisco Estuary
(adapted from Byrne et al. 2001)

Species	Common Name	Photosynthetic Pathway	δ13C (‰)
Distichlis spicata	Saltgrass	C4	-13.5
Spartina foliosa	California cordgrass	C4	-12.7
Cuscuta salina	Salt-marsh dodder	C3	-29.8
Frankenia grandifolia	Alkali heath	C3	-30.2
Grindelia stricta	Gumplant	C3	-26.4
Jaumea carnosa	Marsh jaumea	C3	-27.2
Juncus balticus	Baltic rush	C3	-28.4
Lepidium latifolium	Perennial pepperweed	C3	-26.6
Scirpus californicus	California bulrush	C3	-27.5
Scirpus maritimus	Alkali bulrush	C3	-25.5
Typha latifolia	Cattail	C3	-27.8
Salicornia virginica	Pickleweed	CAM	-27.2

A large number of paleoclimatic reconstructions exist for California and the western U.S., but a complete discussion is beyond the scope of this report. These reconstructions are reviewed by Malamud-Roam *et al.* (2006; 2007) and provide important context to events in the Bay and Delta by recording major non-localized events and larger regional climate shifts. Important examples include: Central Valley oaks, Sierra Nevada giant sequoias, and White Mountain Bristlecone pines used to establish precipitation and temperature from the location of the tree line and tree rings; Mono Lake sediments and submerged tree stump rings for precipitation; and Sacramento and San Joaquin River floodplain deposits for flood events. These studies establish a record of environmental conditions in the Bay and Delta from their formation to the present.

B.2. Major Regional Climatic Events

Formation of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta

The Holocene epoch began approximately 8000 BCE at the end of Pleistocene glaciations (Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2007). In the early Holocene, a general warming and drying period in California accompanied high orbitally driven insolation until insolation reached current values at approximately 6000 BCE. In the Sierra Nevada, western slopes were in the early stages of ecological succession following the retreat of glaciers. The modern river floodplain systems were forming in the Central Valley. Parts of the Delta and Bay were river valleys prior to approximately 8000 to 6000 BCE, when rapidly rising sea level entered the Golden Gate and formed the early Bay estuary (Atwater *et al.*, 1979). A fringe of tidal marshes retreated from a spreading Bay until approximately 4000 BCE when the rate of submergence slowed to 1 to 2 cm per year, allowing the formation of extensive Delta marshes over the next 2000 years (Atwater *et al.*, 1979). Sedimentation from upstream sources kept up with subsidence from increasing sea-level rise.

2000 – 1 BCE

After 2000 BCE, information from archives indicates climate in the Bay and Delta was cooler with greater freshwater inflows. The Sierra Nevada became more moist and cooler during a period ca. 4000-3500 BP (Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2006).

1 BCE - Present

The cooler and wetter period ended approximately 1 BCE, replaced by more arid conditions (Malamud-Roam, 2007). Major climatic events, known from other parts of the world, are captured in the regional paleoclimatic reconstructions and help to calibrate or correlate these reconstructions to global events. Unusually dry conditions prevailed during the Medieval Warm Period (approximately 800-1300 CE). Wetter and cooler conditions existed during the Little Ice Age (approximately 1400-1700 CE). These climate variations are reflected in variations in the plant communities.

Droughts

Two extreme droughts occurred in the region from about 900 to 1150 CE and from 1200 to 1350 CE. Low freshwater inflows to the Delta occurred during periods 1230-1150, 1400-1300, 2700-2600, and 3700-3450 B.P.

Flood Events

Periods of increase moisture occurred from 800-730 BP and 650-300 BP. Massive flooding inundated the Central Valley in the winter of 1861 (Malamud-Roam *et al.*, 2006). High periods of inflow occurred during 1180-1100, 2400-2200, 3400-3100, and 5100-3800 BP.

Sampling for paleoclimatic reconstructions captures the modern era, enabling a comparison of current conditions with conditions over the past several thousand years. The erratic nature of precipitation in California observed over the past century have been normal and small compared to natural variations over the past millennia.

Reconstructed River Flow and Precipitation Records

Meko *et al.* (2001a) used tree-ring chronologies in statistical regression models to reconstruct time series of annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow for approximately the past 1,100 years (see Section 2.1). Similarly, Graumlich (1987) used tree ring data from the Pacific Northwest to reconstruct precipitation records for the period of 1675-1975 (Figure B-1). Compared to the average observed precipitation from 1899 to 1975, the reconstructed record has above-average precipitation during the latter half of the nineteenth century (1850-1900) (Figure B-1). These relatively wet conditions during the late 1800's and the severe dry

---

[3] Before Present (BP) is a time scale, with the year 1950 as the origin, used in many scientific disciplines. Thus, 100 BP refers to the calendar year 1850.

conditions from the 1920's trough the 1930's in the reconstructed precipitation record are consistent with the annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow reconstruction from Meko *et al*. (2001) presented in Section 2.1.

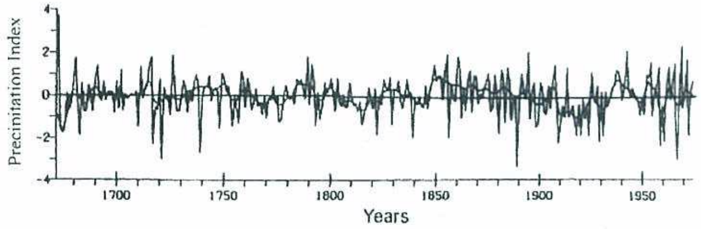


Figure B-1 – Reconstructed annual precipitation, 1675-1975
Data from Graumlich (1987). Precipitation index is presented in units of standard deviation from the 1899-1975 observed mean value.

Estimates of annual precipitation (Graumlich, 1987) and unimpaired runoff (Meko *et al*., 2001a) from tree ring analysis are used in this study to provide hydrological context, indicating the relative hydrology (e.g. wet or dry) of a specific year and surrounding decade. The reconstructed hydrological data are not used to estimate salinity intrusion for two reasons. First, the seasonal distribution of hydrology is critical in determining salinity variability; two years with the same total annual flow could have significantly different salinity intrusion due to the timing of the flow (Knowles, 2000). Second, since 1850, anthropogenic modifications to the landscape and river flows alter the hydrodynamic response to freshwater flow, somewhat decoupling the unimpaired hydrology from the downstream response (i.e. salinity intrusion).

Malamud-Roam *et al*. (2005) and Goman *et al*. (2008) review paleoclimate as it relates to San Francisco Bay. Generally, they found that paleoclimatic studies showed that a wetter (and fresher) period existed from about 4000 BP to about 2000 BP. In the past 2,000 years, the climate has been cooling and becoming drier, with several extreme periods, including decades-long periods of very wet conditions and century-long periods of drought. As discussed in the next section, the century-long periods of drought are found in paleosalinity records in Suisun Bay and Rush Ranch in Suisun Marsh, but are much less evident in Browns Island, indicating a predominately freshwater marsh throughout the Delta. Citing Meko *et al*. (2001), they note that only one period had a six-year drought more severe than the 1928-1934 period: a seven-year drought ending in 984 CE. They also not the most extreme dry year was in 1580 CE, and state that it was almost certainly drier than 1977. On the whole, however, the last 600 years have been a generally wet period. This is reflected in the salinity records discussed in the next section.

B.3. *Reconstructed Salinity in the Bay-Delta*

Starratt (2001) reconstructed historical salinity variability at Rush Ranch, in the northwestern Suisun Marsh, over the last 3,000 years by examining diatoms from sediment cores. The taxa were classified according to their salinity preference: freshwater (< 2‰), freshwater and brackish water (0‰ to 30‰), brackish (2‰ to 30‰), brackish and marine (2‰ to > 30‰), and marine (> 30‰). Based on the composition of the diatom assemblages, Starrat identified centennial-scale salinity cycles (Table B-2).

Table B-2 – Salinity Intervals over the last 3,000 years at Rush Ranch
Salinity intervals determined from the diatom populations in a sediment core in northwestern Suisun Marsh.

Approximate Years	*Type of Interval* [a]
1850 CE – present	[not classified]
1250 CE – 1850 CE	fresh
250 CE – 1250 CE	brackish
500 BCE – 250 CE	fresh
1000 BCE – 500 BCE	brackish

[a] Classification according to Starratt (2001)

These results correspond well to other paleoclimatic reconstructions. The most recent broad-scale freshwater interval roughly corresponds to the Little Ice Age, and the most recent brackish interval corresponds to the Medieval Warm Period.

Starratt notes that the post-1850 interval indicates an increase in the percentage of diatoms that prefer brackish and marine salinities compared to the last freshwater interval, indicating an increase in salinity during the last 150 years, in comparison to the previous 600 years. During the post-1850 period, diatoms that prefer "marine" environments constitute as much as 50% of the total diatom population, a percentage that is at or above that of any other period. During the most recent years, "freshwater" assemblages constitute about 20% of the total population, a percentage that is only about 10% higher than the most recent *brackish* interval from 250 to 1250 CE.

Malamud-Roam *et al*. (2006) compared reconstructed salinity records for the past three thousand years from four locations (three tidal marsh locations and one location in the Bay) in the Bay-Delta region (Figure B-2(a)). Figure B-2(b) shows several periods with higher than average salinity (e.g., 1600-1300 and 1000-800 BP and 1900 CE to present) and several periods with lower than average salinity (e.g., 1300 to 1200 BP and 150 to 100 BP). These paleosalinity records are consistent with each other and with the paleoclimatic records of river flow and salinity presented in Section 2.

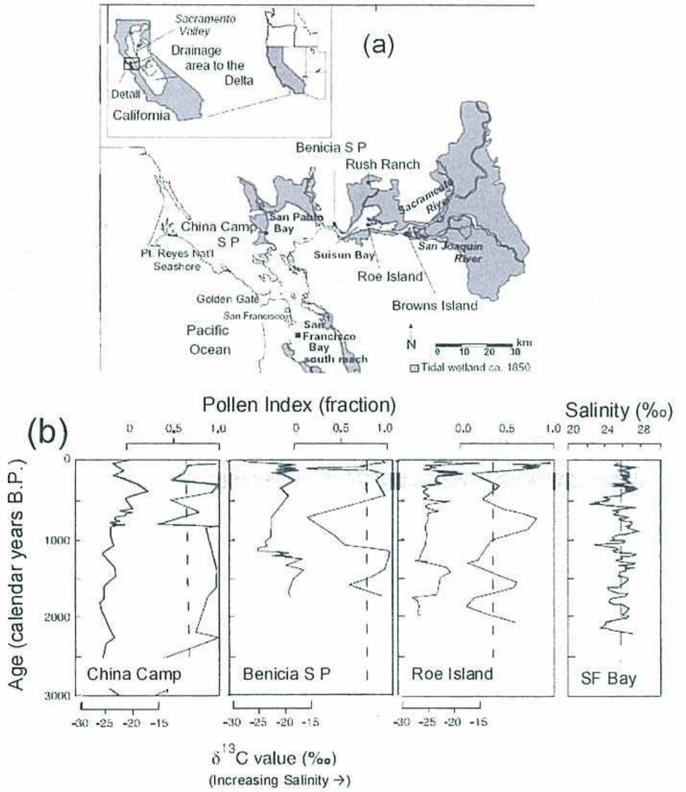


Figure B-2 – Paleosalinity records at selected sites in the San Francisco Estuary

(a) location of the three tidal marsh sites (China Camp, Benicia State Park and Roe Island) and one site in the Estuary (Oyster Point in San Francisco Bay) where sediment cores were obtained.
(b) time series for the pollen index (ranging from 0 to 1, higher values corresponding to higher salinity) and the δ13C values at the tidal marsh sites; salinity at Oyster Point, San Francisco Bay (inferred from δ13O values) is also shown. The broken line shows the estimated mean pollen index prior to European disturbance. (modified from Malamud-Roam and Ingram (2004) and Malamud-Roam et al. (2006))

Appendix C. Quantitative Hydrological Observations

Long-term records of river runoff are useful in understanding hydroclimatic variations. Section 3.1 discusses the long-term variations of the unimpaired Sacramento River runoff and unimpaired San Joaquin River runoff. The estimates of these variables from early 1900's to the present are available on the internet. Estimates prior to the early 1900's (late 1800's to early 1900's) were obtained from a 1923 California Department of Public Works report (DPW, 1923). Table C-1 through Table C-4 present estimates of Sacramento River runoff and San Joaquin River runoff for the period of 1872-2008, obtained from DPW (1923) and http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST.

The unimpaired Sacramento River runoff is the sum of the flows from the Sacramento River at Bend Bridge, Feather River inflow to Lake Oroville, Yuba River at Smartville, and the American River inflow to Folsom Lake. The unimpaired San Joaquin River runoff is the sum of the flows from the Stanislaus River inflow to New Melones Lake, Tuolumne River inflow to New Don Pedro Reservoir, Merced River inflow to Lake McClure, and San Joaquin River inflow to Millerton Lake.

Table C-1 – Annual unimpaired Sacramento River runoff for 1872-1905
Data source: DPW (1923

Water Year	Sacramento River @ Bend Bridge	Feather River @ Lake Oroville	Yuba River @ Smartville	American River @ Folsom Lake	Sacramento River Runoff
	Acre-feet (AF)				Million acre-feet (MAF)
1872	10,200,000	7,254,000	4,352,000	4,215,600	**26.0**
1873	4,780,000	3,347,000	1,638,400	1,862,200	**11.6**
1874	7,300,000	5,571,000	3,340,800	3,079,800	**19.3**
1875	4,390,000	2,747,000	1,561,600	1,391,600	**10.1**
1876	14,500,000	6,867,000	3,594,000	4,450,900	**29.4**
1877	9,870,000	2,437,000	1,292,800	1,289,200	**14.9**
1878	17,800,000	4,836,000	2,528,000	2,721,700	**27.9**
1879	8,380,000	5,513,000	2,796,800	3,304,900	**20.0**
1880	12,300,000	7,061,000	3,641,600	4,502,100	**27.5**
1881	15,400,000	5,610,000	3,104,000	3,540,300	**27.7**
1882	8,000,000	4,797,000	2,150,400	3,264,000	**18.2**
1883	6,670,000	3,714,000	1,804,800	2,169,200	**14.4**
1884	11,400,000	6,190,000	3,104,000	4,103,000	**24.8**
1885	6,460,000	3,482,000	2,304,000	1,780,400	**14.0**
1886	14,400,000	6,384,000	3,174,400	3,918,900	**27.9**
1887	6,670,000	2,611,000	1,561,600	1,862,200	**12.7**
1888	5,430,000	2,669,000	998,400	1,575,700	**10.7**
1889	10,600,000	5,126,000	1,612,800	1,903,200	**19.2**
1890	22,700,000	12,090,000	6,176,000	7,725,200	**48.7**
1891	6,460,000	3,482,000	1,747,200	1,944,100	**13.6**
1892	7,250,000	5,416,000	1,945,600	2,568,200	**17.2**
1893	12,400,000	7,177,000	3,488,000	4,399,800	**27.5**
1894	8,640,000	4,410,000	2,432,000	3,304,900	**18.8**
1895	12,300,000	7,177,000	4,160,000	4,737,400	**28.4**
1896	11,343,200	7,738,000	3,641,600	3,857,500	**26.6**
1897	10,391,400	5,610,000	3,040,000	3,632,400	**22.7**
1898	5,135,800	2,805,000	1,184,000	1,186,900	**10.3**
1899	5,977,400	3,288,000	1,984,000	2,362,600	**13.6**
1900	8,712,500	6,500,000	2,956,800	3,683,500	**21.9**
1901	9,020,900	6,229,000	2,854,400	3,714,200	**21.8**
1902	11,380,600	4,468,000	2,432,000	3,079,800	**21.4**
1903	9,941,800	4,483,500	2,368,000	3,038,900	**19.8**
1904	16,095,800	9,377,000	4,101,800	5,249,000	**34.8**
1905	10,775,200	4,529,200	2,403,500	2,050,000	**19.8**

Table C-2 – Annual unimpaired Sacramento River runoff for 1906-2009

Data Source: http: cdec.water.ca.gov cgi-progs iodir WSIHIST

Water Year	Sacramento River Runoff (MAF)	Water Year	Sacramento River Runoff (MAF)	Water Year	Sacramento River Runoff (MAF)	Water Year	Sacramento River Runoff (MAF)
1906	26.7	1936	17.4	1966	13.0	1996	22.3
1907	33.7	1937	13.3	1967	24.1	1997	25.4
1908	14.8	1938	31.8	1968	13.6	1998	31.4
1909	30.7	1939	8.2	1969	27.0	1999	21.2
1910	20.1	1940	22.4	1970	24.1	2000	18.9
1911	26.4	1941	27.1	1971	22.6	2001	9.8
1912	11.4	1942	25.2	1972	13.4	2002	14.6
1913	12.9	1943	21.1	1973	20.1	2003	19.3
1914	27.8	1944	10.4	1974	32.5	2004	16.0
1915	23.9	1945	15.1	1975	19.2	2005	18.6
1916	24.1	1946	17.6	1976	8.2	2006	32.1
1917	17.3	1947	10.4	1977	5.1	2007	10.3
1918	11.0	1948	15.8	1978	23.9	2008	10.3
1919	15.7	1949	12.0	1979	12.4	2009	12.9
1920	9.2	1950	14.4	1980	22.3		
1921	23.8	1951	23.0	1981	11.1		
1922	18.0	1952	28.6	1982	33.4		
1923	13.2	1953	20.1	1983	37.7		
1924	5.7	1954	17.4	1984	22.4		
1925	16.0	1955	11.0	1985	11.0		
1926	11.8	1956	29.9	1986	25.8		
1927	23.8	1957	14.9	1987	9.3		
1928	16.8	1958	29.7	1988	9.2		
1929	8.4	1959	12.1	1989	14.8		
1930	13.5	1960	13.1	1990	9.3		
1931	6.1	1961	12.0	1991	8.4		
1932	13.1	1962	15.1	1992	8.9		
1933	8.9	1963	23.0	1993	22.2		
1934	8.6	1964	10.9	1994	7.8		
1935	16.6	1965	25.6	1995	34.6		

Table C-3 – Annual unimpaired San Joaquin River runoff for 1872-1900

Data source: DPW (1923)

Water Year	Stanislaus River @ New Melones Lake	Tuolumne River @ New Don Pedro Reservoir	Merced River @ Lake McClure	San Joaquin River @ Millerton Lake	San Joaquin River Runoff
	units of acre-feet (AF)				units of million acre-feet (MAF)
1872	1,860,000	2,624,000	1,511,000	2,627,000	**8.6**
1873	959,000	1,543,000	769,000	1,122,000	**4.4**
1874	970,000	1,576,000	791,000	1,862,000	**5.2**
1875	482,000	982,000	439,000	887,000	**2.8**
1876	2,930,000	4,059,000	2,384,000	2,862,000	**12.2**
1877	408,900	561,000	220,000	809,000	**2.0**
1878	1,570,000	2,286,000	1,274,000	2,218,000	**7.3**
1879	823,000	1,353,000	659,000	470,000	**3.3**
1880	1,390,000	2,071,000	1,132,000	3,349,000	**7.9**
1881	970,000	1,576,000	791,000	2,740,000	**6.1**
1882	944,000	1,526,000	764,000	1,000,000	**4.2**
1883	1,020,000	1,600,000	813,000	1,392,000	**4.8**
1884	2,250,000	3,152,000	1,840,000	5,732,000	**13.0**
1885	582,000	1,097,000	505,000	1,218,000	**3.4**
1886	2,070,000	2,929,000	1,692,000	5,211,000	**11.9**
1887	619,000	1,139,000	538,000	1,479,000	**3.8**
1888	540,000	1,048,000	478,000	957,000	**3.0**
1889	718,000	1,262,000	599,000	1,574,000	**4.2**
1890	3,580,000	5,099,000	2,955,000	4,349,000	**16.0**
1891	959,000	1,543,000	769,000	1,227,000	**4.5**
1892	1,050,000	1,650,000	846,000	1,931,000	**5.5**
1893	2,150,000	3,036,000	1,758,000	1,914,000	**8.9**
1894	1,860,000	2,624,000	1,511,000	1,331,000	**7.3**
1895	2,700,000	3,795,000	2,236,000	2,786,700	**11.5**
1896	1,380,000	1,588,100	1,110,000	1,985,700	**6.1**
1897	1,920,000	2,437100	1,566,000	2,219,700	**8.1**
1898	498,000	960,500	450,000	922,300	**2.8**
1899	1,030,000	1,334,700	824,000	1,269,500	**4.5**
1900	1,350,000	1,628,100	1,099,000	1,343,000	**5.4**

Table C-4 – Annual unimpaired San Joaquin River runoff for 1901-2009

Data Source: *http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST*

Water Year	San Joaquin River Runoff (MAF)	Water Year	San Joaquin River Runoff (MAF)	Water Year	San Joaquin River Runoff (MAF)	Water Year	San Joaquin River Runoff (MAF)
1901	9.4	1931	1.7	1961	2.1	1991	3.2
1902	5.1	1932	6.6	1962	5.6	1992	2.6
1903	5.7	1933	3.3	1963	6.2	1993	8.4
1904	7.6	1934	2.3	1964	3.1	1994	2.5
1905	5.3	1935	6.4	1965	8.1	1995	12.3
1906	12.4	1936	6.5	1966	4.0	1996	7.2
1907	11.8	1937	6.5	1967	10.0	1997	9.5
1908	3.3	1938	11.2	1968	2.9	1998	10.4
1909	9.0	1939	2.9	1969	12.3	1999	5.9
1910	6.6	1940	6.6	1970	5.6	2000	5.9
1911	11.5	1941	7.9	1971	4.9	2001	3.2
1912	3.2	1942	7.4	1972	3.6	2002	4.1
1913	3.0	1943	7.3	1973	6.5	2003	4.9
1914	8.7	1944	3.9	1974	7.1	2004	3.8
1915	6.4	1945	6.6	1975	6.2	2005	9.2
1916	8.4	1946	5.7	1976	2.0	2006	10.4
1917	6.7	1947	3.4	1977	1.1	2007	2.5
1918	4.6	1948	4.2	1978	9.7	2008	3.5
1919	4.1	1949	3.8	1979	6.0	2009	5.0
1920	4.1	1950	4.7	1980	9.5		
1921	5.9	1951	7.3	1981	3.2		
1922	7.7	1952	9.3	1982	11.4		
1923	5.5	1953	4.4	1983	15.0		
1924	1.5	1954	4.3	1984	7.1		
1925	5.5	1955	3.5	1985	3.6		
1926	3.5	1956	9.7	1986	9.5		
1927	6.5	1957	4.3	1987	2.1		
1928	4.4	1958	8.4	1988	2.5		
1929	2.8	1959	3.0	1989	3.6		
1930	3.3	1960	3.0	1990	2.5		

Appendix D. Instrumental Observations of Salinity

In Section 3, historical variations in the net quantity of water flowing from the Delta to the Suisun Bay (called net Delta outflow or NDO) and salinity in the western Delta were discussed using available observations and a suite of commonly used modeling tools. This section presents additional information on the historical variations of NDO and salinity in the western Delta and Suisun Bay discussed in Section 3.

D.1. Introduction

D.1.1. Salinity Units

Salinity is specified in this report either as electrical conductivity (EC, in units of microSiemens per centimeter, or µS/cm) or as a concentration of chloride in water (in units of milligrams of chloride per liter of water, or mg/L). Conversion between EC and chloride concentration is accomplished using site-specific empirical relationships developed by Kamyar Guivetchi (DWR, 1986). Table D-1 presents a sample of typical EC concentrations and their approximate equivalent chloride concentrations.

Table D-1 – Typical electrical conductivity (EC) and equivalent chloride concentration

Electrical Conductivity (µS/cm)	Chloride (mg/L)
350	50
525	100
1,050	250
1,900	500
2,640	700
3,600	1,000

Qualitative terms such as "fresh" and "brackish" are often used to describe relative salinity. The quantitative thresholds of average chloride concentration that distinguish fresh water from brackish water and the averaging time period vary among studies. For instance, chloride concentrations of 1,000 mg/L, 700 mg/L, and 50 mg/L have been used by different studies (Table D-2).

D.1.2. Temporal and Spatial Variability of Salinity

The main variability in salinity along the length of the Bay-Delta system is due to the gradient from saline Pacific Ocean water (EC of approximately 50,000 µS/cm) to fresh water of the Central Valley rivers (EC of approximately 100 µS/cm). However, the salinity in the Bay-Delta varies both in space and time. It is important to clarify which time scales and measurement locations are being used when comparing and discussing salinity trends.

Table D-2 – Metrics used to distinguish between "fresh" and "brackish" water

Description	Sample timing or averaging	Salinity Value	
		Chloride (mg/L)	EC (µS/cm)
Isohalines in Delta Atlas (DWR, 1995)	Annual maximum of the daily maximum	1,000 mg/L	3,700 µS/cm
X2 position (Jassby *et al.*, 1995)	Daily average (or a 14-day average)	700 mg/L	2,640 µS/cm
Barge travel by C&H[4]	Monthly average of the daily maximum	50 mg/L	350 µS/cm

Salinity in the western Delta is strongly influenced by tides. The hourly or daily variability of salinity can be much larger than the seasonal or annual variability. For instance, during the fall of 1999 (following a relatively wet year[5]), hourly EC in the San Joaquin River at Antioch varied by about 6,000 µS/cm (from about 3,000 µS/cm to 9,000 µS/cm) while the daily-averaged EC for all of 1999 ranged from about 100 µS/cm to 6,000 µS/cm (Figure D-1).

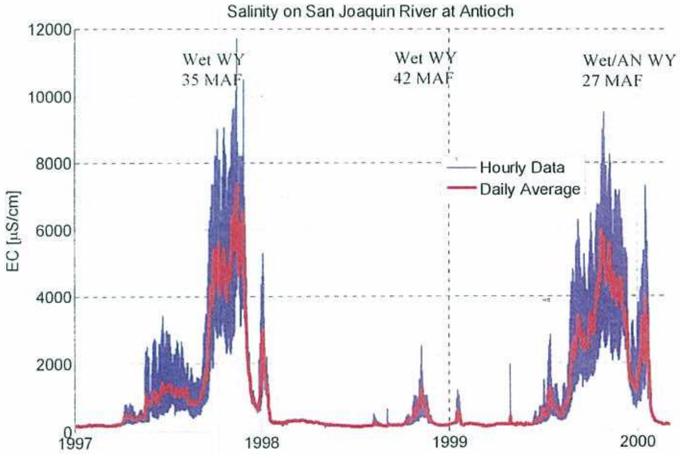


Figure D-1 – Hourly and daily salinity variability in the San Joaquin River at Antioch
Total annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow and water year type is indicated for each water year.
Data Source: IEP Data Vaults (http://www.iep.ca.gov/dss/)

---

[4] The California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation in Crockett (C&H) obtained its freshwater supply from barges traveling up the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, generally twice a day beginning in 1908 (DPW, 1931).
[5] Water year 1999 was classified as wet using the Sacramento Valley 40-30-30 index and above-normal using the San Joaquin Valley 60-20-20 index; indices are defined in D-1641.

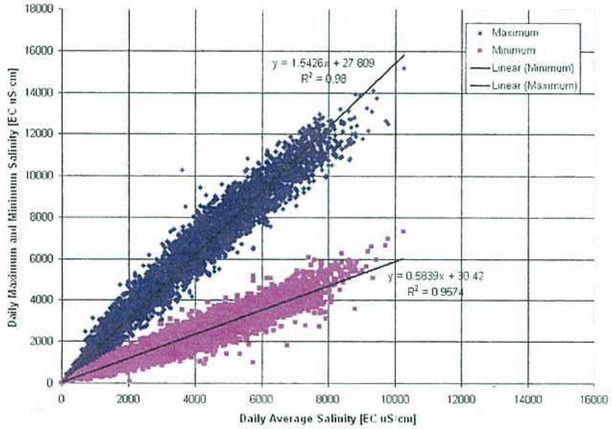


Figure D-2 – Tidal Variability in Salinity at Antioch (1967 to 1992)
Data Source: IEP Data Vaults (http: www.iep.ca.gov dss)

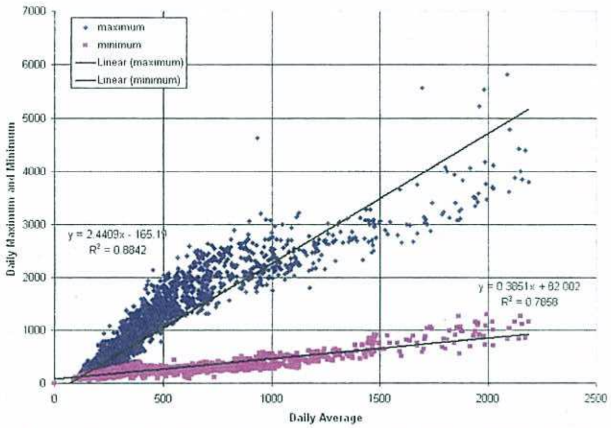


Figure D-3 – Tidal Variability in Salinity at Rio Vista (1967 to 1992)
Data Source: IEP Data Vaults (http: www.iep.ca.gov dss)

The high tide maximum, low tide minimum, and daily-averaged salinity at a given location are very different. As shown in Figure D-2, the daily maximum salinity in the San Joaquin River at Antioch can be double the daily-averaged salinity. Because of the large tidal variability in salinity, any comparisons of salinity observations should be at the same phase of the tide, or at least take into account tidal variability.

Similarly, as shown in Figure D-3, the daily maximum salinity in the Sacramento River at Rio Vista can be 170-400% of the daily average salinity. The daily minimum at Rio Vista may be 10-65% of the daily average.

D.2. Variations in the Spatial Salinity Distribution

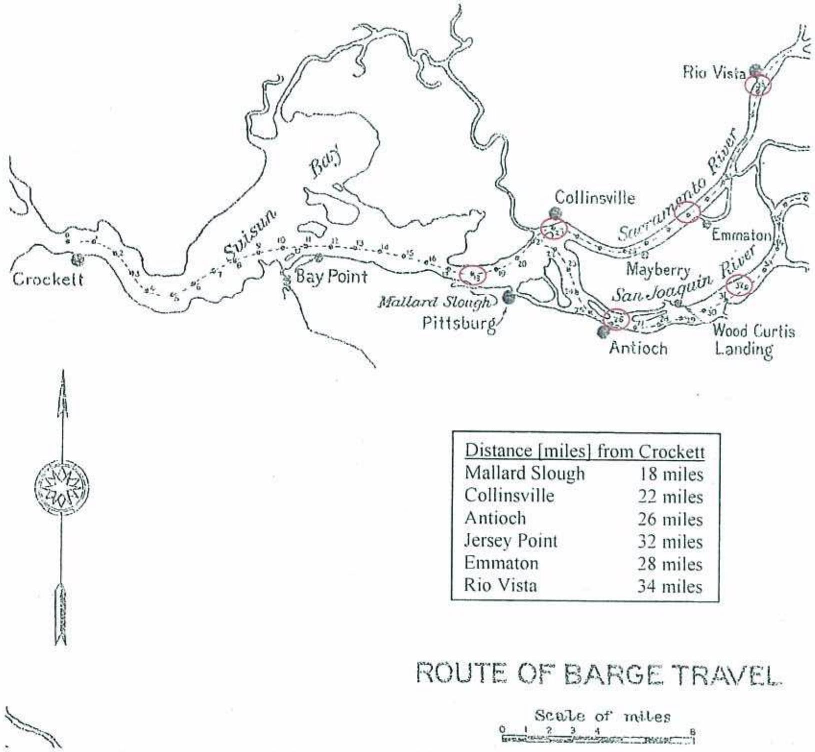
Observations examined in this section and Section 3.3 include records from the early 1900's from the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation in Crockett (C&H) and the long-term monitoring data from the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP). Estimates of salinity at specific locations of interest were obtained from DWR's DSM2 model and Contra Costa Water District's salinity-outflow model (also known as the G-model) (Denton, 1993). Estimates of salinity intrusion were obtained using the K-M equation (Kimmerer and Monismith, 1992).

D.2.1. Distance to Freshwater from Crockett

The California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation in Crockett (C&H) obtained its freshwater supply from barges traveling up the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, generally twice a day beginning in 1905 through 1929 or later (DPW, 1931). The salinity information recorded by C&H is the most detailed salinity record available prior to the intensive salinity monitoring by the State of California, which started in 1920. This section presents a comparison of the salinity observations of C&H with recent monitoring data and modeling results to determine how the managed salinity regime of the late 20th Century compares to the salinity regime of the early 1900's.

Data Sources and Methods

C&H data: C&H operations required water with less than 50 mg/L chloride concentration. According to DPW (1931), the C&H barges typically traveled up the river on flood tide and returned downstream on ebb tide. Since the maximum daily salinity for a given location in the river channel typically occurs about one to two hours after high slack tide, the distance traveled by the C&H barges represents approximately the daily maximum distance to 50 mg/L water from Crockett. The monthly minimum, average, and maximum distance traveled by C&H barges are shown in Figure D-4 and Figure D-5. For the following analysis, monthly averages of the C&H daily maximum distances were extracted from Figure D-5 for the period of 1908-1918 (after 1917, extensive salinity intrusion was reported and agricultural diversions reportedly started affecting flows into the Delta).



Distance [miles] from Crockett	
Mallard Slough	18 miles
Collinsville	22 miles
Antioch	26 miles
Jersey Point	32 miles
Emmaton	28 miles
Rio Vista	34 miles

Figure D-4 – C&H Barge Travel Routes
Map adapted from DPW (1931). Red circles indicate locations of landmarks, with distance from Crockett listed in the inset box.

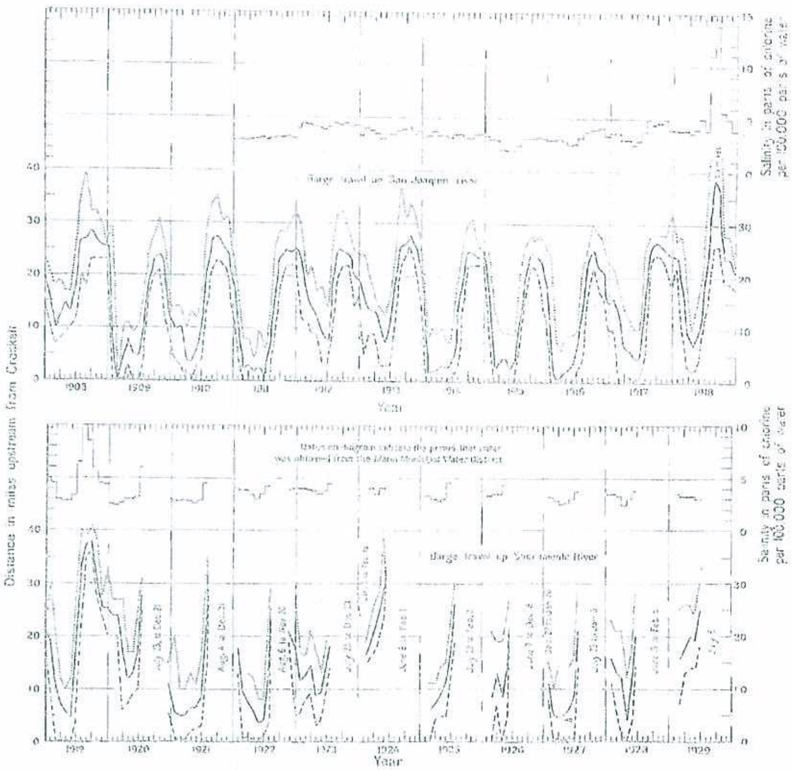


Figure D-5 – C&H Barge Travel and Quality of Water obtained
C&H barge travel up the San Joaquin River (1908 through 1918, top panel) and Sacramento River (1919 through 1929, bottom panel). The lower three lines on each panel (reference to the left axes) indicate the monthly minimum (dashed line), monthly maximum (dotted line), and monthly average (solid line) distance traveled by C&H barges to obtain their fresh water supply. The uppermost solid line on each panel (reference to the right axes) indicates the average monthly salinity of the water obtained by the barges. Figure adapted from DPW (1931)

From 1908 through 1917, C&H was able to obtain water with less than 50 mg/L chlorides within 30 miles of Crockett on average (below Jersey Point on the San Joaquin River). In 1918, the salinity of the water obtained by C&H barges had increased due to a combination of a lack of precipitation and upstream diversions (especially for newly introduced rice cultivation) (DPW, 1931). During August and September 1918, salinity exceeded 60 mg/L chloride, and the C&H barges traveled farther upstream than any time previously recorded.

In 1919, a wetter year than 1918, salinity was high for an even longer period of time, most likely due to increased upstream diversions for irrigation. Salinity exceeded 60 mg/L chloride during July, August, and September. Beginning in 1920, C&H abandoned the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers during the summer and fall seasons, replacing the water supply with a contract from Marin County. However, even during the driest years of the 1920's, C&H obtained water with less than 50 mg/L chloride below the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers during a portion of every year.

Salinity observations from the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP): Long-term monitoring of electrical conductivity (EC) at multiple stations within the Bay and Delta began around 1964. Publicly-available daily-averaged data were obtained for this analysis from the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) data vaults (Table D-3).

Table D-3 – Overview of long-term salinity observation records from IEP
(see http://www.iep.ca.gov/dss)

Location	*Station*	*Source*	*Data*
Selby	RSAC045	USGS-BAY	Historical
Martinez	RSAC054	CDEC	Real-time
Benicia Bridge	RSAC056	USBR-CVO	Historical
Port Chicago	RSAC064	USBR-CVO	Historical
Mallard	RSAC075	CDEC	Real-time
Pittsburg	RSAC077	USBR-CVO	Historical
Collinsville	RSAC081	USBR-CVO	Historical
Emmaton	RSAC092	USBR-CVO	Historical
Rio Vista	RSAC101	USBR-CVO	Historical
		DWR-ESO-D1485C	Historical
Georgiana Slough	RSAC123	DWR-CD-SURFWATER	Historical
Greens Landing	RSAC139	USBR-CVO	Historical
Antioch	RSAN008	USBR-CVO	Historical
Jersey Pont	RSAN018	USBR-CVO	Historical
Bradford Point	RSAN024	USBR-CVO	Historical
San Andreas Landing	RSAN032	USBR-CVO	Historical

Delta Simulation Model (DSM2) Historical Simulation: The DSM2 historical simulation (1989-2006) was used to provide estimates of water quality to complement the limited field data from IEP. Because DSM2 has a very detailed spatial computational network covering the Delta and Suisun Bay, DSM2 can output much more detailed spatial and temporal salinity information than just the water quality at the IEP monitoring stations. DSM2 results include the daily-averaged EC at each model node along the lower Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers. The location of the 350 µS/cm EC isohaline (corresponding to 50 mg/L chloride) was identified from the DSM2 results and compared with the equivalent C&H and IEP data.

Analysis time frame: The first decade of C&H barge travel (1908-1917) was a relatively wet period compared to the entire period of record (1906-2006) (Figure D-6). To compare conditions under similar hydrological conditions, specific recent decades (Figure D-6(a)) and select recent years (Figure D-6(b)) were selected that have comparable or slightly wetter hydrology than the C&H years. The periods 1966-1975 and 1995-2004 have similar annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow to the C&H data period (1908-1917) (see Figure D-6(a)). In addition, two wet years (1911 and 1916) and two dry years (1913 and 1918) selected from the C&H time period were compared with two wet years (1969 and 1998) and two dry years (1968 and 2002) from the IEP record.

Limitations of the analysis: The C&H data approximately represent the maximum daily salinity at a given location, whereas recent conditions (IEP or DSM2 data) are represented by the daily-averaged salinity. The estimates of the distance that must be traveled to reach fresh water under current conditions are, therefore, underestimated.

In addition, the C&H barges traveled up the San Joaquin River from 1908 through 1917, yet the equivalent travel distance for C&H barges under current conditions are estimated for the Sacramento River, and not the San Joaquin River. Under present-day conditions, the upstream distance to fresh water on the San Joaquin River is greater than for the Sacramento River, so this approach will also serve to underestimate the actual distance that C&H barges would have to travel under present-day conditions.

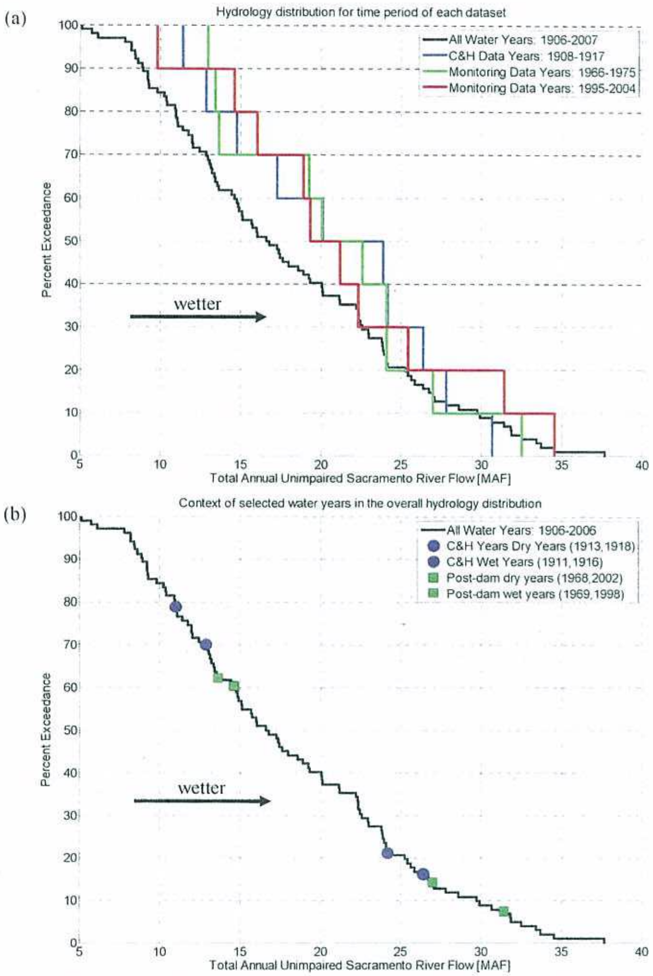


Figure D-6 – Hydrologic Context for Analysis of Distance to Fresh Water

(a) Hydrology distribution for water years 1906 to 2007, and select decades.
(b) Hydrology distribution for water years 1906 to 2007, with select water years shown for context.

Results and Discussion

Selected Wet Years

As shown in Figure D-7, the salinity patterns during the two selected C&H-era wet years, 1911 and 1916, are similar to each other. During these wet years, the location of 50 mg/L chloride water is west of Martinez for about 4-5 months (late February to early August in 1911 and from early February to late June in 1916). In contrast, during recent wet years 1969 and 1998, water with 50 mg/L chlorides or less was west of Martinez for only about 6 weeks in February and March. This comparison shows that in 1969 and 1998 the western Delta was saltier in the fall and spring than it was in 1911 and 1916, and salinity intrusion occurred much earlier in 1969 and 1998.

If barges were still traveling up the Sacramento River today to find fresh water, they would have to travel farther during the fall, spring, and summer than the C&H barges traveled during similar wet years. In 1916, fresh water retreated upstream about one month earlier than in 1911, possibly influenced by the increasing upstream diversions during 1911-1916 (see Figure 1-3). In recent years with even greater unimpaired runoff, fresh water retreats two to three months earlier than in 1916. Additionally, fresh water reaches Martinez for a much shorter period of time, about less than one month in recent years compared to four and five months during 1916 and 1911, respectively.

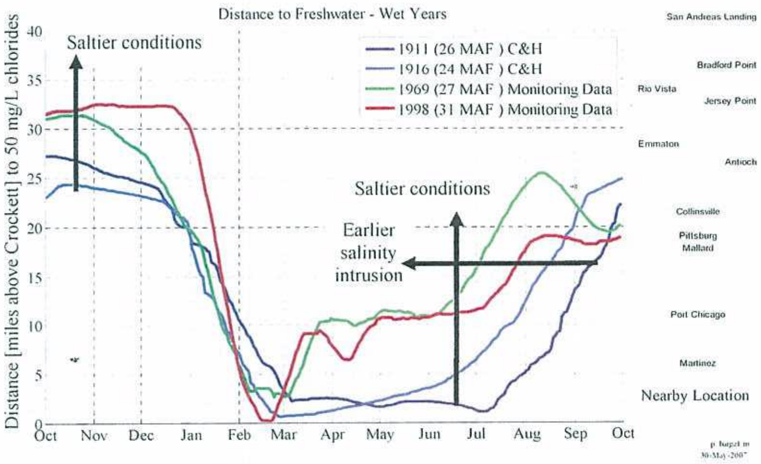
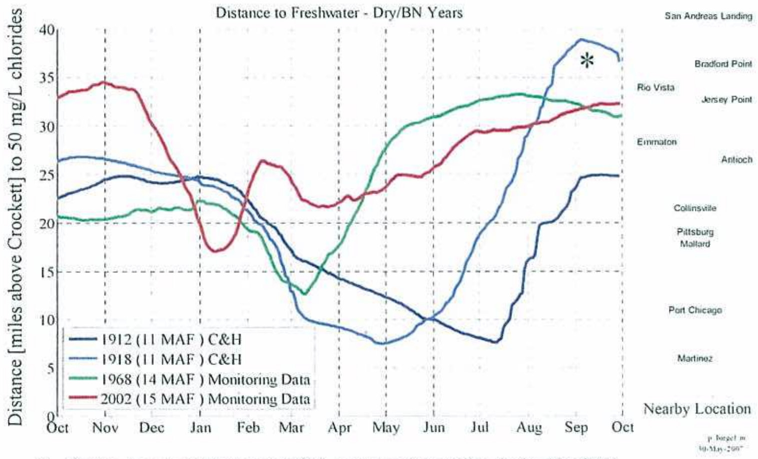


Figure D-7 – Distance to Fresh Water in Select Wet Years

Selected Dry Years

Figure D-8 shows that the most visible difference between the distance to fresh water in dry years of the early 1900's and more recent dry years is the substantial increase in distance to fresh water, particularly from April through June. This indicates the spring was much fresher during the dry years of the early 1900's, before large upstream reservoirs were built to capture the spring runoff. In dry and below-normal water years under today's conditions, barges would have to travel farther during spring, summer and fall than they traveled in the early 20th Century.

The C&H barge travel distance in the dry years of 1913 and 1918 are quite different, especially the additional 10 miles of distance to fresh water traveled in August and September of 1918. C&H recorded relatively high salinity (greater than 110 mg/L chlorides) above Bradford Point on the San Joaquin in 1918, which is greater than observed salinity on the Sacramento River near Rio Vista in similar water years. This may be partially explained by the development of the rice cultivation industry around 1912 (DPW, 1931) and increased upstream diversions when seasonal river flows were already low.



* During August and September 1918, average water quality obtained by C&H exceeded 110 mg/L chlorides

Figure D-8 – Distance to Fresh water in Select Dry or Below Normal Years

Figure D-9 shows the exceedance probabilities for distance traveled up the Sacramento River for different salinity levels. During 1908-1917, on a monthly-averaged basis, C&H barges had to travel above the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers (approximately 22 miles above Crockett) about 26% of this time period to reach water with salinity less than 350 µS/cm EC (about 50 mg/L chlorides). In contrast, from 1995-2006, DSM2 simulations suggest that barges would have to travel above the confluence approximately 56% of the time to reach water with salinity of 350 µS/cm EC.

The location of the 50 mg/L chloride isohaline during 1908-1917 approximately corresponds to the location of X2 (2,640 µS/cm EC, or 700 mg/L chlorides) during 1995-2006 (Figure D-9). This is equivalent to more than a 7-fold increase in salinity from the early 1900's to the present day.

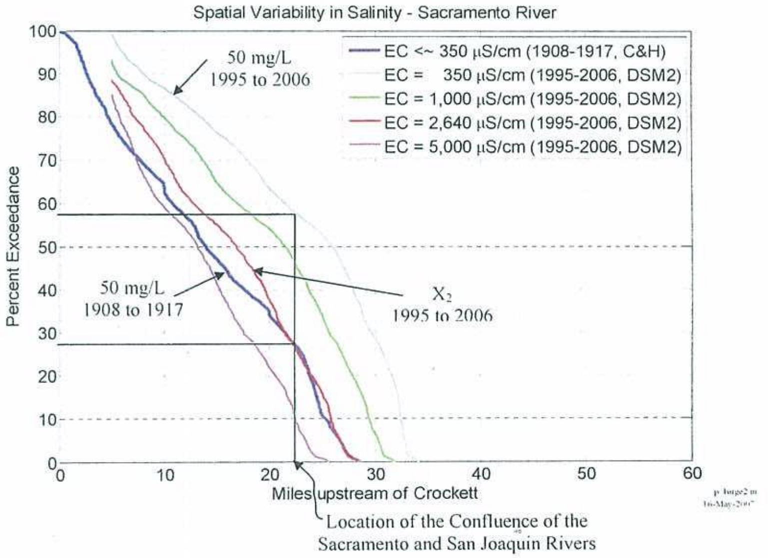


Figure D-9 – Distance along the Sacramento River to Specific Salinity Values

D.2.2. Maximum Annual Salinity Intrusion Before and After Large-scale Reservoir Construction

Figure D-10 shows maximum salinity intrusion during 1921-1943 (pre-CVP period), prior to the completion of the Shasta Dam of the Central Valley Project in 1945. Salinity intrusion is presented in terms of contours of 1,000 mg/L chlorides. Figure D-11 shows the maximum salinity intrusion during the post-CVP period of 1944-1990. These figures indicate the pre-CVP period experienced greater salinity intrusion than the post-CVP period, with seawater intruding farther into the Delta during 6 of the 24 pre-CVP years (1920, 1924, 1926, 1931, 1934, and 1939) than in any of the 47 years in the post-CVP period (1944-1990).

The extreme salinity intrusion during the pre-CVP period was due, in part, to relatively low runoff during these years. Meko *et al.* (2001a) determined that the period from 1917 through 1936 was the driest 20-year period in the past 400 years; this long-term drought encompassed 16 of the 24 years in the pre-CVP period. In addition, estimates of unimpaired runoff from the Sacramento River (obtained from http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/WSIHIST) indicate that the Sacramento River had 6 critical water years during the 24-year period of 1920-1943, whereas, the Sacramento River had only 4 critical water years during the 47-year period of 1944-1990.

Figure D-12 shows that the peak salinity intrusion during the pre-CVP period occurred between mid-August and mid-September, while peak salinity intrusion during the first portion of the the post-CVP period (1944-1960) occurred between late-July and late-August. Salinity intrusion during the pre-CVP period was not only affected by relatively low runoff, but also by extensive upstream diversions (DPW, 1931).

The salinity investigations of the pre-CVP era found that the extreme salinity intrusion was larger than any previous intrusions known to local residents and concluded the intrusion was due, in part, to the extensive upstream diversions. As observed in DPW (1931):

> "Under conditions of natural stream flow before upstream irrigation and storage developments occurred, the extent of saline invasion and the degree of salinity reached was much smaller than during the last ten to fifteen years." (DPW, 1931, page 15)

> "Beginning in 1917, there has been an almost unbroken succession of subnormal years of precipitation and stream flow which, in combination with increased irrigation and storage diversions from the upper Sacramento and San Joaquin River systems, has resulted in a degree and extent of saline invasion greater than has occurred ever before as far as known." (DPW, 1931, page 15)

> "The abnormal degree and extent of saline invasion into the delta during recent years since 1917 have been due chiefly to: first, subnormal precipitation and run-off with a subnormal amount of stream flow naturally available to the delta, and second, increased upstream diversions for irrigation and storage on the Sacramento and San Joaquin River systems, reducing the inflow naturally available to the delta. It is probable that the degree of salinity in the lower channels of the delta and the extent of saline invasion above the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers have been about doubled by reason of the second factor." (DPW, 1931, page 42)

Conclusions from DPW (1931) and similar investigations have been corroborated by paleosalinty studies (see Section 2.3), which indicate that Browns Island in the western Delta was a freshwater marsh for approximately 2,500 years until salinity intruded in the early 20th Century.

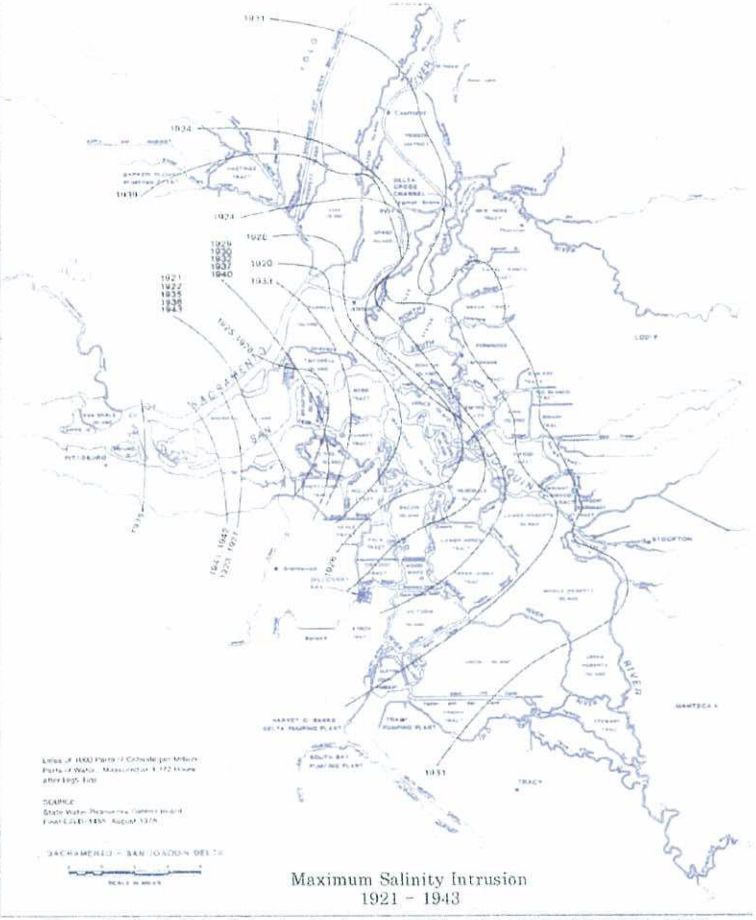


Figure D-10 – Salinity intrusion during pre-CVP period, 1921-1943 (DWR, 1995)

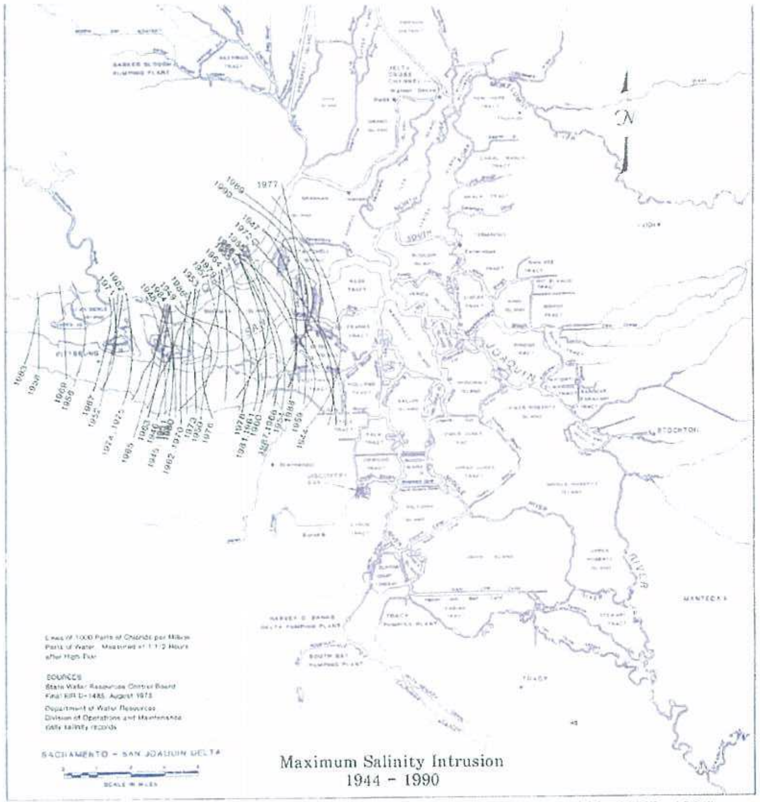


Figure D-11 – Salinity intrusion during post-CVP period, 1944-1990 (DWR, 1995)

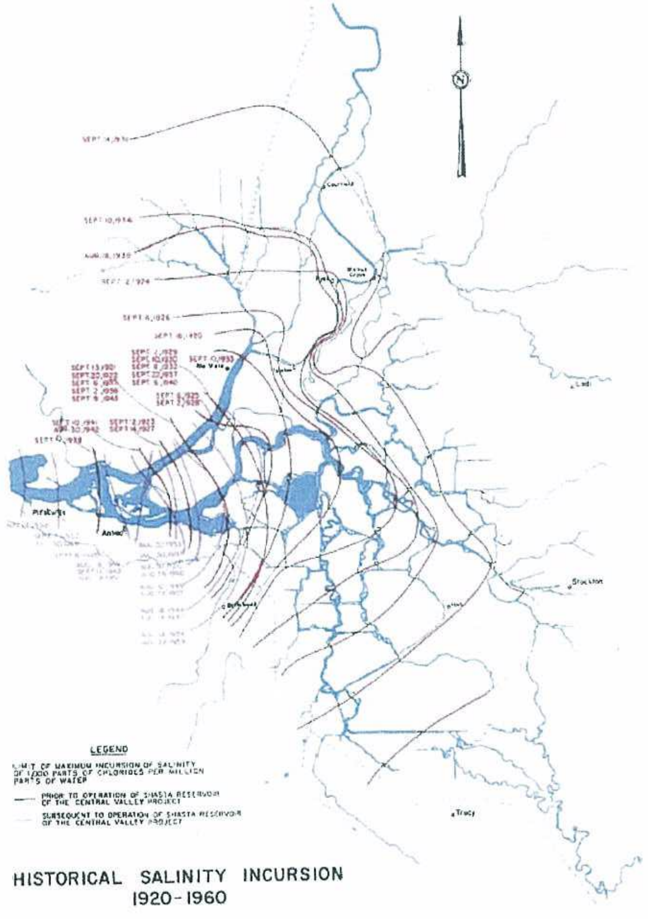
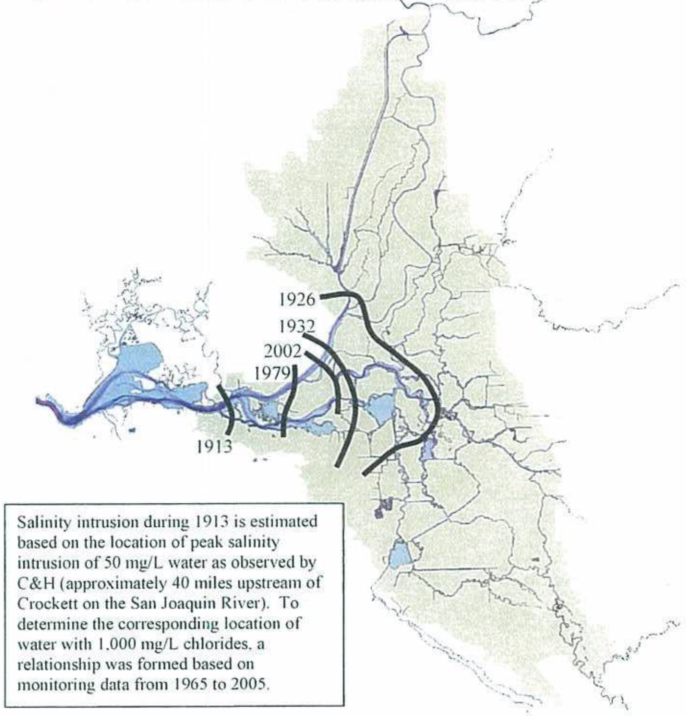


Figure D-12 – Salinity intrusion during 1920-1960 (DWR, 1960)

Figure D-13 illustrates the maximum annual salinity intrusion for comparable dry years[6]. Water year 1913 experienced the least extent of intrusion, most likely because upstream diversions were significantly less than in later years. Water years 1926 and 1932 were subject to extensive upstream agricultural diversions, while water years 1979 and 2002 had the benefit of the CVP and SWP to provide "salinity control". The CVP and SWP operations now regulate the amount of freshwater flowing through the Delta in order to prevent extreme salinity intrusions such as those observed during the 1920's and 1930's.



Salinity intrusion during 1913 is estimated based on the location of peak salinity intrusion of 50 mg/L water as observed by C&H (approximately 40 miles upstream of Crockett on the San Joaquin River). To determine the corresponding location of water with 1,000 mg/L chlorides, a relationship was formed based on monitoring data from 1965 to 2005.

Figure D-13 – Annual Maximum Salinity Intrusion for relatively dry years
Salinity intrusion for relatively dry water years with similar total annual unimpaired runoff, using 1,000 mg/L chloride concentration to distinguish the extent of intrusion.

---

[6] Hydrological metrics from http://cdec.water.ca.gov/cgi-progs/iodir/wsihist for comparison: total unimpaired Sacramento River and San Joaquin River flow for water years 1913, 1926, 1932, 1979, and 2002 was 15.9 MAF, 15.3 MAF, 19.8 MAF, 18.4 MAF, and 18.7 MAF, respectively; Sacramento River water year type index for water years 1913, 1926, 1932, 1979, and 2002 was 6.24, 5.75, 5.48, 6.67, and 6.35, respectively; and San Joaquin River water year type index for water years 1913, 1979, and 2002 was 2.00, 2.30, 3.41, 3.67, and 2.34, respectively.

D.3. *Temporal Variability of Salinity in the Western Delta*

D.3.1. Seasonal Salinity at Collinsville

Collinsville, near the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, was one of the first long-term sampling locations implemented by the State of California. The Suisun Marsh Branch[7] of the DWR estimated monthly average salinity at Collinsville for the period 1920-2002, using a combination of 4-day TDS (total dissolved solids) grab samples from 1920-1971 and EC measurements from 1966-2002. Data from the overlap period of 5 years between the TDS grab samples and EC measurements were used in a statistical regression model, and the monthly averaged 4-day TDS samples were converted to monthly average EC (Enright, 2004). The result of this regression analysis was a time series of monthly EC values at Collinsville for the period of 1920-2002.

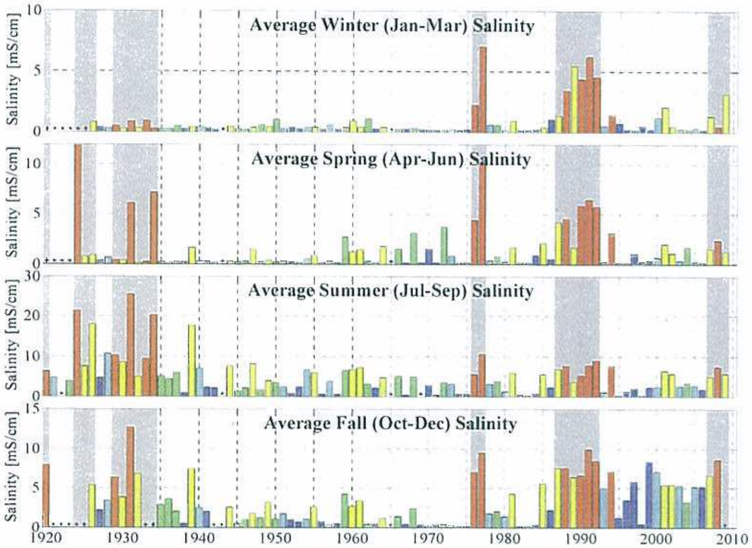


Figure D-14 – Average Seasonal Salinity at Collinsville

---

[7] Data provided by Chris Enright (DWR), personal communication, 2007.

D.3.2. Effects of Water Management on Salinity at Collinsville

In order to compare the effects of water management on salinity at Collinsville, an empirical model of salinity transport (Denton (1993), Denton and Sullivan (1993)) was used in the following analyses. Contra Costa Water District's salinity-outflow model (also known as the G-model) estimates salinity in the western Delta as a function of NDO. Estimates of salinity at Collinsville were derived for both actual historical flow (1930-2008) and unimpaired flow (1922-2003) conditions.

Figure D-15 shows the estimated monthly-averaged salinity at Collinsville under unimpaired and actual historical flow conditions. The predicted seasonal and annual variations of EC at Collinsville are dependent on corresponding variations of NDO under both unimpaired and actual flow conditions. Water management practices have a significant effect on the seasonal variability of salinity at Collinsville, particularly during dry years (1930's, 1976-1977 and 1987-1993), when Collinsville experiences a much greater range of monthly-averaged salinity under actual historical conditions than would be the case under unimpaired conditions.

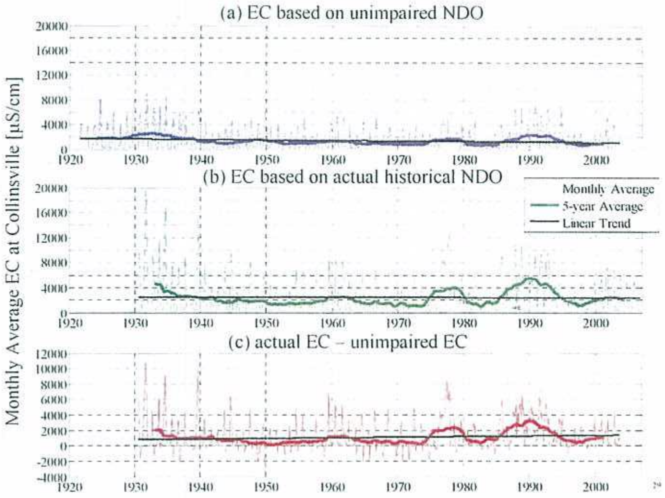


Figure D-15 – Estimates of Collinsville salinity using the G-model for unimpaired and actual historical flow conditions

Historical (actual) NDO during the 1930's was relatively low, sometimes averaging about -3,000 cfs for several months under actual conditions. The low values of NDO result in the high variability of estimated salinity in the 1930's under actual historical conditions.

The effects of water management on salinity at Collinsville are highlighted in Figure D-16, which shows the estimated salinity under actual historical conditions as a percent change from the unimpaired conditions. The data in Figure D-16 are the change in G-model estimates of salinity at Collinsville for the period of 1956-2003, computed as the difference between actual and unimpaired salinity as a percent change from the unimpaired salinity. Positive values indicate an increase in salinity under actual conditions and negative values indicate a decrease in salinity (freshening).

From April through August, estimated median salinity under actual historical conditions is substantially greater (more than a 100% increase) than median salinity under unimpaired conditions (Figure D-16). For the remainder of the year, there are no substantial differences between the estimates of median salinity under unimpaired and actual conditions. These distributions of estimated salinity indicate that water management practices result in significant increase in salinity throughout the year at Collinsville.

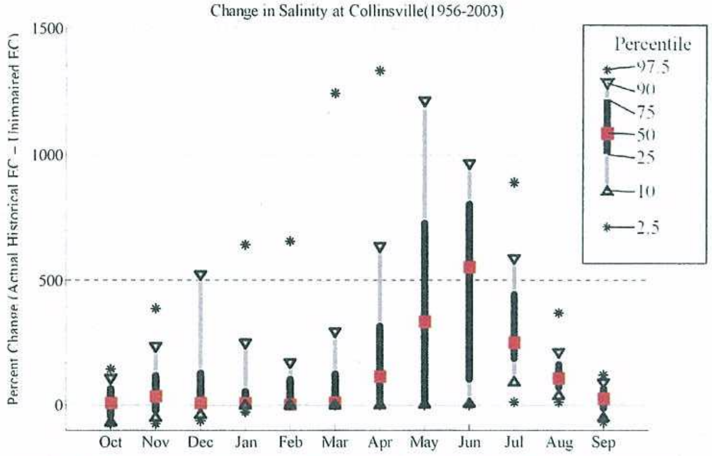


Figure D-16 – Estimated change in salinity at Collinsville under actual historical conditions, as a percent change from unimpaired conditions, 1956-2003

Figure D-17 shows the estimated salinities at Collinsville under actual historical and unimpaired conditions for just the more recent years (1994-2003). Positive values again indicate an increase in salinity under actual conditions and negative values indicate a decrease in salinity. The effects of water management on fall salinity are greater during this recent period 1994-2003 than during the longer period (1956-2003), but the effects during the recent period in the spring and early summer are smaller. This response reflects implementation of the X2 regulatory requirements agreed upon in the 1994 Bay-Delta Accord and regulated by the subsequent 1995 Water Quality Control Plan.

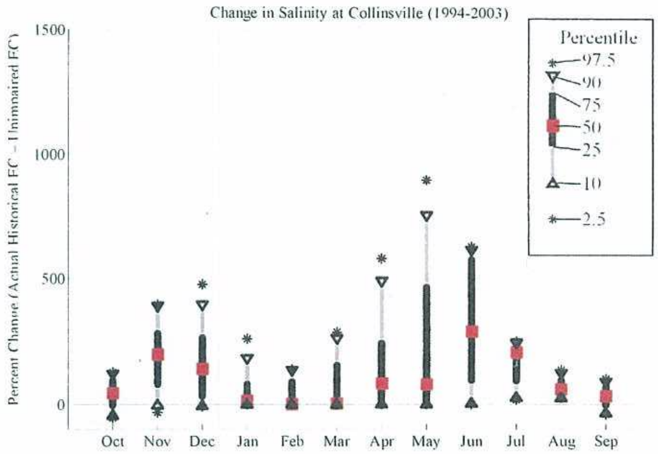


Figure D-17 – Estimated change in salinity at Collinsville under actual historical conditions, as a percent change from unimpaired conditions, 1994-2003

D.3.3. Fall Salinity in the Western Delta

Figure D-18 shows the average fall salinity (October-December) at three stations in Suisun Bay and the western Delta (Chipps Island, Collinsville, and Jersey Point). The fall salinity data categorized according to the pre-Endangered Species Act (ESA) period of 1964-1992 and the post-ESA period (1993-2006)[8]. Figure D-18 illustrates that there has been a noticeable increase in fall salinity since the release of the ESA biological opinions for winter-run salmon and Delta smelt in 1993. These increases occur during normal water years, when total annual runoff ranges from 15 to 30 MAF. During very wet years, there are large Delta outflows and the ESA limits do not affect water operations. Similarly, during very dry years, the biological opinions do not have a large effect on water operations because upstream reservoir storage is low and exports from the south Delta are already small.

---

[8] In 1993, delta smelt and winter-run salmon were listed under the California ESA, triggering new water management regulations.

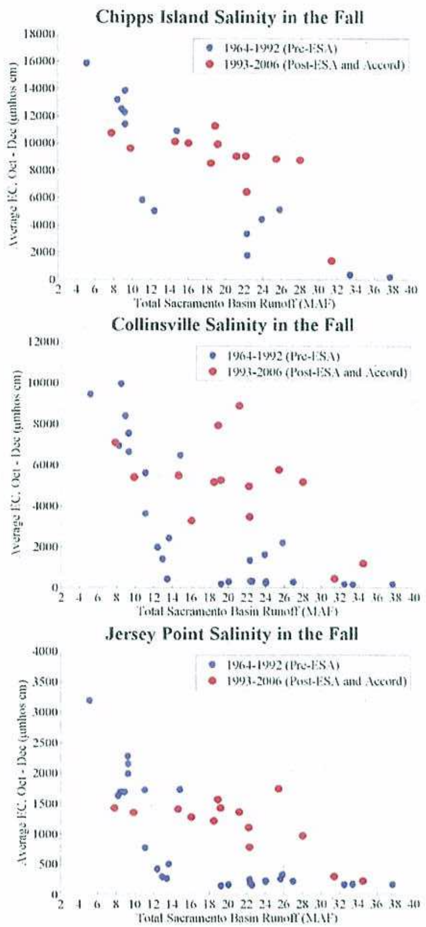


Figure D-18 – Post-ESA salinity in the Suisun Bay and western Delta

Figure D-19 shows the observed salinity at Chipps Island during the fall (October-December) for the period of 1976-1992 (pre-ESA) and 1993-2005 (post-ESA). Fall salinity at Chipps Island during normal years is now comparable to fall salinity during dry and critical years prior to 1994.

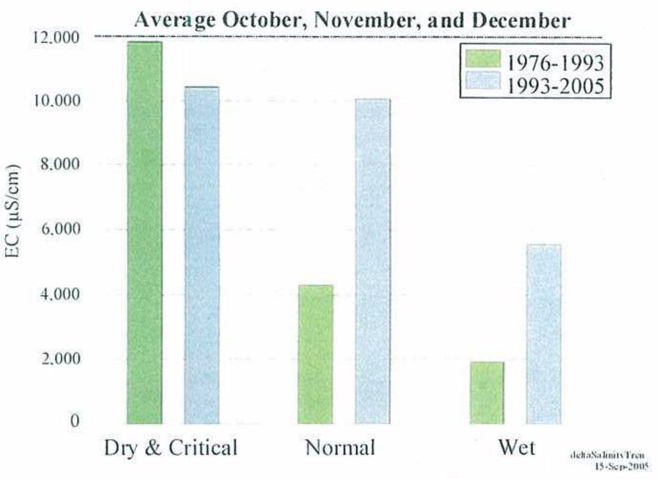


Figure D-19 – Increase in Fall Salinity at Chipps Island

D.4. *General conceptual overview of salinity changes*

Observed changes in seasonal salinity with time

The salinity regime in the western Delta has changed as the level of development has increased and water project operations have changed due to regulatory requirements. The comparison of three decades with similar hydrology in Figure D-20 presents a conceptual illustration of the changing salinity regime in Suisun Bay and the western Delta.

Monthly-averaged salinity in the spring and summer was substantially greater from 1966 through 1975 than during the early 1900's. However, fall and early winter salinity was lower than the early 1900's. This reduction in salinity in the fall and early winter was likely due in part to CVP and SWP reservoir releases for flood control purposes in the fall, which freshened the Delta. Flood control releases during this period were large because CVP and SWP diversions and exports were not fully developed and upstream reservoirs were often above flood control maximum storage levels in the fall, entering the wet season.

Salinity during 1995 through 2004, however, exceeded the salinities in the early 1900's during all months, for years with similar hydrologic conditions. The dramatic increase in fall salinity relative to observed levels from 1966 to 1975 is accompanied by a slight decrease in spring and summer salinity. This is likely due to minimum flow and X2 requirements imposed by the State Water Resources Board in 1995. However, spring and summer salinities remain much greater relative to salinity in the early 1900's.

The range of seasonal variability during 1966-1975 was greatly reduced because the Delta did not get as fresh as it did in the early 1900's. During the last decade, seasonal variability has increased such that the range of salinity observed in the Delta over the course of a year is similar to that in the early 1900's. However, salinity intrusion has moved inland relative to the early 1900's, resulting in saltier conditions in the Suisun Bay and western Delta and a reduction in the period when fresher water is available.

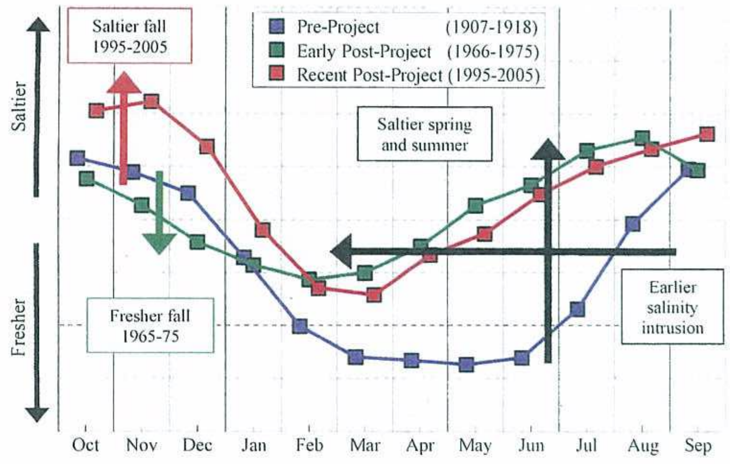


Figure D-20 – Conceptual plot of seasonal variability of salinity in Suisun Bay and the western Delta during different water management eras

The effect of water management for wet and dry years

Water management has the largest effect during dry years when the Delta stays relatively salty throughout the year with limited seasonal variability compared to unimpaired conditions. As shown conceptually in Figure D-21, during wet years the Delta freshens as much as it would under unimpaired conditions, but the Delta does not stay fresh for as long.

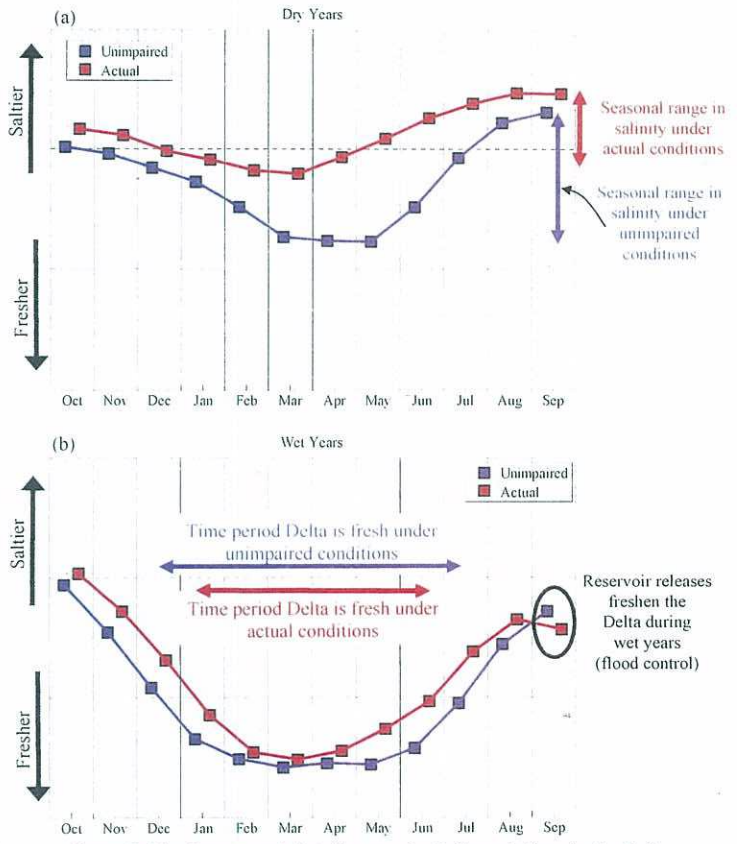


Figure D-21 – Conceptual plot of seasonal salinity variations in the Delta under actual historical conditions compared to unimpaired conditions in (a) dry years and (b) wet years

Appendix E. Qualitative Salinity Observations

The earliest written accounts of explorers were often concerned with adequate drinking water, and salinity was generally described in qualitative terms, such as "brackish," "fresh," or "sweet." For the purposes of comparing the present-day water quality with the historical conditions, these qualitative observations need to be quantified.

Testimony from Antioch Case (Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District, 188 Cal. 451) indicated early settlers required water with less than 100 mg/L of chloride (approximately 525 µS/cm EC) for municipal use.[9] Similarly, DPW (1931) indicated that a "noticeable" level of salinity was 100 mg/L chloride. The current secondary water quality standard for municipal and industrial use is 250 mg/L chloride (1,000 µS/cm EC) (SWRCB 2006; US EPA 2003). This report assumes a value of 250 mg/L chloride (equivalent to 1000 µS/cm EC) to be the demarcation between "fresh" (or "sweet") water and "brackish" water.

E.1. Observations from Early Explorers

Table E-1 summarizes some reported observations of water quality made by early explorers and settlers. These observations were qualitative and were most likely only a glimpse of the ambient conditions and may not completely represent true historical water quality conditions. Moreover, these observations were from a time period when anthropogenic effects on this region were minimal and this region was close to natural conditions.

Table E-1 also lists the reconstructed Sacramento River annual flow (MAF) from Meko *et al.* (2001b) for the year of observation and for the previous year. For reference, the average Sacramento River flow from Meko *et al.* (2001b) for the period 1860-1977 is 18 MAF/yr.

Table E-1 – Qualitative salinity observations from early explorers

Date	Location	Description	Year / Reconstructed Flow [MAF]	Observer	Reference
1775 August	near the Sacramento-San Joaquin confluence	sweet, the same as in a lake	1774 / 25 1775 / 19	Canizares	Britton, 1987 in Fox, 1987b
1776 April	near Antioch (San Joaquin River)	very clear, fresh, sweet, and good	1775 / 19 1776 / 9	Font	Britton, 1987 in Fox, 1987b
1776 September	near the Sacramento-San Joaquin confluence	sweet	1775 / 19 1776 / 9	Canizares	Britton, 1987 in Fox, 1987b
1796	unknown	salinity "far upstream" at high tide	1795 / 6 1796 / 10	Hermengildo Sal	Cook, 1960 in TBI, 1998
1811 October	near the Sacramento-San Joaquin confluence	sweet	1810 / 19 1811 / 23	Abella	Britton, 1987 in Fox, 1987b
1841 August	Three Mile Slough north of Emmaton	brackish (undrinkable)	1840 / 16 1841 / 6	Wilkes	Britton, 1987 in Fox 1987b

E.1.1. Fresh Conditions

Table E-1 indicates that some early explorers observed "sweet" water near the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers both in relatively wet years (August of 1775 and October of 1811, reconstructed runoff about 19 MAF/yr) and in relatively dry years (September of 1776, reconstructed runoff about 9 MAF/yr). Except as noted, it is unknown whether these observations were made at high tide or low tide.

In order to provide a context for these anecdotal observations, present-day observed monthly salinity (EC) conditions at Collinsville (located near the confluence of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers) are plotted against unimpaired annual Sacramento River flow in Figure E-1. The observed data are monthly-averaged salinity (µS/cm) during August-October for the period 1965-2005. The data for the post-ESA years (1994-2005) are shown as shaded circles. Note that the anecdotal observations in Table E-1 are likely "one-time" observations, while those shown in Figure E-1 are average monthly values.

---

[9] Supplement to Respondent's Answering Brief, p. 10.

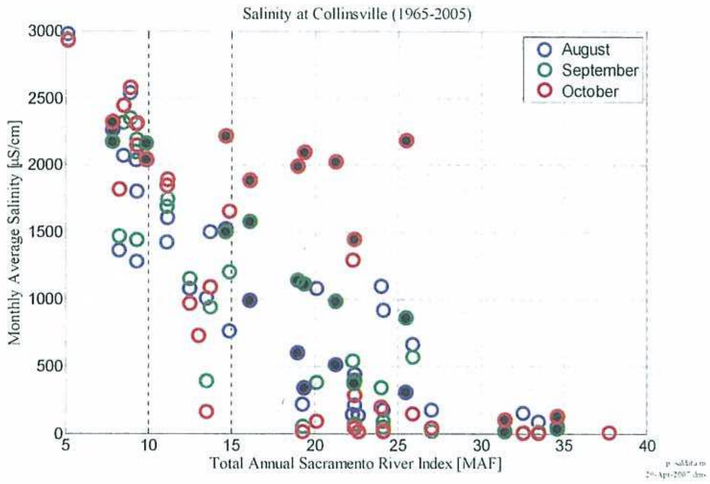


Figure E-1 – Observed salinity at Collinsville, 1965-2005

Under current management conditions, the monthly average salinity at Collinsville from August through October is only less than 1,000 µS/cm EC (the interpretation of the "sweet" threshold for drinking water) when the unimpaired runoff is greater than about 20 to 25 MAF/yr (Figure E-1). This suggests either the "sweet" threshold used in this report is too small, or salinity at Collinsville is higher today than it was in the late 18th and early 19th centuries.

If the definition of the "sweet" threshold is changed to 1,300 µS/cm EC and the post-ESA years (1994-2005) are excluded, then the monthly-averaged salinity at Collinsville during August-October is "fresh" (less than 1,300 µS/cm EC) when runoff is greater than 16 MAF/yr. This corresponds better to the anecdotal observations, discussed above, but suggests a recent increase in salinity at Collinsville during moderately wet years (with runoff between 14 and 26 MAF/yr). In 5 of the 12 post-ESA years (1997, 1999, 2000, 2003 and 2004), the water at Collinsville in October would not be considered "sweet" even under the relaxed criterion of 1,300 µS/cm EC, suggesting that October salinity under present conditions could be greater than it was in 1811.

E.1.2. Brackish Conditions

The qualitative observations of high salinity intrusion in Table E-1 are less specific about location. However, some of these observations have been interpreted by others (Cook, 1960, in TBI, 1998; Fox, 1987b) to indicate intrusion as far upstream as Rio Vista. The drought periods of 1976-1977 and 1987-1992 are similar to these periods when these qualitative observations were made. During 1976-1977, daily average salinity at Rio Vista exceeded 1,000 µS/cm for approximately six months of the year. During 1987-1992, salinity at Rio Vista at high tide often exceeded 2,000 µS/cm, particularly during the fall. This is consistent with the anecdotal observations made in 1796 and 1841, which report salt water extending into the western Delta.

Summary: Interpretation of the above observations in the context of the reconstructed Sacramento River flows shows that the Delta is generally saltier than the historical levels for equivalent runoff conditions and does not support the hypothesis that the present-day Delta is managed as a freshwater system in comparison with its historical salinity regime. Moreover, this analysis indicates that salinity in the western Delta has increased during September and October in the recent years (post-1994 period).

E.2. Observations from early settlers in the Western Delta

Observations from early settlers in the western Delta provide a more complete description of salinity in the late 1800's and early 1900's than the observations from early explorers discussed earlier. Assuming the early settlers inhabited a particular region for longer time periods than the early explorers, observations from the early settlers capture the temporal variability better than those from the early explorers.

E.2.1. Town of Antioch Injunction on Upstream Diverters

In 1920, the Town of Antioch filed a lawsuit against upstream irrigation districts alleging that the upstream diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch. The court decision, legal briefings, and petitions provide salinity observations from a variety of witnesses. Although anecdotal testimony summarized in these legal briefs is far from scientific evidence, it provides a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the early 1900's. Because the proceedings were adversarial in nature, this report focuses on the testimony of the upstream interests, who were trying to demonstrate that salinity intrusion was common near Antioch prior to their diverting water (prior to 1920). Consequently, the testimony may be biased in support of this "more saline" argument. Nonetheless, these anecdotal testimonies indicate that the western Delta was less salty in the past than it is today. Analyses of some of the testimonies are presented below.

Case History

On July 2, 1920, the Town of Antioch filed suit in the Superior Court of the State of California (hereinafter referred to as the "Antioch Case") against upstream diverters on the Sacramento River and Yuba River. A hearing for a temporary injunction began on July 26, 1920, and lasted approximately three months. On January 7, 1921, Judge A. F. St. Sure granted a temporary injunction, restraining the defendants "from diverting so much water from the said Sacramento River and its tributaries, to non-riparian lands, that the amount of water flowing past the City of Sacramento, in the County of Sacramento, State of California, shall be less than 3500 cubic feet per second" (Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District, Supplement to Appellants' Opening Brief, p. 13).

The defendants appealed to the Supreme Court of the State of California, which issued its opinion on March 23, 1922. The Supreme Court reversed the lower court and withdrew the injunction, declaring "[i]t is evident from all these considerations that to allow an appropriator of fresh water near the outlet of these two rivers to stop diversions above so as to maintain sufficient volume in the stream to hold the tide water below his place of diversion and secure him fresh water from the stream at that point, under the circumstances existing in this state, would be extremely unreasonable and unjust to the inhabitants of the valleys above and highly detrimental to the public interests besides."

The Supreme Court did not make any comment whatsoever on the evidence of salinity intrusion prior to the upstream diversions in question. The Court indicated that their decision was based on a "policy of our law, which undoubtedly favors in every possible manner the use of the waters of the streams for the purpose of irrigating the lands of the state to render them fertile and productive, and discourages and forbids every kind of unnecessary waste thereof." (Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District (1922) 188 Cal. 451). The Court concluded that allowing 3,500 cubic feet per second (cfs) to "waste" into the Bay to provide less than 1 cfs of adequate quality water for the Town of Antioch would constitute unreasonable use of California's limited supply of water.

The court did not base their decision on historical salinity observations at Antioch, which indicate that Antioch was able to divert freshwater at low tide at all times from 1866 to 1918, except possibly for some fall months during some dry years (Section 3.1).

E.2.2. Salinity at Antioch – then and now

In the present day, the City of Antioch maintains a municipal water intake on the San Joaquin River at Antioch. As a general operating rule, the City of Antioch pumps water from the river when salinity at the intake is less than 1,000 µS/cm EC. Salinity varies substantially with the tide; generally the greatest salinity is observed near high tide and the lowest salinity is observed at low tide. Figure E-2 shows that salinity in the San Joaquin River at Antioch is highly variable and is dependent on tidal conditions and season. Figure E-2 indicates that for water year 2000 (an above-normal water year) the City of Antioch could pump water all day for about four and half months (early February through mid-June) and could pump for a portion of the day at low tide for another three and half months (mid-June through September). For the remaining four months (October-January), water at Antioch's intakes exceeded 1,000 µS/cm EC for the entire day, regardless of tidal phase.

Testimony from multiple witnesses in the Antioch Case indicates that fresh water was always available in the San Joaquin River at Antioch at low tide until just prior to 1920. Antioch's legal position was that fresh water was always available before upstream development. In cross-examination of Antioch's witnesses, the upstream irrigators demonstrated that brackish conditions did occasionally exist at high tide.

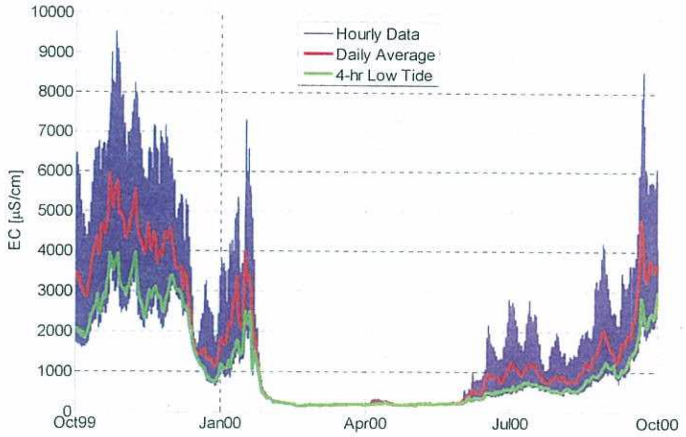


Figure E-2 – Salinity variations in the San Joaquin River at Antioch, water year 2000

Figure E-3 shows the distribution of low tide salinity (salinity during the freshest 4 hours of each day) for the period of May 1, 1983 through September 30, 2002.[10] These data indicate that, on average (in 50% of the water years), low tide salinity exceeds 1,000 µS/cm EC from late-August through December. The data in Figure E-3 provide context for the qualitative observations from the Antioch Case. During the driest 25% of the years (5 out of 20 years), low tide salinity exceeds 1,000 µS/cm EC from June through January, leaving the Antioch intake with no fresh water for eight months of the year.

Under average conditions corresponding to the period 1983-2002, Antioch would have to stop pumping from late August to late December in 10 of the 20 years; i.e., they would have an average of eight months of low-tide pumping per year, compared to the pre-1915 average of twelve months per year (based on the anecdotal information filed by the Appellants (upstream diverters) in the Antioch Case).

---

[10] Data Source: Interagency Ecological Program, HEC-DSS Time-Series Databases. Station RSAN007. Agency: DWR-ESO-D1485C. Measurement: 1-hour EC. Time Range: May 1, 1983 through September 30, 2002

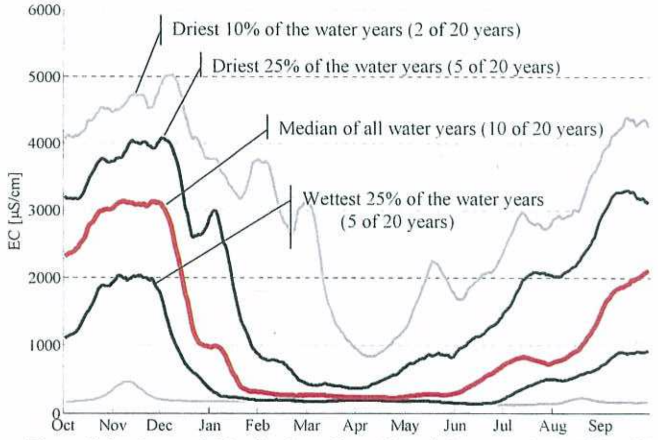


Figure E-3 – Seasonal Distribution of low-tide salinity at Antioch, 1983-2002

Conclusions

- The window, when Antioch is able to pump water with salinity less than 1,000 µS/cm EC, has substantially narrowed in the last 125 years.
- Antioch was apparently able to pump fresh water at low tide year-round in the late 1800's, with the possible exception of the fall season during one or two dry years.
- During 10 of the 20 years between 1983 and 2002, salinity was less than 1,000 µS/cm EC at low tide for only about eight months of the year.
- During the driest 5 years between 1983 and 2002, salinity was less than 1,000 µS/cm for only about four months per year; i.e., no fresh water was available at any time of the day for about eight months of the year.

E.2.3. Salinity at Kentucky Point on Twitchell Island – then and now

The appellants in the Antioch Case, representing the upstream diverters, identified one resident of Twitchell Island who reported the water at Kentucky Landing was brackish on "one or two occasions" between 1870 and 1875 during August and September. During this time, he had to travel up the San Joaquin River to Seven Mile Slough (the eastern boundary of Twitchell Island) and sailed as far as the mouth of the Mokelumne River (approximately 2

miles further up the San Joaquin River than the Seven Mile Slough junction) to obtain fresh drinking water.

For comparison, we look at salinity monitoring data in that region for 1981 and 2002 to see the location of potable water.[11] The source document (Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District, 188 Cal. 451) for the 1870's drought uses up to 100 mg/L chloride concentration as the threshold for a potable water supply. Monitoring data from 1981 shows similar salinity intrusion as described by the Twitchell Island resident; salinity along the San Joaquin River at Bradford Island (about 1.5 miles upstream of Three Mile Slough) exceeded 1,000 µS/cm EC (about 250 mg/L Cl) during August and September. During the same time period, salinity was around 400 µS/cm EC (about 64 mg/L Cl) approximately 5 miles upstream on the San Joaquin River between Seven Mile Slough and the Mokelumne River. This comparison indicates that the extent of salinity intrusion in 1981 is similar to that which occurred in 1870 and 1871.

Similarly, in September 2002, the salinity in the San Joaquin River at San Andreas landing (less than 2 miles downstream of the Mokelumne River mouth) peaked at 977 µS/cm EC, which corresponds to approximately 225 mg/L chloride concentration. Therefore, if the observer was to travel upriver for potable water in 2002, they would have likely traveled up to the mouth of the Mokelumne River as they did in 1870. Salinity intrusion in critically dry years is even farther into the Delta than was found in 2002.

In conclusion, salinity intrusion up the San Joaquin River during the dry years of 1870 and 1871 as described by a Twitchell Island resident is consistent with salinity intrusion in 1981 and 2002 under similar hydrological conditions. There is no evidence that salinity intrusion during the drought of 1870-71 was more extensive than salinity intrusion during similar water years in the current salinity regime.

---

[11] 1981 and 2002 were both dry water years in the Sacramento River basin as defined in D-1641 with similar annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow to the years 1870 and 1871. Annual unimpaired Sacramento River flow in 1870, 1871, 1981, and 2002 was 11 MAF, 10 MAF, 11 MAF, and 14 MAF, respectively.

State Water Resources Control Board
Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding
March 22, 2010

Exhibit by City of Antioch
Summary of Historical Freshwater Availability at Antioch

Summary

The historic (pre-1918) Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta. The characterization of the Delta as "historically saline" is false and is not based on scientific evidence. Historical salinity and flow conditions must be considered when: (i) establishing Delta outflows and inflows to protect public trust values which adapted to these conditions, (ii) establishing the criteria (volume, timing and quality) required by Senate Bill 7X 1, and (iii) establishing drinking water quality standards for the Delta.

1. Introduction

The City of Antioch (Antioch), located along the San Joaquin River in the western portion of the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Delta (Delta), is one of the oldest towns in California. Since the 1860s, Antioch has obtained all or part of its freshwater supply directly from the San Joaquin River.[1] The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and its long-term viability as a recreational destination.

As part of the informational proceeding on establishing flow criteria in the Delta, this document summarizes the historical salinity and flow conditions near Antioch and contrasts them with the largely saline conditions prevailing today. The supporting document to this summary is a "powerpoint style" document containing text and figures relevant to the material presented in this summary.

2. Systemic changes have reduced freshwater flows and increased salinity in the western Delta, including at Antioch

Salinity in the western Delta (including at Antioch) is influenced both by natural factors, including ocean tides and hydrology of the upstream watersheds, and by artificial factors, including channelization of the Delta, elimination of tidal marsh, reservoir storage and release operations, and water diversions.

Major anthropogenic modifications to the Delta that affect salinity intrusion began with the European settlement of the region around 1850. Tidal marsh acreage in the Delta decreased from over 250,000 acres in the 1870s to less than 30,000 acres in the 1920s and has since continued to decrease (CCWD 2010), producing significant changes in the Delta landscape (Att. at pg. 7). For example, dredging of the Delta river channels to create the Stockton and Sacramento Deep Water Ship Channels affected the salt transport and distribution in the Delta (CCWD 2010). Construction of reservoirs for storage purposes started in the early 1900s and the largest reservoirs of the Central Valley Project (CVP, Lake Shasta) and the State Water Project (SWP, Lake Oroville) were completed in 1945 and 1968, respectively (CCWD 2010). Total upstream reservoir storage capacity increased from 1 million acre-feet (MAF) in 1920 to more than 30 MAF by 1979 (CCWD 2010). Water exports from the Delta have been steadily increasing since the 1950s, and the combined annual exports from CVP and SWP have increased, on average, from about 0.5 MAF/yr in the late 1950s to about 5 MAF/yr during the recent period (Att. at pg. 8).

3. Historical extent of freshwater

Testimony from the lawsuit filed by the Town of Antioch in 1920 and from various literature reports demonstrates that freshwater (low salinity conditions) prevailed in the western Delta in the late 1800s and early 1900s.

3.1 Testimony from Antioch's lawsuit in 1920

In 1920, the Town of Antioch filed a lawsuit against upstream irrigation districts alleging that the upstream diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch (Town of Antioch [plaintiff] v. Williams Irrigation District et al. [defendants] (1922, 188 Cal. 451)). The testimony from the Antioch lawsuit provides a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the early 1900s.

3.1.1 Pre-1918: Freshwater was available at Antioch year-round

Testimony from the defendants in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that in the late 1800s, water at Antioch was known to be brackish at high tide during certain time periods, but Antioch was able to pump freshwater at low tide throughout the year, with the possible exception of the fall season during one or two dry years. Water at Antioch was fresh at low tide at least until around 1915 (when the pumping plants started pumping continuously, regardless of tidal stage) (Att. at pg. 11).

Testimony from the plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that Antioch's freshwater supply was obtained directly from the San Joaquin River (see footnote 1 above) from about 1866 to 1918, first by private water companies and then by the municipality after 1903 (when the City acquired pre-existing water rights) (Att. at pg. 12). Plaintiff's testimony included salinity measurements taken at Antioch (1913-1917) that indicated that prior to 1918, freshwater was available at Antioch even during dry years and in the fall (Att. at pg. 12).

---

[1] Much of the water in the western Delta (including the City's water supply) comes from the Sacramento River. Historically, significant amounts of Sacramento River water flowed into the San Joaquin River east of Antioch at Three Mile and Georgiana Sloughs. Sacramento River water also reaches Antioch where the river merges with the San Joaquin River just west of the City. Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District et al. (1922) 188 Cal. 451, 455

3.1.2 Post-1918: Increased upstream diversions drastically increased salinity intrusion

Testimony and measurements from the Delta (1918-1920) presented by the plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that after 1918, salinity abruptly increased during the irrigation (rice cultivation) season, but returned to a potable level after irrigation ceased (Att. at pg. 13). The effect of upstream diversions was also confirmed by records in the plaintiff's testimony from California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H) (CCWD 2010). Plaintiff's testimony indicated that although Antioch is located along the San Joaquin River, the source of much of the water at Antioch was the Sacramento River, which flowed to Antioch via Georgiana and Three Mile Sloughs (Att. at pg. 14-15); this was confirmed by the California Supreme Court (Att. at p. 15).

Information from the Antioch lawsuit is consistent with literature reports (see the following discussion) and with paleo records of salinity and river flow obtained from tree rings and sediment cores (CCWD 2010).

3.2 Literature reports

Several literature reports confirm that freshwater was available year-round in the western Delta (including Antioch) and Suisun Bay during the late 1800s and early 1900s. For instance, DPW (1931), the precursor to the Department of Water Resources, indicated that the City of Antioch obtained all or most of its freshwater supplies directly from the San Joaquin River until 1917, and that salinity intrusion prevented domestic use of water at the Antioch intake in summer and fall after 1917 (Att. at pg. 9). DPW (1931) and Tolman and Poland (1935) indicated that prior to the 1920s, water near the City of Pittsburg was sufficiently fresh for that City to directly obtain all or most of its freshwater (Att. at pg. 10). Dillon (1980) and Cowell (1963) indicated that prior to the 1920s, freshwater was available in the Suisun Bay and Carquinez Straits for use by the City of Benicia (Att. at pg. 10). Means (1928) indicated that Carquinez Strait (near Martinez in the western Delta) is the approximate boundary between salt water and freshwater under natural conditions. Moreover, Means (1928) also indicated that during the wet season freshwater extended up to the Golden Gate (Att. at pg. 9).

The California Department of Water Resources (DWR, 1960) estimated that water with a chloride concentration of 350 mg/L or less would be available at San Joaquin at Antioch about 85% of the time under "natural" conditions (Att. at pg. 16). DWR (1960) also estimated that chloride concentrations at Antioch would be less than 350 mg/L about 80% of the time in 1900 and about 60% of the time by 1940, with decreasing freshwater availability due to upstream diversions; DWR also projected further deterioration of water quality in 1960 and later, but did not include the effects of reservoir releases for salinity control (Att. at pg. 16).

4. Current Salinity Conditions at Antioch

Salinity data compiled by the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) and California Data Exchange Center (CDEC) were used to analyze the present availability of freshwater at Antioch. These quantitative measurements from the present were compared to the testimony from the Antioch lawsuit and to observation recorded by C&H to establish how salinity at Antioch and in the western Delta has increased over time compared to historical conditions.

4.1 Freshwater availability continues to decline

Availability of freshwater at Antioch continues to decline. Antioch may take water at its intake when salinity is less than 250 mg/L chlorides (equivalent to about 1000 µS/cm EC)[2]. The number of days per year, expressed as a percentage, when daily average salinity at Antioch was below 1000 µS/cm EC declined from about 70% in the late 1960s to about 40% during the recent period (Att. at pg. 19).

Even in years with above normal runoff in the Sacramento River watershed, freshwater at Antioch is less available than historically (Att. at pg. 20). For instance, during the above normal water year 2000, water at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 µS/cm EC for the entire day for about four-and-a-half months (early February through mid-June) and for a portion of the day at low tide for another three-and-a-half months (mid-June through September). For the remaining four months (October-January), water at the City's intakes exceeded 1,000 µS/cm EC for the entire day, regardless of tidal stage. Testimony from the Antioch lawsuit indicates that prior to 1918, water at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 µS/cm EC for the entire day during above-normal years and in all but dry fall months.

Salinity at low tide at Antioch during the present is higher than historical conditions (Att. pg. 21). For instance, during the period 1985 to 2009, the tenth percentile low tide daily salinity was below 1,000 µS/cm EC for about one-and-a-half months, and the 25th percentile low tide daily salinity was below 1,000 µS/cm EC for about nine months. However, testimony from the Antioch lawsuit indicates that during the driest years prior to 1918, low tide salinity at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 µS/cm EC for about nine months; for all but the driest years, salinity at low tide was below 1,000 µS/cm EC throughout the year. These data establish that salinity is higher at Antioch for a wider range of hydrologic conditions and for a longer duration of the year than under historic conditions.

4.2 Salinity intrusion occurs earlier and extends farther

Since the early 1900s the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H), located in Crockett near the western edge of Suisun Bay, obtained its freshwater supply in Crockett. When freshwater was not available at Crockett, C&H used barges that traveled upstream on the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers to procure freshwater. The measurements of distance to freshwater from Crockett, recorded during these barge operations, serve as a surrogate for the historical extent of freshwater in the western

---

[2] The freshwater salinity threshold of 250 mg/L chlorides at the San Joaquin River at Antioch is based on the 1968 agreement between the City of Antioch and DWR. This threshold is approximately equivalent to 1000 µS/cm EC, based on the site-specific empirical relationships between chloride concentration and EC (K. Guivetchi, DWR Memorandum dated June 24, 1986).

Delta. A comparison of C&H data during 1908-1917 and estimates[3] of distance to freshwater from Crockett during the post-SWP construction period (1966-1975) indicates that salinity intrusion into the Delta occurs on average about 4 months earlier (in March instead of July) during the post-SWP construction period of 1966-1975 (Att. at pg. 17). Comparison of C&H data from 1908-1917 to estimates of distance to freshwater from Crockett during the period 1995-2004 indicates that salinity intrusion during the recent period not only occurs earlier (by 4 months) but also extends farther in to the Delta (by about 5 to 20 miles) (Att. at pg. 18).

5. Conclusions

- Prior to 1918, freshwater was almost always available at Antioch at least at low tide. Only during dry years and during high tide conditions did salinity at Antioch become brackish.
- Between 1918 and the late 1930s, drought conditions, upstream water diversions, and channelization increased the salinity of water at Antioch.
- By 1940 the drought receded, but salinity at Antioch remained elevated.
- Salinity has continued to increase in recent years at Antioch.
- The fraction of time that water at Antioch is suitable for use (when salinity is < 250 mg/L chlorides or 1000 µS/cm EC) has declined significantly.
- "Historic" Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta.

6. Request

The City of Antioch requests that the State Water Resources Control Board review and incorporate historic salinity data into its analyses when considering Delta outflow requirements to protect public trust resources in the Western Delta and the flow requirements of SB X7 1 (e. g., volume, timing and quality), and that the Board use historic data to establish and to adjust its "baseline" of water quality for both fisheries health and drinking water quality standards. In fact, the City asks the SWRCB to establish flow and salinity standards in line with the Delta's historic fresh condition. The City also requests that the SWRCB consider using the gauging station at Antioch as a point of interest to ensure that flow criteria and salinity objectives are met.

References

[CCWD] Contra Costa Water District. 2010. Report titled "Historical Freshwater and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay"
Cowell, J. W. 1963. History of Benicia Arsenal: Benicia, California: January 1851 – December 1962. Berkeley, Howell-North Books.
[DPW] Department of Public Works. 1931. *Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay*. Bulletin No. 27. State of California, Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation.
[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1960. *Delta Water Facilities*. Bulletin No. 76. State of California.
Dillon, R. 1980. Great Expectations: The Story of Benicia, California. Fresno, California. 241 pp.
Means, T. 1928. Salt Water Problem: San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, San Francisco, California. April 1928. Report prepared for the Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.
Tolman, C. F. and J. F. Poland. 1935. *Investigation of the Ground-Water Supply of the Columbia Steel Company Pittsburg, California*. Stanford University, California. May 30, 1935.
Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District (1922. 188 Cal. 451).

---

[3] These estimates were made using IEP data in CCWD (2010), which will be presented by the Contra Costa Water District during this informational proceeding.

November 15, 2010

Sent via email to:

Phil Isenberg, Chair, and Members of the Delta Stewardship Council
Joe Grindstaff, Acting Executive Director, Delta Stewardship Council
Lester Snow, Director, California Resources Agency
David Hayes, Deputy Secretary of the Interior
Karen Scarborough, Undersecretary, California Resources Agency: for distribution to BDCP Steering Committee members

Re: Antioch's Concerns regarding the Bay Delta Conservation Plan (BDCP)

Introduction

The City of Antioch believes it is important to provide comments regarding the potential adverse effects of the Bay Delta Conservation Plan (BDCP) on the Delta, particularly the impacts that may conflict with the goals and policies of the Delta Reform Act.

Antioch's major concerns with the BDCP process and proposed project are summarized as follows:

1. The proposed BDCP proposed project will not comply with the Delta Reform Act, nor meet the co-equal goals in the Western Delta. The BDCP proposed project will:
   - Reduce Delta outflow
   - Increase reliance on the Delta for water supply by increasing exports over current levels
   - Increase salinity in the Western Delta (and other portions of the Delta)
   - Move X2 upstream from its present location.
2. The effects of the BDCP would likely continue the 150-year trend of degradation of the Delta, which was summarized in the draft *Delta Ecosystem White Paper*, presented to DSC on October 28, 2010.
3. The BDCP has not analyzed the impacts of increased Western Delta salinity on the Western Delta ecosystem.

4. The BDCP has to date not made any proposals to mitigate or pay for potential adverse impacts to Western Delta stakeholders.

Addressing these concerns is not only important for the health of the Delta, it is critical to the success of the BDCP. These concerns are discussed in more detail below.

The BDCP as Presently Proposed is not Consistent with the Co-Equal Goals

During the October 28, 2010, Delta Stewardship Council (DSC) meeting, Antioch was pleased to hear that it appears to be the DSC's position that the BDCP must be consistent with the co-equal goals. Unfortunately, based on recent modeling and *Effects Analysis* by the BDCP, the BDCP project as presently proposed is predicted to:

- Increase diversions and decrease Delta outflow. The BDCP is projected to increase diversions from the Delta above the amounts that have been exported to date by up to 1 million acre feet per year. These projected additional diversions will reduce Delta outflow.[1]

- Degrade water quality significantly in the Western Delta and at Antioch's Intake. BDCP modeling results and *Effects Analysis* indicate an increase in salinity in the Western Delta as a result of the export of Sacramento River water from the northern Delta and reductions in net Delta outflow. The proposed BDCP project is expected to increase average seasonal salinity in the Western Delta, at Antioch, and in portions of the Central Delta by 5 to 30% in spring, summer, and fall.[2] Daily increases in salinity within each of these periods, and in different year types, are expected to range to significantly higher values.

- Relocate X2 in the summer and fall in wet and above normal years well upstream (eastward) of its present location.[3]

---

[1] The most recent BDCP Effects Analysis (October 21, 2010) is attached to this letter as **Attachment A**.

[2] Modeling results from the BDCP presented at the June 17, 2010 BDCP Steering Committee meeting, "BDCP Physical Modeling Update: Summary of Delta Hydrodynamic & Water Quality Results" are attached to this letter as **Attachment B**.

[3] Increases in salinity (although less than in the western Delta) are also predicted to occur as a result of the BDCP project in portions of the Central Delta and in Old and Middle River. See **Attachment B**.

Western Delta Impacts

Reducing outflow and increasing salinity would adversely impact the Western Delta ecosystem, which has evolved as a primarily freshwater environment. Further, it appears that the BDCP project as presently proposed would neither protect nor enhance the cultural, recreational, public trust resources or agricultural values in the Western Delta.[4] All of these values in the Western Delta are historically based on a Delta with lower salinity and greater outflow than the projected conditions following the implementation of the BDCP project.[5]

The BDCP's proposed project will also have impacts on Western Delta water supply reliability, water rights and economy. For example, potential costs to the City of Antioch as a result of the salinity increases projected by BDCP effects analyses are estimated to be **$24,000 per day (up to $720,000 per month)**, when water is too saline for diversion at the City's freshwater intake location.[6] Given Antioch's current budget of approximately **$20 million per year**, the impacts of the proposed project will be significant.

The BDCP as presently proposed will continue the 150-year trend of Delta Degradation

The historic decline of outflow and increase in salinity clearly indicates that the Delta ecosystem has to date been given far lower priority than water exports. Although

---

[4] Water Code section 85022(c) provides that the Delta is a distinct and valuable resource of "vital and enduring interest to all the people" and exists as a "delicately balanced estuary and wetland ecosystem of hemispheric importance."

[5] It is State policy to achieve the co-equal goals of providing a more reliable water supply for California and protecting, restoring and enhancing the Delta ecosystem. These goals are to be achieved in a "manner that protects and enhances the unique cultural, recreational, natural resource, and agricultural values of the Delta as an evolving place." The goal of water supply reliability is not limited to Delta exports and includes in-Delta water supply reliability. Inherent in the co-equal goals are the following objectives set forth in Water Code section 85020:

> (c) Restore the Delta ecosystem, including its fisheries and wildlife as the heart of a healthy estuary and wetland system.
>
> (e) Improve water quality to protect human health and the environment consistent with achieving water quality objectives in the Delta.

[6] Balanced with achieving the co-equal goals is requirement that the Delta Plan and the actions of the Delta Stewardship Council not "diminish, impair, or otherwise affect in any manner whatsoever" water rights including pre-1914 water rights. Water Code Section 85031. The City of Antioch has an adjudicated pre-1914 water right. The City of Antioch is located in the Western Delta just to the east of Suisun Bay at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers. The City was founded in the 1850s and was incorporated as a City in 1872. The City has diverted its water supply from the Delta for well over 100 years and has some of the oldest and highest priority water rights in the Delta. Although the City's diversion point is near the mouth of the San Joaquin River, the primary source of the City's water supply is actually the Sacramento River via Three Mile and Georgiana Sloughs as well as from the confluence.

legislatively declared "equal," export water supply reliability and ecosystem restoration are not equal – not yet. Significant restoration and enhancement of the Delta ecosystem will need to be performed before the Delta ecosystem could ever be declared "co-equal" with export water supply reliability.

As outlined in the DSC White Paper on the *Delta Ecosystem*, the Delta environment has been substantially degraded by systematic alterations that have occurred over the past 150 years, including historic anthropogenic alterations that occurred prior to 1920 and that resulted in significant decreases in outflow and increases in salinity. The State and Federal Water projects (the Projects) resulted in additional, substantial impacts to the Delta following this time period. The BDCP proposed project will compound these historic injuries and will further degrade the Delta environment and the fisheries it supports. The US EPA, State Water Resources Control Board, California Department of Fish and Game, and most recently, Department of Interior biologists[7] have all called for increased Delta outflow and reduced diversions, not the opposite, as BDCP is proposing.

Attached to this letter as **Attachment C** are portions of testimony submitted by Antioch outlining the historic alteration of the Delta. This testimony was submitted to the State Water Resources Control Board during the Delta Flow Criteria proceedings. Antioch's testimony (as well as testimony submitted by Contra Costa Water District[8]) shows that the Delta was historically fresher than today's Delta and that the availability of freshwater in the Delta and at Antioch's intake has declined as the result of historic anthropogenic alterations.[9] This testimony also shows that while salinity historically varied more than today's Delta, the variability occurred in a much fresher Delta with fresh water extending well into Suisun Bay in most years.

No Proposals to Mitigate BDCP's Potential Impacts

Antioch has been actively engaged in the BDCP planning process, regularly attends the BDCP Steering Committee and DSC meetings, and makes and submits comments on issues as they arise. Antioch has sought to collaborate with the BDCP project proponents

---

[7] See Department of Interior biologists *BDCP Effects Issue Brief*, dated September 27, 2010.

[8] Contra Costa Water District also submitted a comprehensive historic salinity study to the SWRCB during the Delta Flow Criteria proceedings. This study can be found at: http://www.ccwater.com/salinity/HistoricalSalinityReport-2010Feb.pdf.

[9] As set forth in more detail in **Attachment C**: Tidal marsh acreage in the Delta decreased from over 250,000 acres in the 1870s to less than 30,000 acres in the 1920s and has since continued to decrease. Total upstream reservoir storage capacity increased from 1 million acre-feet (MAF) in 1920 to more than 30 MAF by 1979. Water exports from the Delta have been steadily increasing since the 1950s, and the combined annual exports from CVP and SWP have increased, on average, from about 0.5 MAF/yr in the late 1950s to about 5 MAF/yr during the recent period.

---

and agencies in the interest of protecting Antioch's water supply and the western Delta ecosystem and the public trust resources. However, to date there have been no fruitful discussions between Antioch and BDCP proponents or agencies to mitigate the impacts of the BDCP, through either regional solutions or other measures.

Antioch has raised its concerns about the impacts to its water quality and water rights both in writing and verbally at numerous BDCP Steering Committee meetings. Comment letters on record from Steering Committee members and other stakeholders raise similar concerns and make requests that have not been addressed to date, some from more than a year ago.[10] Antioch, CCWD, and North Delta Water Agency submitted a joint letter in December 2009 to request both information on specific model parameters and input/output data from the BDCP modeling analysis, to confirm the accuracy and adequacy of the models and to begin to estimate impacts.[11] To date, Antioch has received only very limited information, such that it cannot fully evaluate the expected impacts to its water supply.

BDCP, the Delta Reform Act, and the Delta Plan - Getting It Right

Antioch strongly supports the DSC taking a more active role in reviewing the BDCP documents to ensure compliance with the Delta Reform Act, as was discussed at the DSC meeting on October 28, 2010. While the BDCP has analyzed and publicized certain environmental benefits of the project, it has done almost nothing to analyze potential mitigation approaches to address adverse impacts of the project.

The BDCP Steering Committee has deferred the discussion of mitigating adverse impacts, saying that these impacts will be "addressed" during the EIR/EIS process. Steering Committee members and stakeholders have stated that engaging the impacted parties proactively will yield a more effective plan and reduce the current lack of trust in the process. To date, discussion of mitigation has been done selectively, or behind closed doors. Given the significance of the adverse impacts, addressing mitigation issues now could reduce mitigation costs and ensure the BDCP complies with the co-equal goals and the principles of reasonable use and the public trust.

Antioch does not oppose the principles and objectives of the BDCP. However, the City believes that the project as presently proposed would violate the co-equal goals and continue to degrade the Delta environment—this is clearly not in the public interest.

---

[10] See public comments posted on the BDCP website http://baydeltaconservationplan.com/BDCPPlanningProcess/HowToParticipate/BDCPPublicComments.aspx.

[11] See http://www.baydeltaconservationplan.com/BDCPEIRCommentArchive/Letter-BDCPmodeling-2009-12-10.pdf.

Proposed Solutions

Antioch believes that potential solutions may exist that could allow the BDCP to meet the co-equal goals. These potential solutions include:

- Commit to the goals of restoring substantial areas of the Delta ecosystem and take measures to enhance Delta outflow prior to the construction of any new export conveyance facilities.
- Establish effective and comprehensive restoration and enhancement goals and objectives for the Delta that are quantifiable, achievable, binding, and fully funded.
- Establish a "Do No Harm" policy: The SWRCB, Department of Fish and Game, Department of the Interior biologists and US EPA have recommended increased Delta outflows and reduced diversions. The BDCP needs to adopt a policy not to reduce outflow or increase salinity beyond existing levels.
- Incorporate mitigation for impacts into the BDCP planning and project design, rather than as an after-the-fact approach within the EIR/EIS process. Modeling has identified significant potential impacts of the BDCP project that can and should be addressed as part of the project design.
- Consider physical and regional in-Delta options to mitigate potential impacts of the BDCP, such as: regional consolidation of intakes and desalination
- Include reduced diversion and increased Delta outflow alternatives for the EIR/EIS.
- Provide stakeholder engagement and comment disposition as part of the development of the BDCP and NCCP/EIR/EIS process. To date, stakeholder concerns have generally not been addressed, nor solutions discussed, with the exception of a few off-site meetings.

Antioch is ready to engage in discussing and developing these potential solutions. The City looks forward to working with all parties to achieve potential solutions that improve and restore the California Delta. Please contact me if you have any questions, or to discuss how Antioch's concerns may be addressed at this stage.

Sincerely,

P. Harrington

Phil Harrington
Director of Capital Improvements/Water Rights
City of Antioch
P.O. Box 5007
Antioch, CA 94531
pharrington@ci.antioch.ca.us

cc: Congressman George Miller
Congressman John Garamendi
U.S. Senator Dianne Feinstein
U.S. Senator Barbara Boxer
Senator Lois Wolk
Senator Mark De Saulnier
Assembly Member Jared Huffman
Assembly Member Joan Buchanan
City of Antioch City Manager Jim Jakel
City of Antioch City Attorney Lynn Tracy Nerland
City of Antioch Mayor and City Council Members

List of Attachments

Attachment A: Results from the BDCP Effects Analysis, BDCP Steering Committee Meeting, October 21, 2010

Attachment B: BDCP Modeling Results, BDCP Steering Committee Meeting, June 17, 2010

Attachment C: City of Antioch's Testimony to the State Water Resources Control Board, March 22, 2010

Attachment A

Results from the BDCP Effects Analysis,
BDCP Steering Committee Meeting, October 21, 2010

BDCP Effects Analysis: SAIC Team Summary of Findings for Covered Fish Species

---

Steering Committee Meeting

October 21, 2010

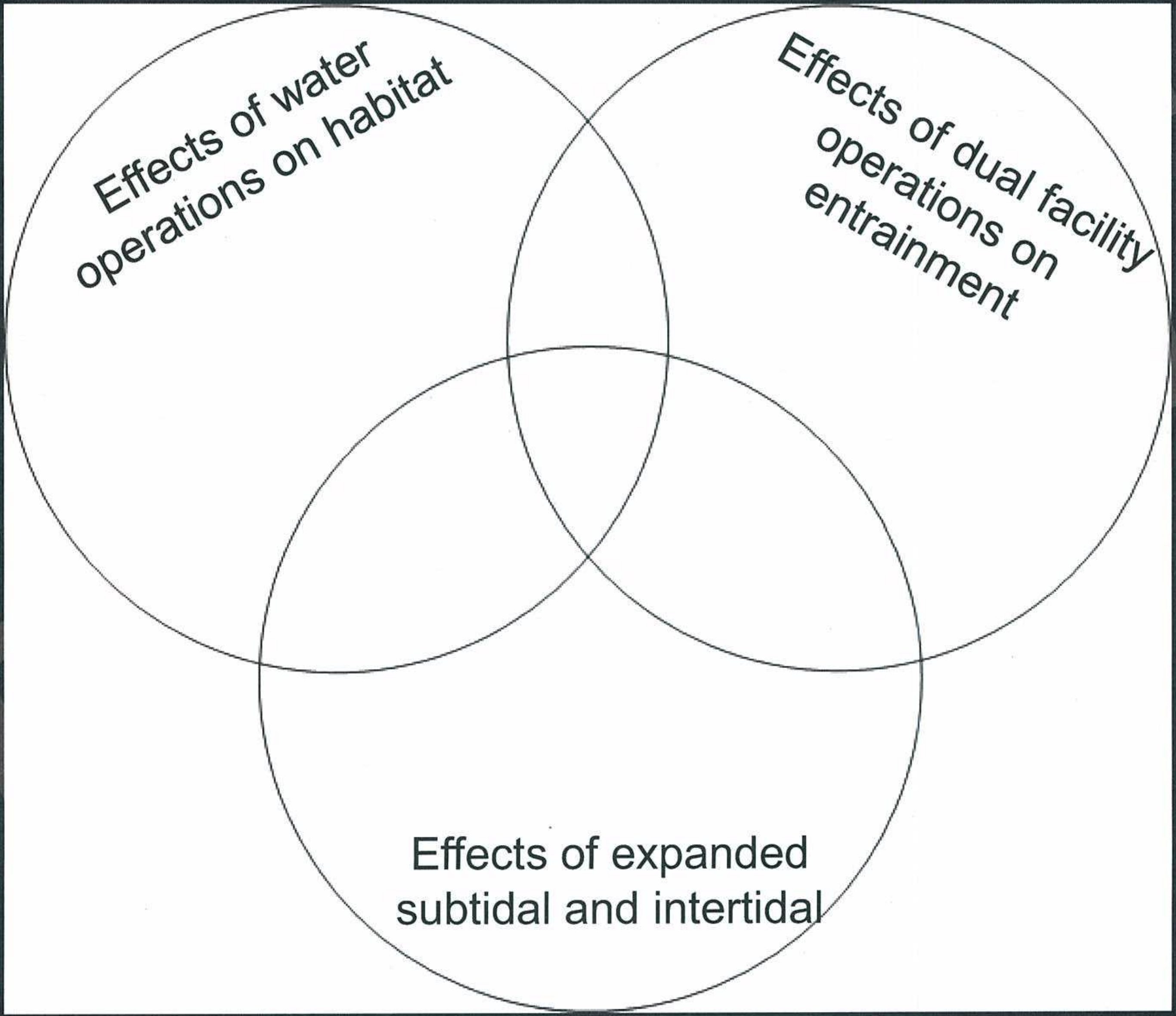
Summary of Findings

- SAIC consultant team work product
- Findings are based on the August 19 BDCP effects analysis and September 9, 2010 expanded habitat analysis
- Findings do not reflect revisions that may take place as a result of comments received and discussions during the Theme Team meetings
- Summary of findings has not been approved or endorsed by
  - State or Federal resource agencies
  - PREs
  - NGOs
- Findings identify areas of the project description that may benefit from further analysis and refinement
- Findings are subject to revision

Process to Date

- Jul 30: Steering Committee presentation of Preliminary Results of Effects Analysis
- Aug 19: Draft Effects Analysis released to Effects Analysis Managers
- Sep 9: Draft Enhanced Habitat Analysis released to Effects Analysis Managers
- Oct 7: Steering Committee presentation of preliminary recommendations for potential refinements

Package of Conservation Actions



Effects of water operations on habitat

Effects of dual facility operations on entrainment

Effects of expanded subtidal and intertidal

Scope of Recommended Areas for Further Consideration

- North Delta intake configuration
- Increased spring-run salmon egg mortality
- Reduced Sacramento River flows downstream of the intakes
- Refinement of April-May south Delta operations
- Winter-spring X2 and outflow effects on longfin smelt
- Summer and fall X2 and delta smelt habitat

Conservation Measure Refinements

- Further analysis and refinement of several conservation measures and operations is underway
- Refinements are expected to reduce and avoid adverse effects on covered fish
- Adaptive range and monitoring will inform refinements and reduce uncertainty
- Summary findings assume that changes in operations and habitat can be accomplished as part of plan formulation that will cumulatively reduce stressors and contribute to increased abundance

Overall Findings

- Implementation of BDCP actions is expected to appropriately minimize and mitigate the effects of covered activities and contribute to species recovery
- Dual facility operations will result in reduced risk of south Delta entrainment: the magnitude of benefit varies among species and lifestages
- The BDCP Conservation Strategy preserves upstream habitat conditions – instream flows and water temperatures, although refinements to water temperature management for spring-run eggs would be beneficial
- The BDCP Conservation Strategy will preserve and restore large-scale geographically distributed seasonal floodplain, intertidal, subtidal, and channel margin habitat, however, the performance of restored habitats has not been tested

Overall Findings

- Increased habitat diversity and complexity offers increased opportunity for diverse life histories based on results from other habitat restoration projects in other estuaries
- Cumulative reduction in many stressors that adversely affect species survival and growth will contribute to improved Delta habitat conditions and species recovery

Contribution to Recovery

- The BDCP conservation measures are expected to result in a contribution to recovery of:
  - Delta and longfin smelt – reduced risk of entrainment losses for juvenile and adult smelt and improved Delta hydrodynamics were observed; the potential adverse effects of changes in late winter X2 on longfin smelt continue to be evaluated
  - Winter-run Chinook salmon - expansion and enhancement of juvenile rearing habitat within the Delta, and improved Delta hydrodynamics were observed

Contribution to Recovery

- Sacramento splittail - expansion and enhancement of suitable floodplain habitat for spawning and rearing, reduced risk of entrainment, and improved Delta hydrodynamics were observed
- Fall-run/late fall-run Chinook salmon - expansion and enhancement of juvenile rearing habitat within the Delta, improved Delta hydrodynamics, and reduced risk of entrainment were observed
- Green and white sturgeon - expansion and enhancement of rearing and foraging habitat and reduced risk of entrainment were observed
- Central Valley steelhead - reduced risk of entrainment for Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin juvenile steelhead and improved Delta hydrodynamics were observed.

Contribution to Recovery

- The conservation measures would provide benefits and would not prohibit recovery for spring-run Chinook salmon (primarily through reduction in Delta stressors) or Pacific and river lamprey (primarily through reduced entrainment)

- The BDCP conservation strategy would contribute to cumulative biological benefits as a result of the reduction in stressors adversely impacting the covered species and their habitat (e.g., reduction in predation and exposure to toxics)

- A key element of the conservation strategy is the expansion of access to seasonally inundated floodplain, intertidal and subtidal aquatic habitat.

Expanded Aquatic Habitat

- Habitat expansion and enhancement would result in:
  - Greater habitat diversity and complexity and substantially expanded physical habitat to support spawning and rearing
  - Alternative migratory pathways
  - Opportunities for covered fish species to express a wider range and diversity of life history characteristics (e.g., extended rearing for salmon fry within the Delta and wider range of ocean entry times)
  - Access to low velocity, shallow water habitat suitable for juvenile rearing)
  - Increased production of nutrients, organic matter, phytoplankton, zooplankton, and macroinvertebrates that serve as food resources for covered fish, both within the habitat as well as over a large area of the Delta

Expanded Aquatic Habitat

- The performance of expanded aquatic habitat in meeting the desired biological goals and objectives is affected by the:
  - Scale of habitat restoration
  - Wide geographic distribution and variety of habitat types
  - Ability to design habitats that have diverse and complex habitat characteristics (range of water depths, seasonal range in salinity gradients, tidal and river flows and flushing, water velocities, habitat complexity and diversity, wind and wave induced turbidity, hydraulic residence time, and other factors)
  - Colonization and use of these expanded habitats by native and non-native species

Expanded Aquatic Habitat

- There are uncertainties in the design and functional performance of large-scale aquatic habitat restoration projects that have not been tested within the Bay-Delta
- Recognizing these uncertainties, BDCP includes development of a measureable set of goals and objectives, performance metrics, monitoring, and adaptive management actions
- The initial restoration actions would be designed in a modular format to allow testing and monitoring representative (e.g., 500 to 1,000 acre) restoration areas
- Monitoring and subsequent refinements to habitat designs will reduce uncertainty and reduce and avoid, to the extent possible, adverse effects of expanded habitat within the Delta (e.g., areas colonized by *Egeria*, *Corbula*, or non-native predators)

Water Diversion Conservation Actions

- Design, operations, and location of north Delta intakes is expected to reduce the risk of entrainment or impingement of all life stages of covered fish at the north Delta intakes to negligible levels
- Removal of non-project diversions as a result of habitat restoration will provide marginal benefit
- Consolidation and screening selected diversions would provide incremental fish benefits
- Transition of Mirant's Contra Costa and Pittsburg Power Plants to closed cycle cooling will reduce and avoid entrainment and impingement of covered fish

Predator Removal

- Localized removal of predators associated with pilings and abandoned boat removal will provide a negligible benefit to covered fish.
- More intensive regional predator removal and removal of predator "hot spots" would provide greater benefits to covered fish

Effects on Salinity (X2) - Fall

- River flows and Delta hydrodynamics influence the location of X2
- The location of X2 is projected to decline (move upstream) during the summer and fall of wet and above normal years
- There is substantial ongoing disagreement about the importance of X2 as an indicator of habitat availability for delta smelt
- Concern that upstream movement of X2 may create salinity conditions that disrupt delta smelt use of Suisun Marsh expanded habitat
- However, during periods when salinity in Suisun Bay is suitable for delta smelt it is expected that delta smelt would directly and indirectly benefit from expanded habitat within Suisun Marsh

Effects on Salinity (X2) - Fall

- During wetter years when fall X2 under BDCP operations would be located further upstream it is expected that pre-spawning adult delta smelt would benefit from expanded habitat located within the Cache Slough complex
- Acreage of X2 area shrinks in wetter years. Total habitat area in dryer years is increased. Overall biological significance is uncertain.

Higher X2 Position From Reduced Delta Outflow – Late Winter/Spring

- The BDCP Conservation Strategy will modify Delta hydrodynamics and move the position of X2 upstream during the late winter and spring
- Controlling for the effects of climate change, the projected declines in longfin smelt abundance due to the proposed project are 2-23%
- The relationship between flow, X2 location, and longfin smelt abundance, and abundance of several other pelagic fish, has degraded in recent years
- Increased habitat and associated increased food supplies may improve conditions for longfin smelt, but these effects are uncertain, particularly at the population level

Removal of Submerged Aquatic Vegetation (SAV)

- SAV has the potential to make habitat unsuitable for covered fish by encroaching on areas used for spawning and rearing, providing habitat for introduced predators, and reducing turbidity both within beds and in nearby areas
- SAV removal is an important secondary action to habitat restoration
- Without SAV removal, some portion of the intertidal and subtidal restored habitat will be colonized by SAV and become unsuitable for covered fish

Increased Predation Resulting From North Delta In-River Intakes

- The use of five in-river intake structures located in the north Delta would create conditions that attract predatory fish such as striped bass, and thus increase the risk of Sacramento River juvenile steelhead, salmon, and splittail to predation losses
- Actions that could reduce the predation risk include reconfiguration of the intakes to an on-bank design that reduces predator habitat

Reduced Reverse Flow Conditions

- BDCP dual facility operations will result in:
  - Substantial improvements in Old and Middle River (OMR) reverse flows within the south and central Delta
  - A net improvement in downstream flows through the Delta, particularly from the San Joaquin, Mokelumne, and Consumes river systems
  - These improvements in Delta hydrodynamics (reduced OMR reverse flows) are expected to result in substantial improvements in habitat conditions for all covered fish

No Adverse Upstream Impacts on Steelhead, Winter-run, Fall-run, and Late Fall-run Salmon

- No indirect adverse effects to upstream habitat were detected for steelhead, winter-run, fall-run, and late fall-run Chinook salmon in the Sacramento, Feather, and American rivers
- Small positive and negative changes were detected in the Sacramento and Feather rivers, such as reduced summer and fall flows in the Sacramento River relative to existing conditions; these changes would not be expected to have a substantial effect on salmonid life history (i.e., migration, spawning, and juvenile rearing)
- No changes in habitat were detected in other rivers including the Trinity, San Joaquin, and Stanislaus or Clear Creek or in non-CVP/SWP rivers including the Mokelumne, Consumes, Tuolumne, and Merced rivers, or Deer, Mill, Butte, Battle, and other tributary creeks

Increased Egg Mortality for Sacramento River Spring-run Salmon

- Egg mortality for spring-run Chinook salmon on the Sacramento River increased approximately 5 percent during ELT and 10 percent during LLT in wet, above normal, and below normal water years relative to existing conditions
- The majority of spring-run Chinook salmon spawn in tributaries: approximately 10% of the spring-run spawn in areas that would be affected by Shasta Reservoir operations
- Refinement in reservoir operations and coldwater pool management may reduce this effect, but potential operational changes have not been evaluated using the hydrologic and water temperature simulation models
- Habitat expansion in tributaries would benefit spring-run Chinook salmon and reduce effects on the Sacramento River

Uncertain Effects Related to Operation of North Delta Intake

- Sacramento River flows downstream of the north Delta intakes will be reduced under BDCP operations relative to existing conditions
- Flows will be reduced less during the winter than during the other seasons
- Flows will be reduced most in the wetter years, but will be increased in drier years
- Concerns have been expressed regarding potential adverse effects of reduced flows on downstream channel margin habitat
- It is uncertain whether the reduction in attraction and olfactory cues for upstream migrating adults salmonids and survival of downstream migrating juvenile salmonids is biologically significant

Habitat Benefits for Eastside Tributary Salmonids

- Intertidal habitat will be expanded in the lower regions of the Mokelumne and Cosumnes rivers in NT
- These expanded intertidal and subtidal habitats will then continue to function during the ELT and LLT to benefit east side steelhead and fall-run Chinook salmon, as well as other aquatic species
- Juvenile salmonids will also benefit from habitat expansion and enhancement in the western Delta and Suisun Marsh

Habitat Benefits for San Joaquin River Salmonids

- Expansion and enhancement of intertidal and subtidal habitat in the south Delta would benefit juvenile splittail, steelhead and Chinook salmon produced in the San Joaquin River basin
- Approximately 12,800 acres of acres aquatic habitat will be restored in the LLT
- Restoration floodplain habitat along the San Joaquin, Old, and Middle rivers will periodically (in years of flood events) provide rearing habitat for San Joaquin River salmonids
- Juvenile salmonids will benefit from habitat expansion and enhancement in the western Delta and Suisun Marsh

Effects of BDCP on Exposure to Toxics Uncertain

- The inundation regime on the Yolo Bypass will be altered, potentially increasing the rate of mercury methylation and uptake by prey organisms: BMPs as part of habitat restoration and management are expected to reduce the risk of adverse effects
- Certain actions set out in the BDCP will likely result in increased exposure of splittail and sturgeon to increased levels of selenium (selenate): the magnitude of the effect is uncertain, particularly at the population level
- Habitat restoration will decrease pyrethroid loading because agricultural land will be taken out of production: the potential benefits to covered fish are uncertain, particularly at the population level

Consistency with Recovery Planning

- The BDCP conservation strategy and actions are consistent with the conservation principles of recovery planning and will address many the stressors as identified in the NMFS and USFWS Recovery Plans Habitat
- BDCP actions are consistent with the long-term recovery goals for the covered species
- The BDCP Conservation Strategy will ensure that the effects of covered activities are appropriately minimized and mitigated
- Reduction in the cumulative stressors on covered fish is expected to contribute to improved survival and species recovery

Restoration of Habitat That Will Increase Abundance

- The BDCP actions are expected to contribute to increased abundance of covered fish through protection and enhancement of suitable upstream salmonid and sturgeon spawning and juvenile rearing habitats, increased floodplain habitat for splittail spawning, increased geographically distributed and complex habitats and food production within the Delta
- Increased access to expanded seasonal floodplain, tidal wetlands, and improved channel margin habitat is expected to contribute to increased juvenile growth and survival based on data collected in Yolo Bypass and restoration projects in other estuaries
- It is expected that these conservation actions will result in improved population growth rates and contribute to species recovery over a wide range of hydrologic and environmental conditions that occur within the Central Valley, however, these effects have not been quantified

Salmonid Independent Populations

- Conservation measures included as part of BDCP would not result in range expansion of salmonid populations into additional upstream habitats or the formation of additional independent salmonid spawning populations
- Habitat conditions and water operations would be complementary to the formation of additional Chinook salmon or steelhead populations within the Central Valley if that should occur in the future

Role of Adaptive Management

- As a comprehensive package of conservation measures, it is expected that certain actions set out in BDCP will contribute to the survival and recovery of Central Valley covered fish populations through cumulative reduction in stressors and improvements in habitat
- The magnitude of the effects of BDCP actions on species recovery has not been quantified
- Areas of uncertainty remain regarding the effectiveness of various individual conservation actions that will be addressed as part of BDCP implementation through monitoring, research, and adaptive management programs

Next Steps

- Review comments on the draft effects analysis provided by State and Federal resource agencies, PREs and NGOs
- Revise effects analyses in response to comments and suggestions
- Refine conservation actions to address, to the extent possible, areas where potentially adverse effects could be minimized or avoided or areas where increased benefits to covered species could be achieved

Attachment B

BDCP Modeling Results, BDCP Steering Committee Meeting, June 17, 2010

BDCP Physical Modeling Update

Summary of Delta Hydrodynamic & Water Quality Results

BDCP Steering Committee

June 17, 2010

Outline

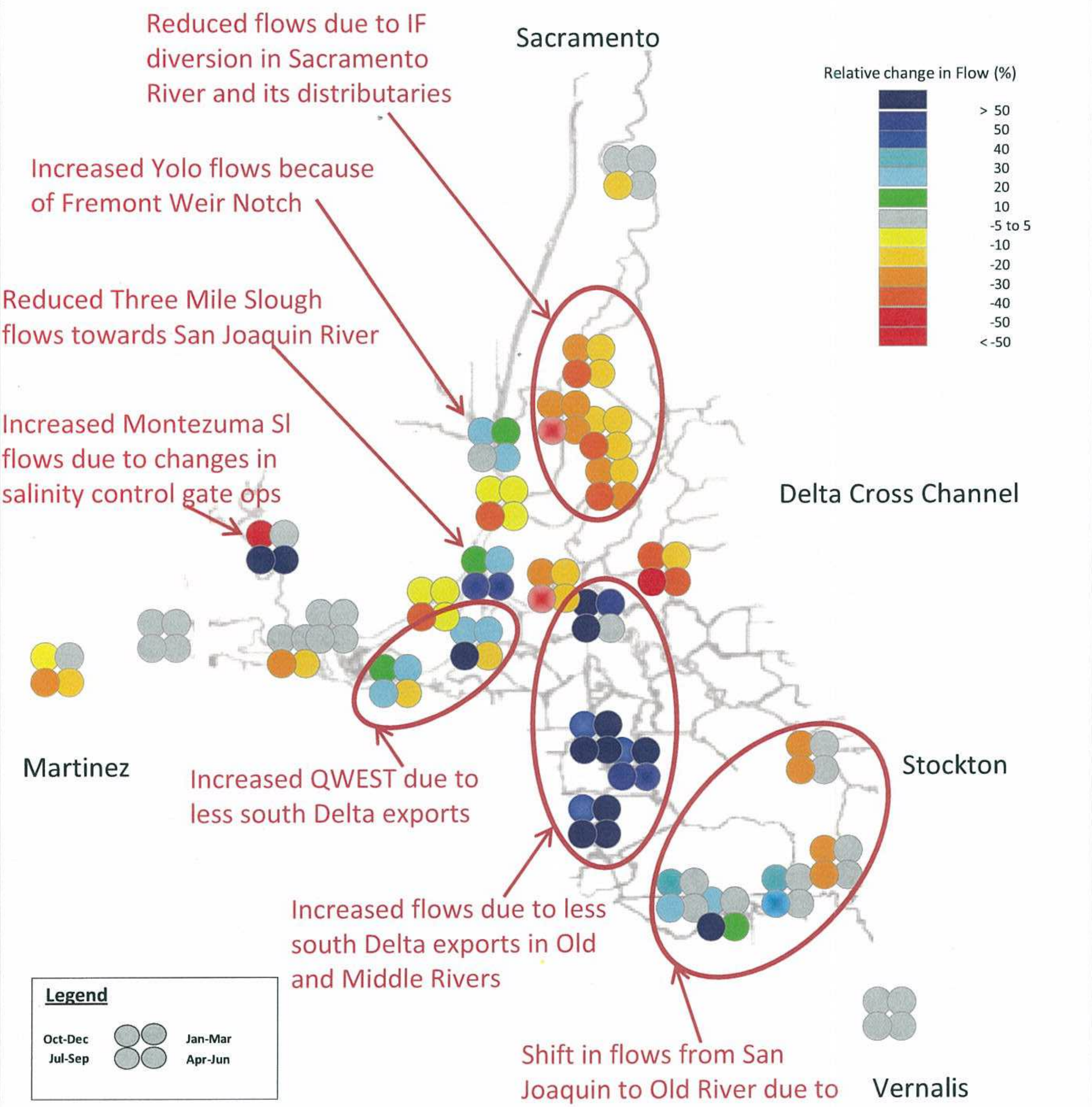
- Update on physical modeling
- Summary of Delta flow and stage results
- Summary of Delta water quality results
- On-going work and next steps

Update on Physical Modeling

- Physical modeling <u>complete</u> to date
  - **VIC**: Climate-driven hydrologic model
  - **UnTRIM**: Sea level rise effects
  - **RMA**: Tidal marsh effects
  - **ANN**: Flow-salinity responses
  - **CALSIM II**: Hydrology & system operations
  - **SRWQM**: Sac R Water Quality Model
  - **DSM2**: Delta hydrodynamics & water quality
  - **DSM2-PTM**: Particle tracking models

- 6 scenarios for CALSIM II, SRWQM, DSM2, and DSM2-PTM models
  1. **NAA:** No Action Alternative with current climate and sea level
  2. **NAA_ELT:** No Action Alternative with 2025 climate and sea level rise
  3. **NAA_LLT:** No Action Alternative with 2060 climate and sea level rise
  4. **PP:** Proposed Project (long-term ops) with current climate, sea level, and restoration
  5. **PP_ELT:** Project with Early Long-Term (2025) climate, sea level rise, and restoration
  6. **PP_LLT:** Project with Early Long-Term (2060) climate, sea level rise, and restoration

Seasonal Changes in Flow



Reduced flows due to IF diversion in Sacramento River and its distributaries

Increased Yolo flows because of Fremont Weir Notch

Reduced Three Mile Slough flows towards San Joaquin River

Increased Montezuma Sl flows due to changes in salinity control gate ops

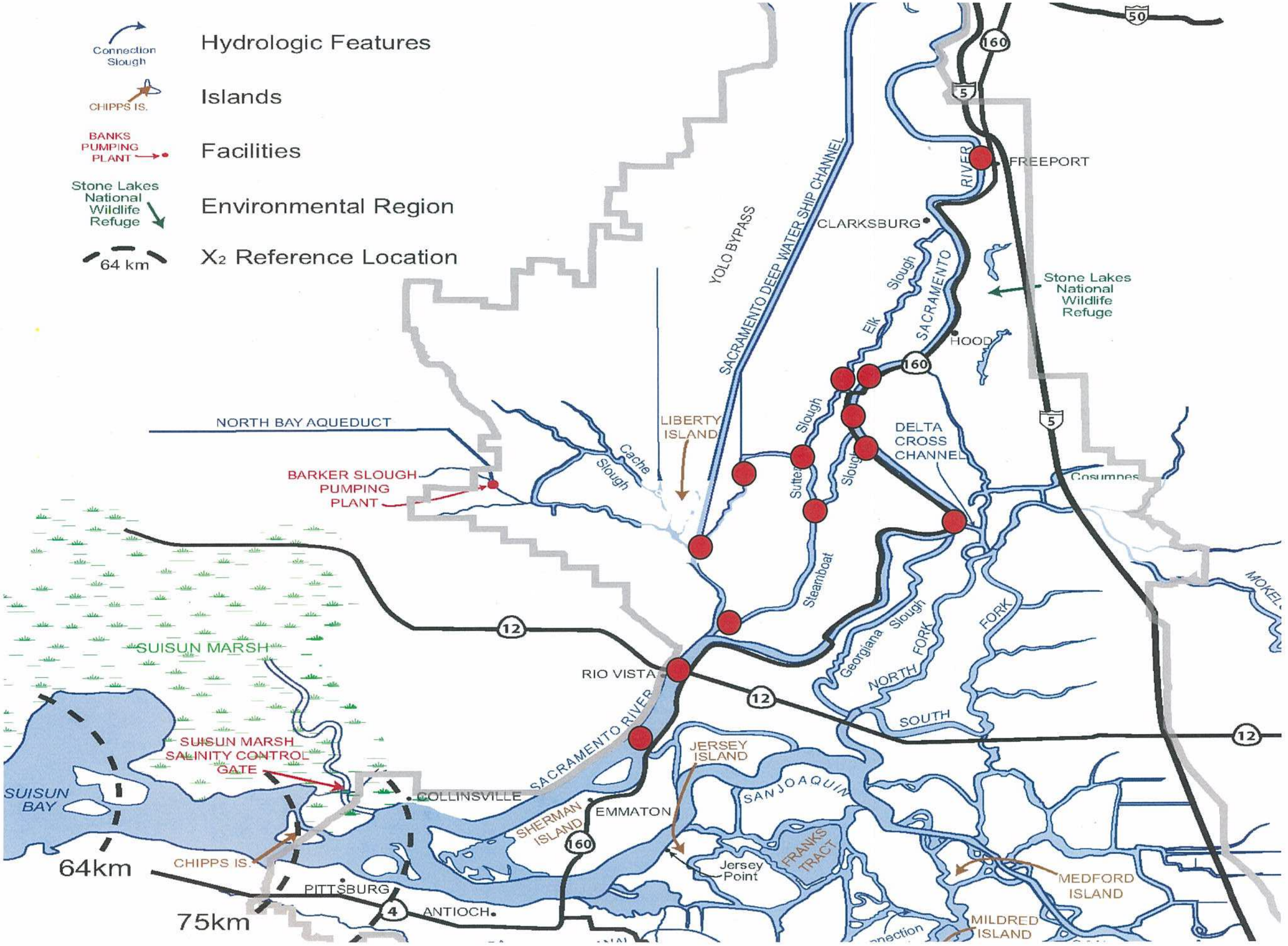
Increased QWEST due to less south Delta exports

Increased flows due to less south Delta exports in Old and Middle Rivers

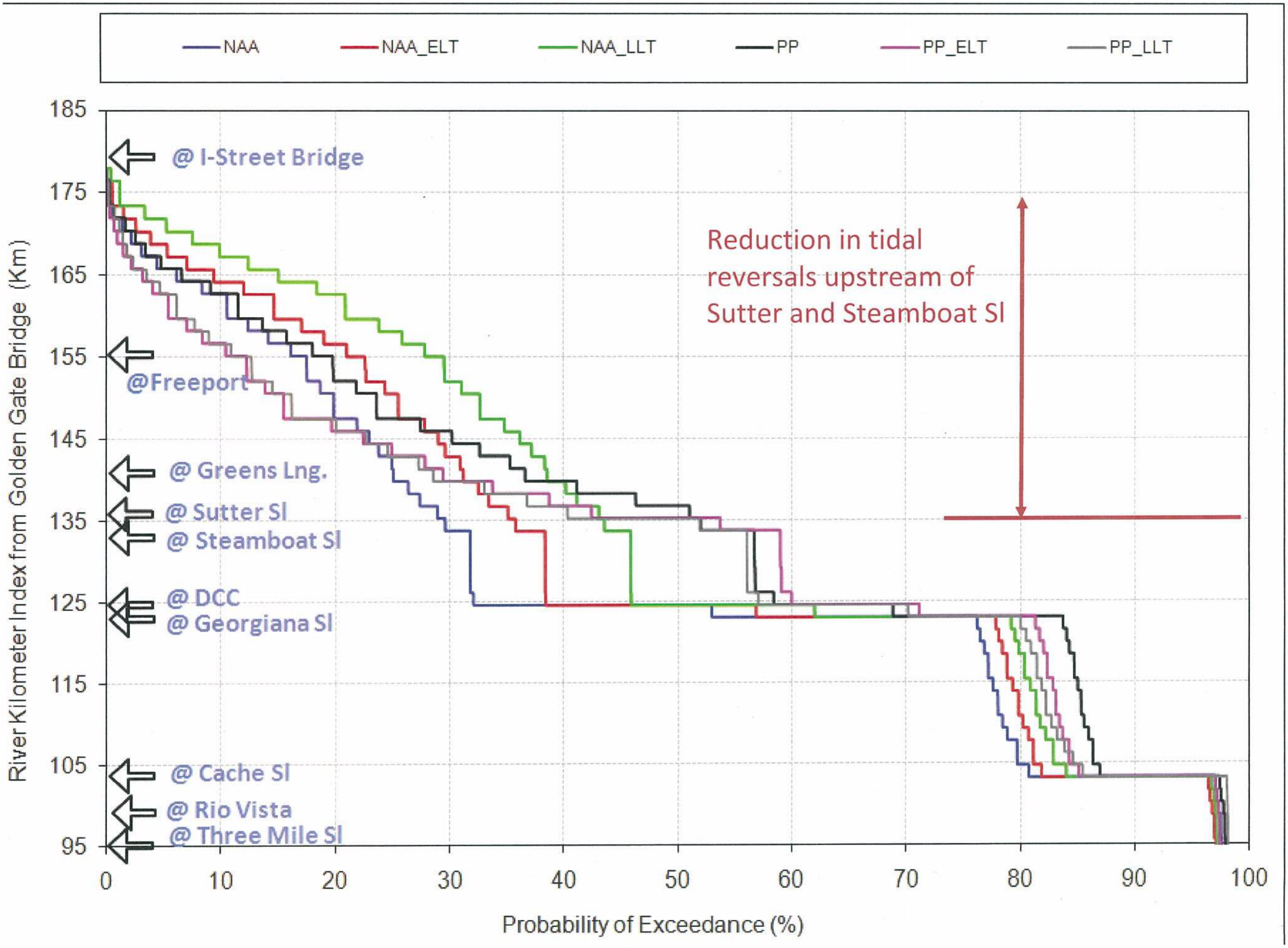
Shift in flows from San Joaquin to Old River due to changes in temporary barrier operations

Water Year/Period : **ALL WATER YEARS**

North Delta Locations for Today's Discussion

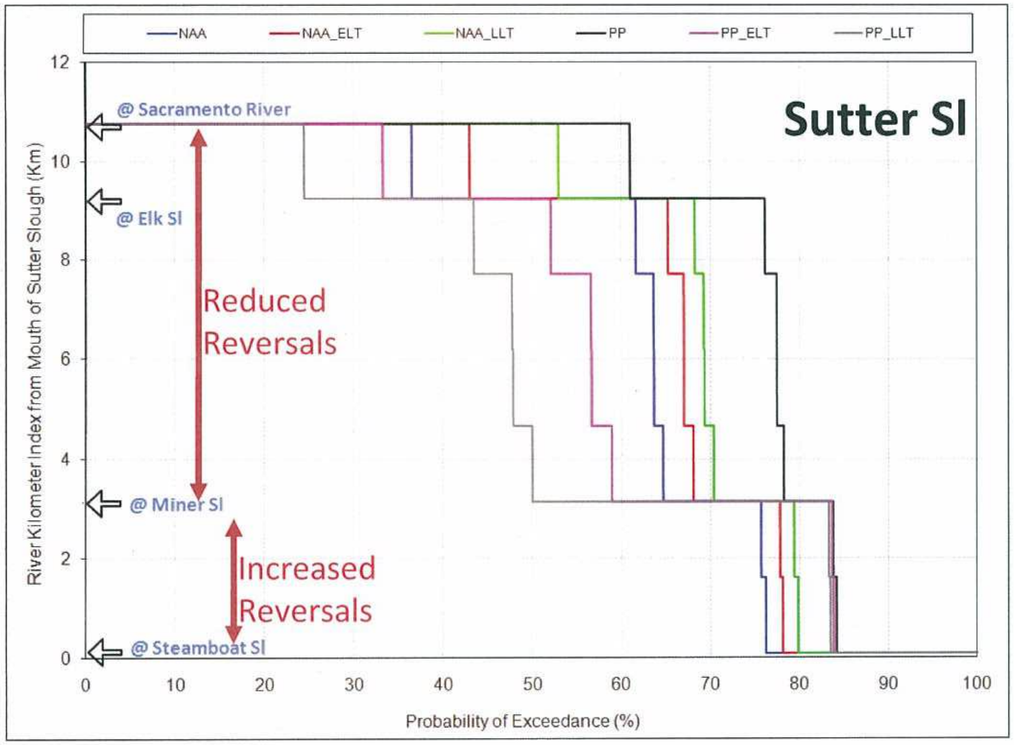


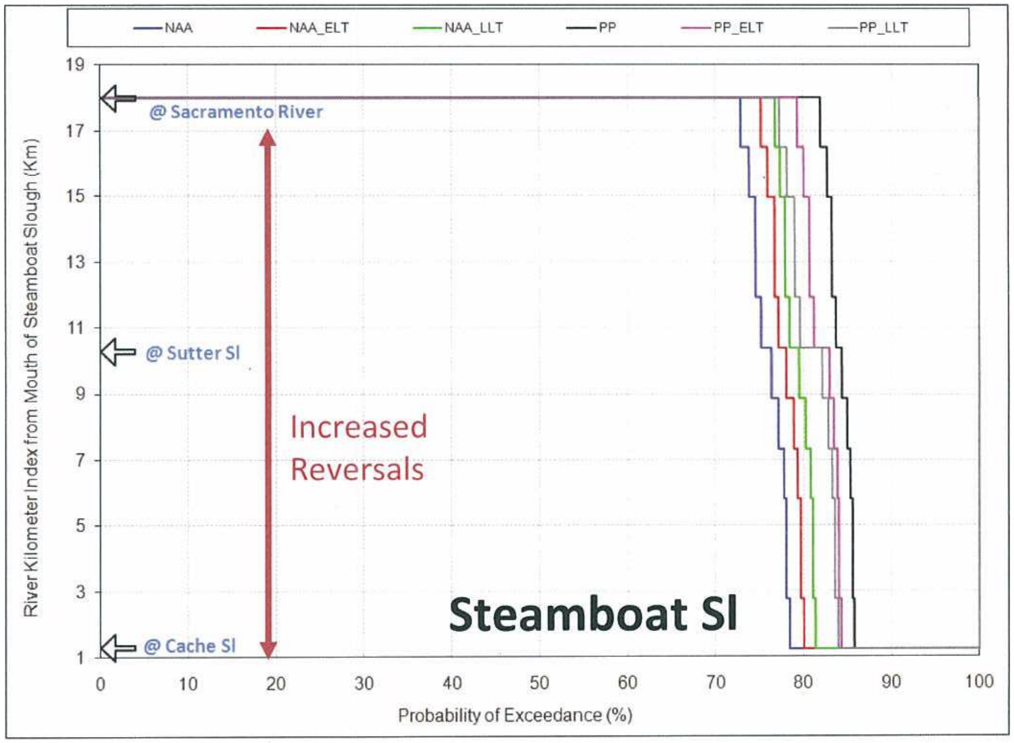
Flow Reversals in Sacramento River

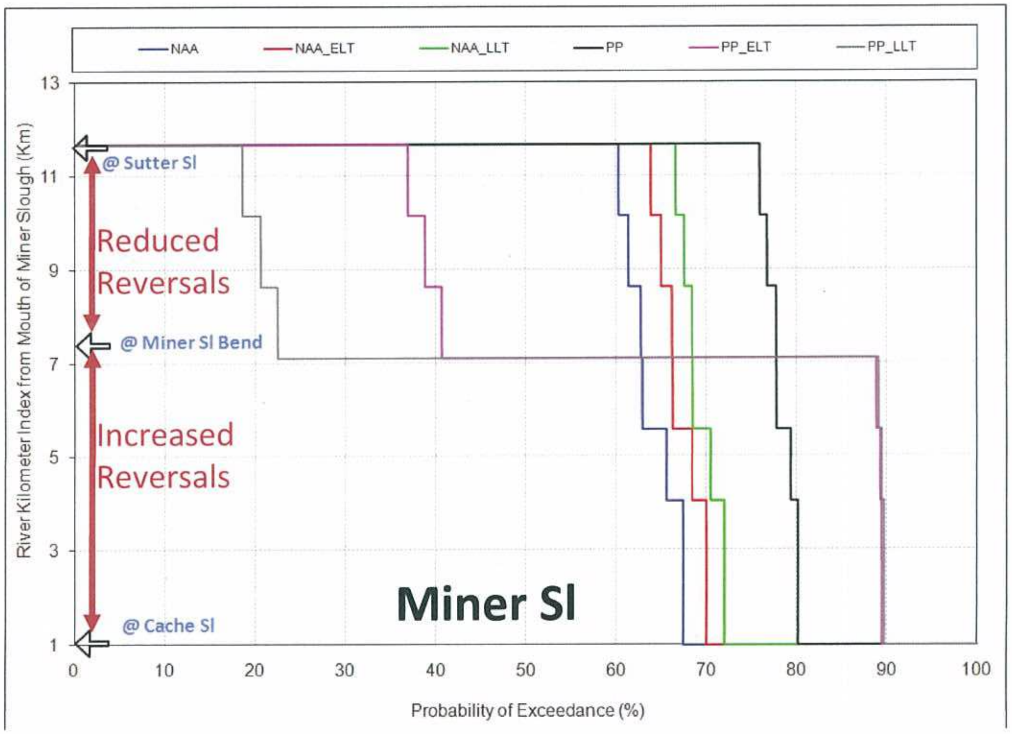


Reduction in tidal reversals upstream of Sutter and Steamboat Sl

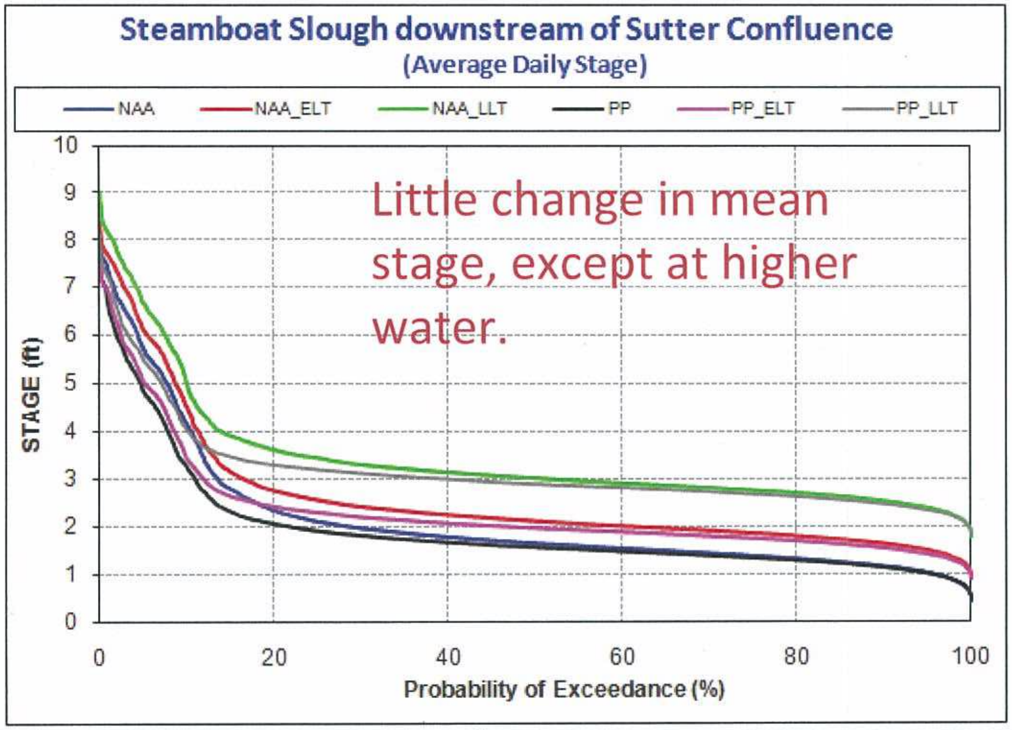
Flow Reversals in Sutter, Steamboat and Miner Sloughs



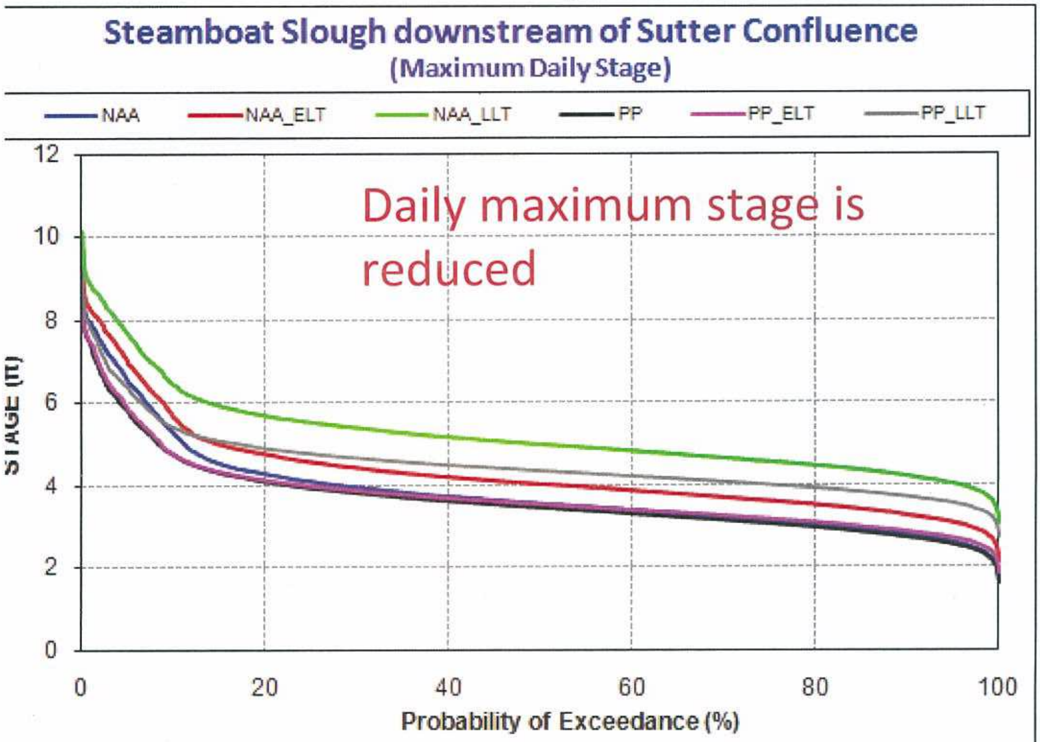




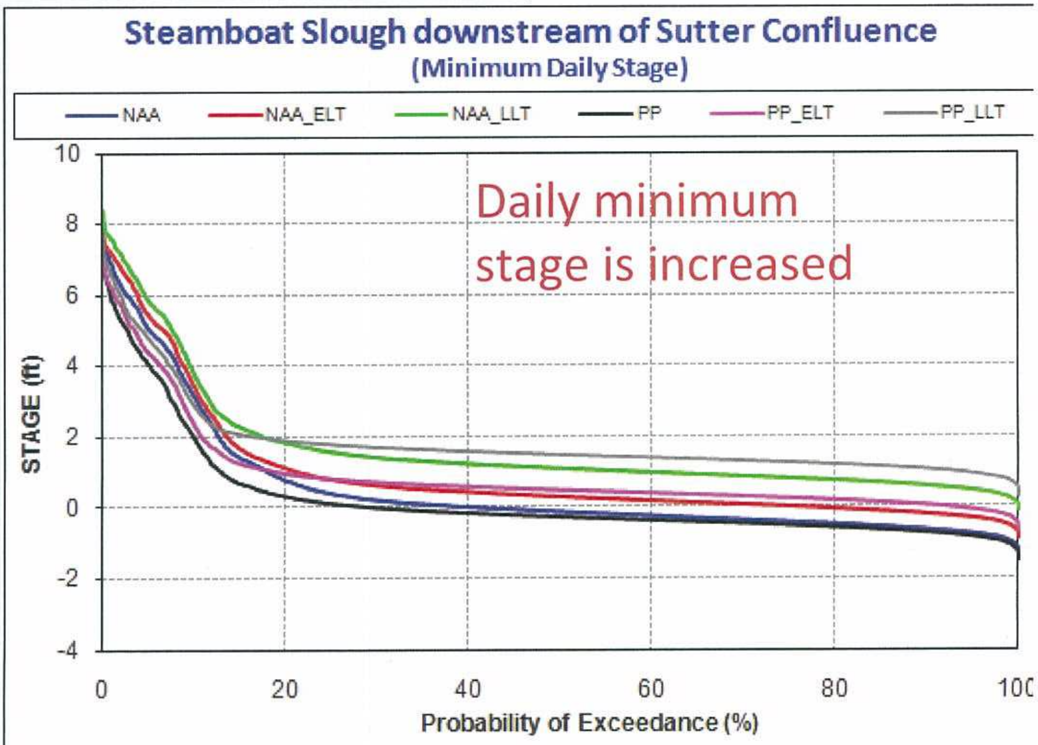
Water Level Changes in North Delta



Little change in mean stage, except at higher water.

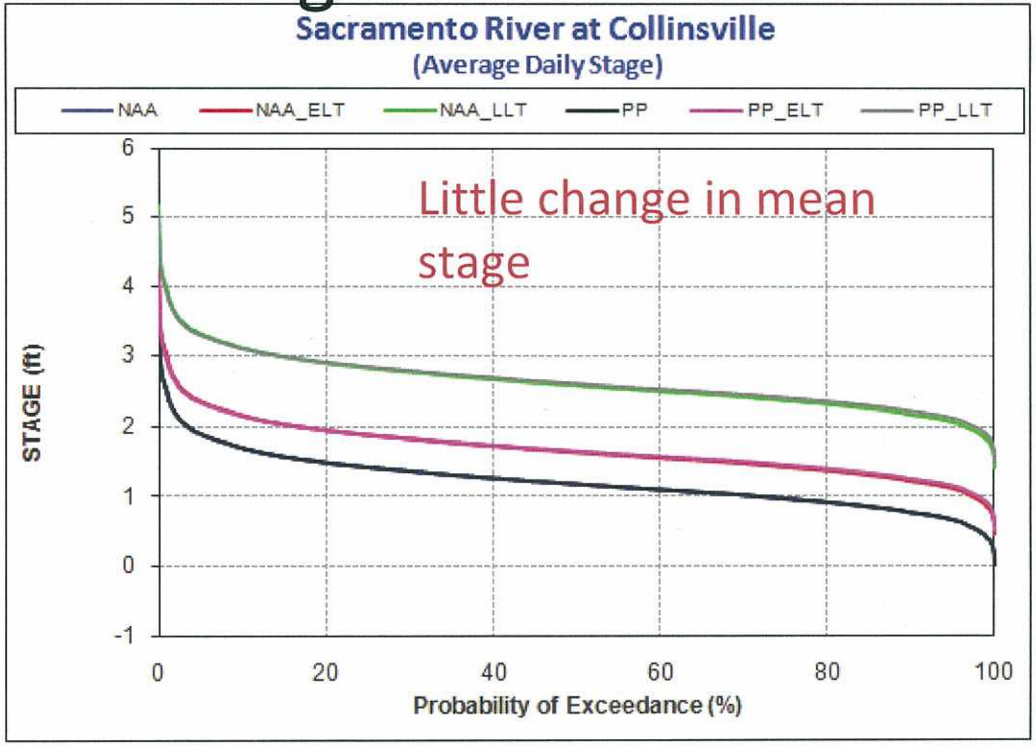


Daily maximum stage is reduced

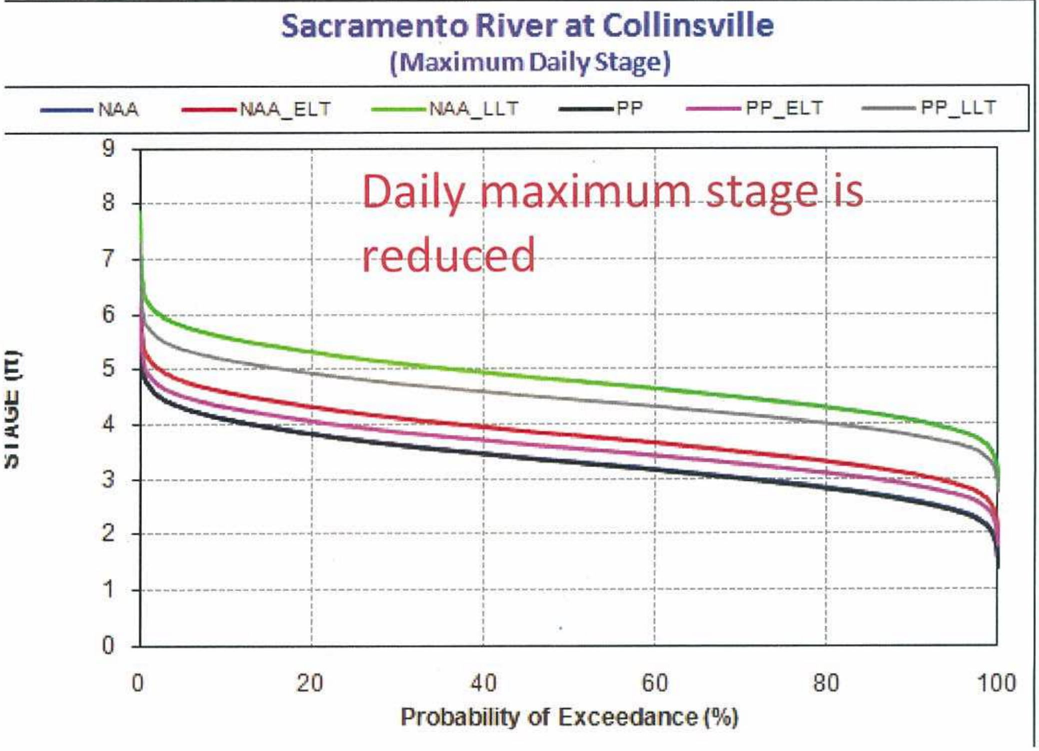


Daily minimum stage is increased

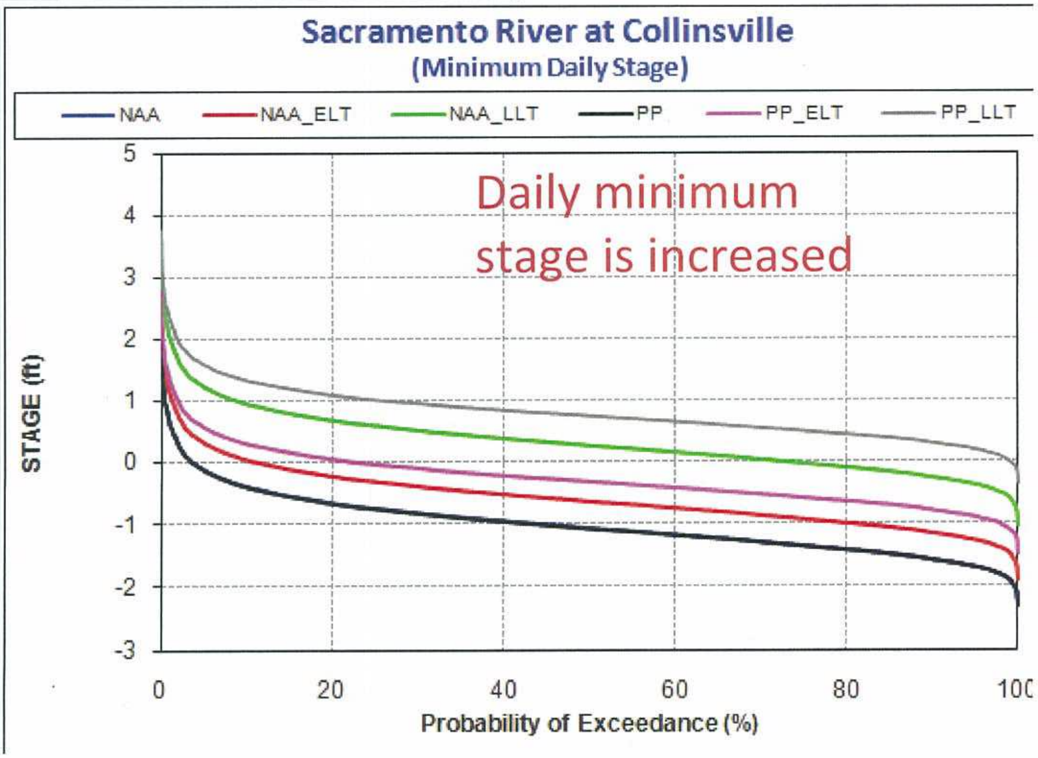
Water Level Changes in West and Central Delta



Little change in mean stage

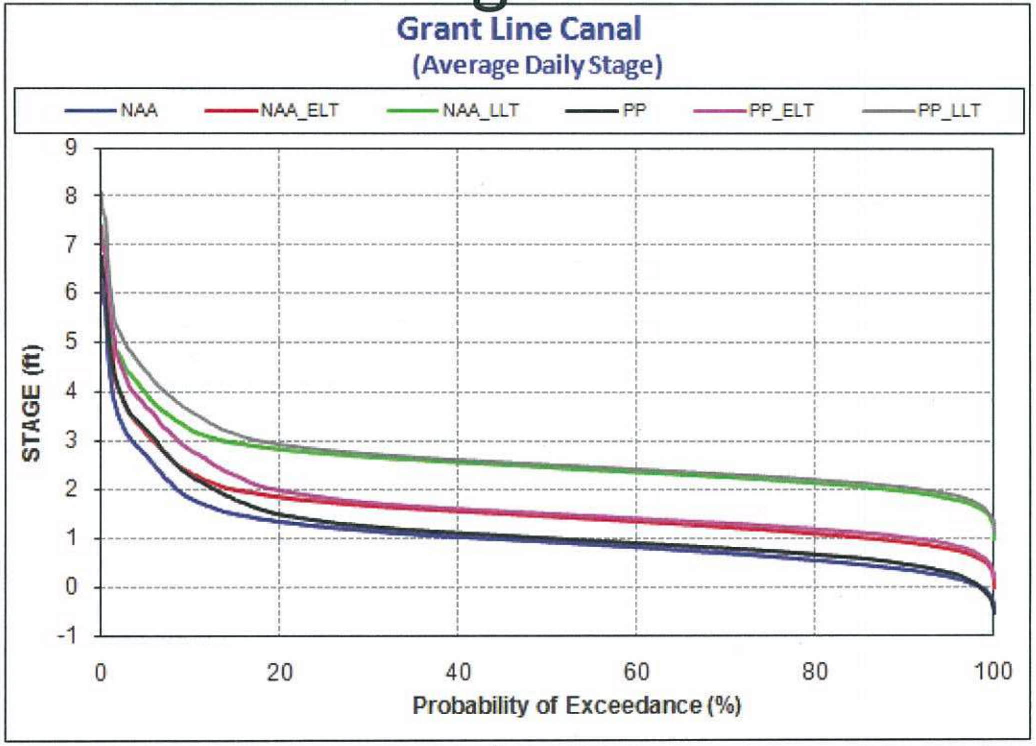


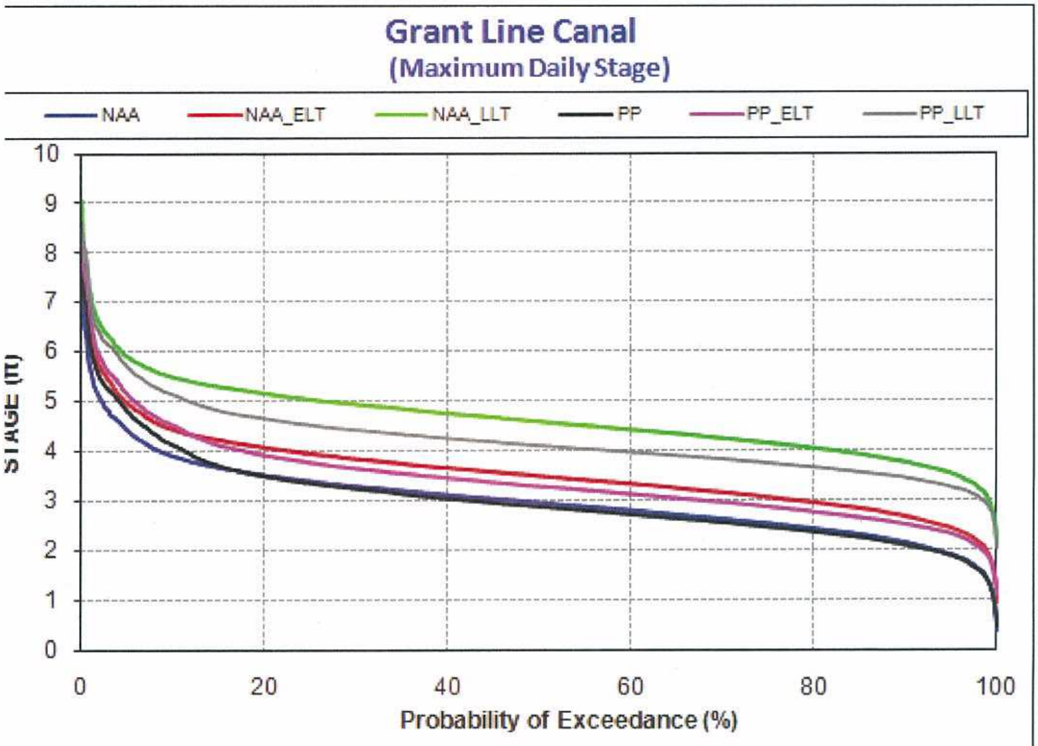
Daily maximum stage is reduced

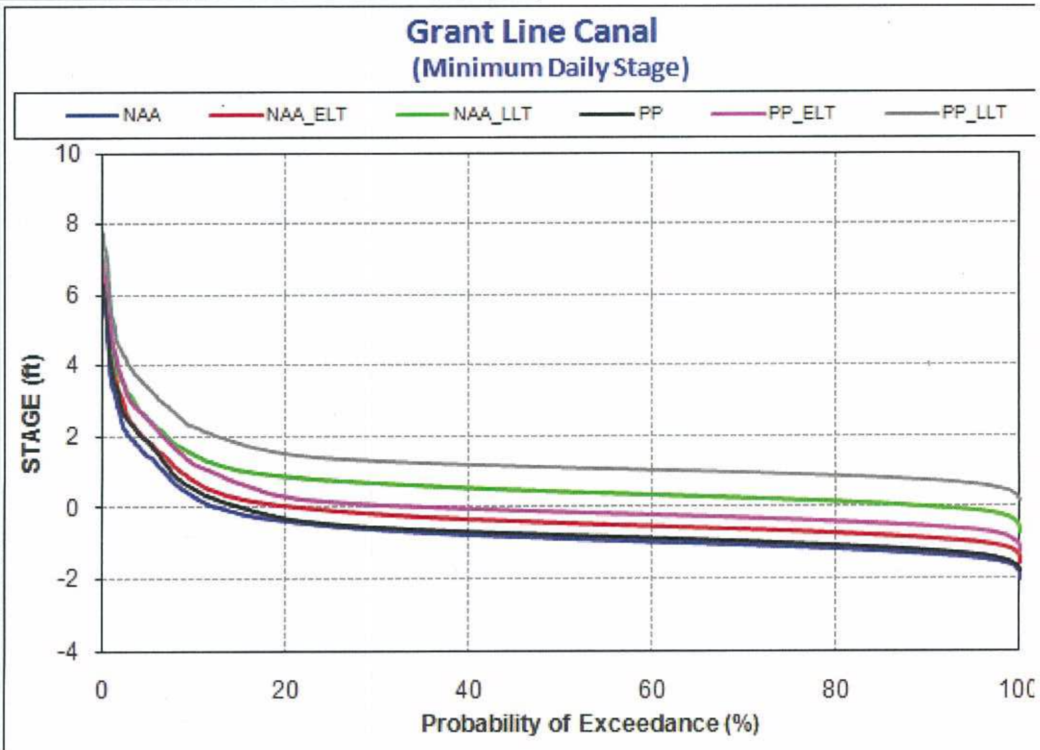


Daily minimum stage is increased

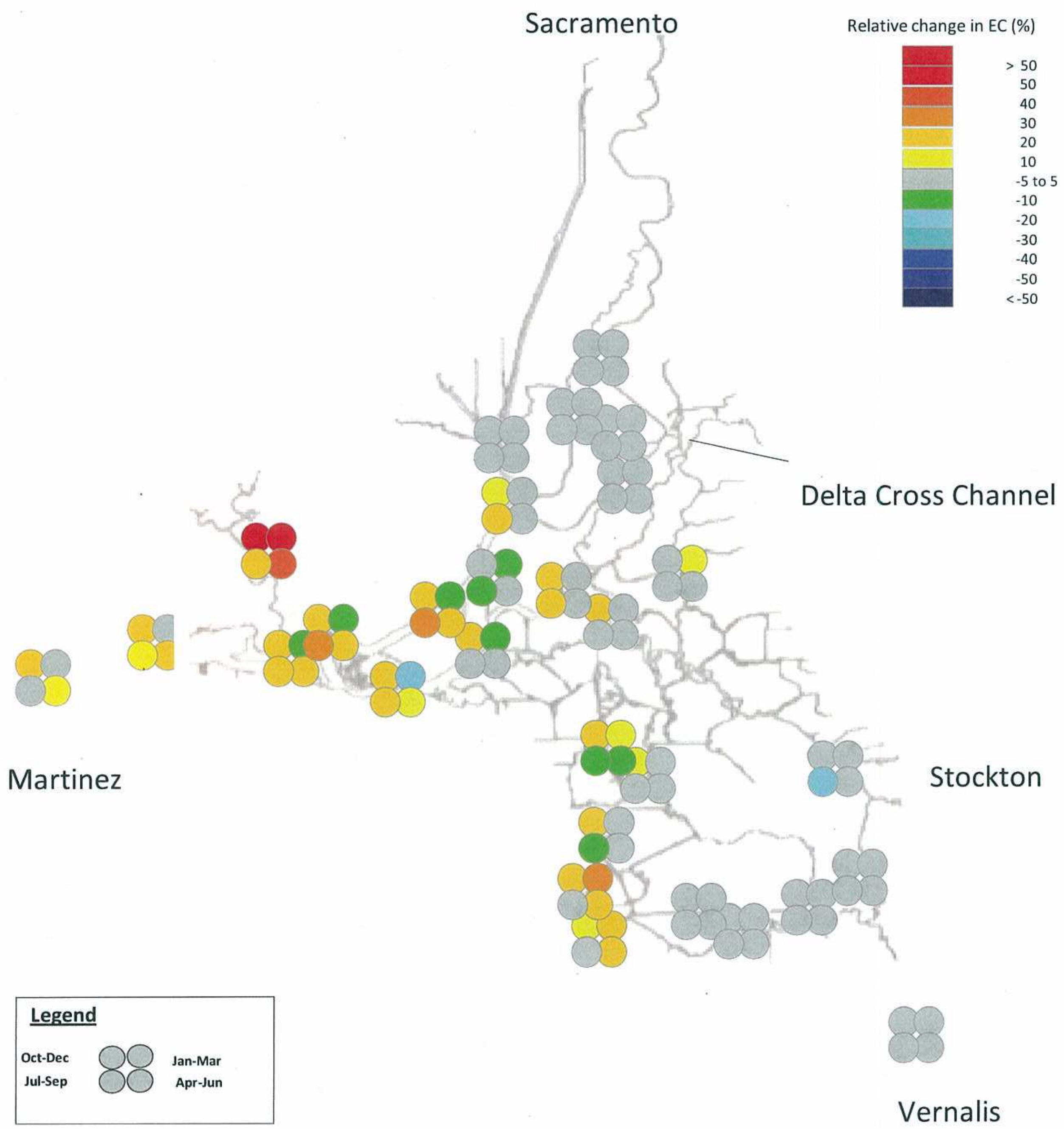
Water Level Changes in South Delta



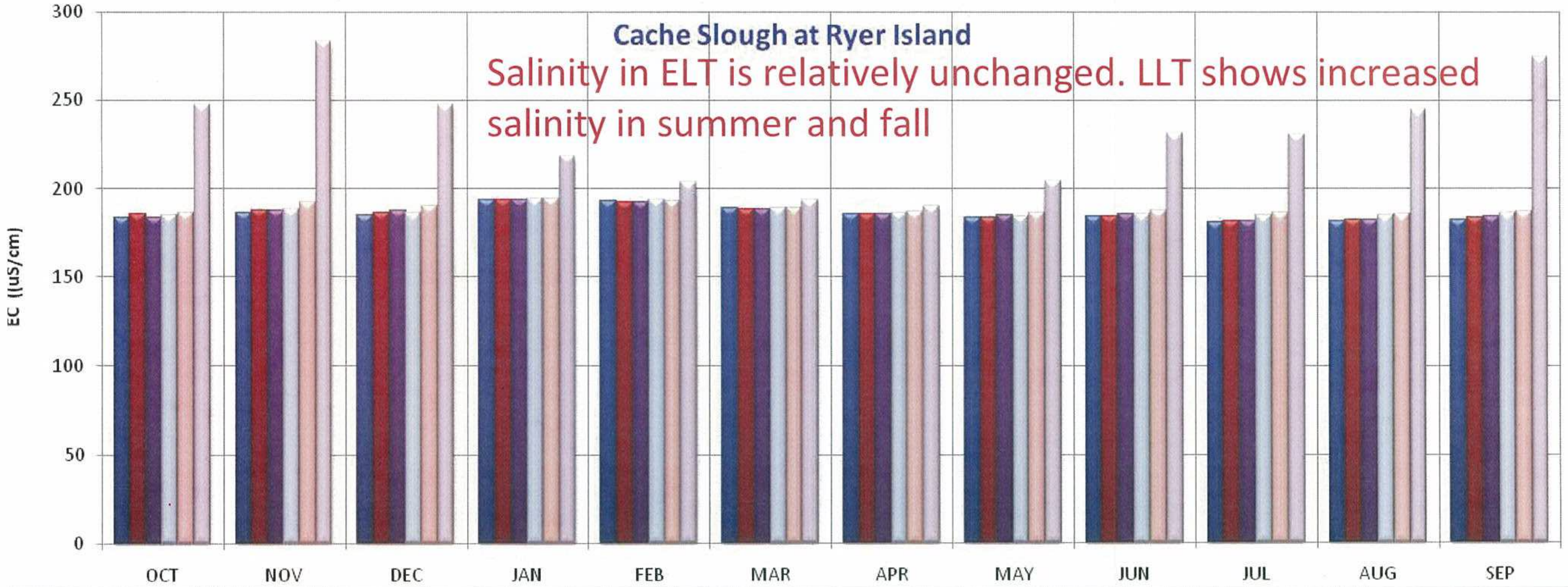




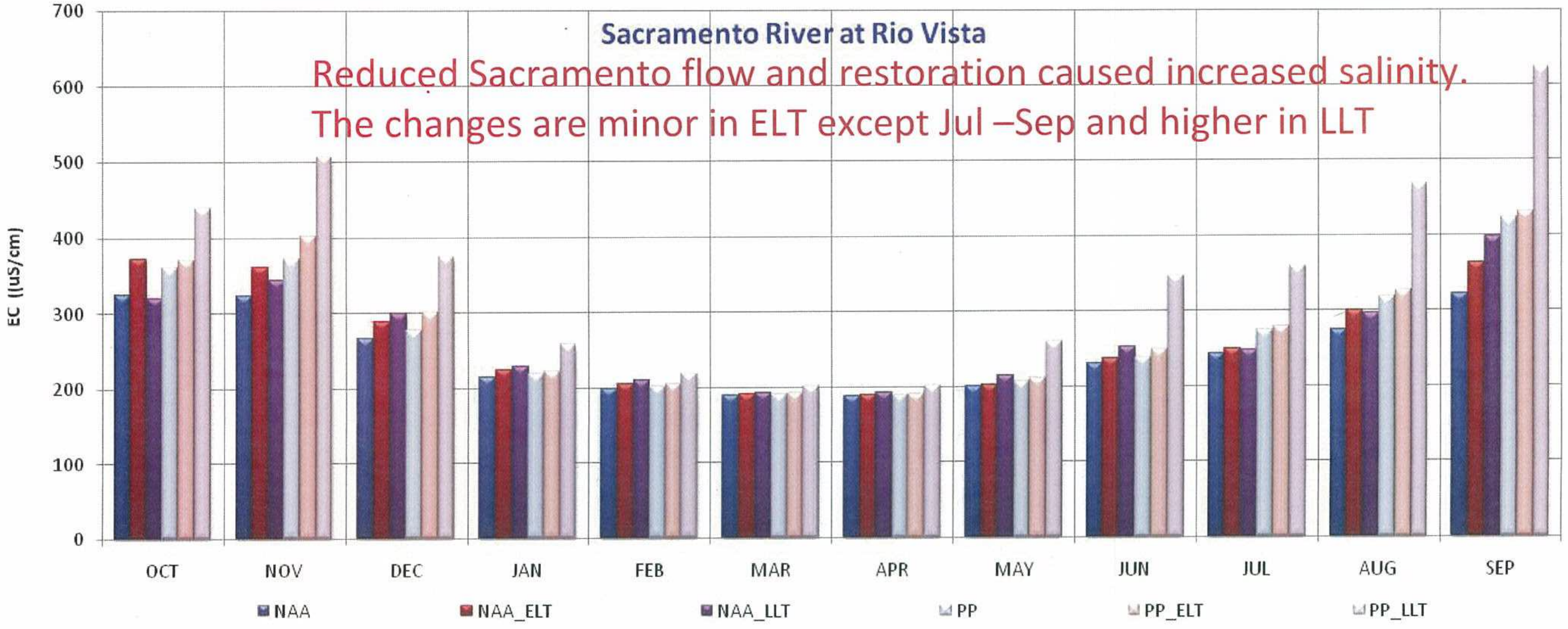
Seasonal Changes in EC



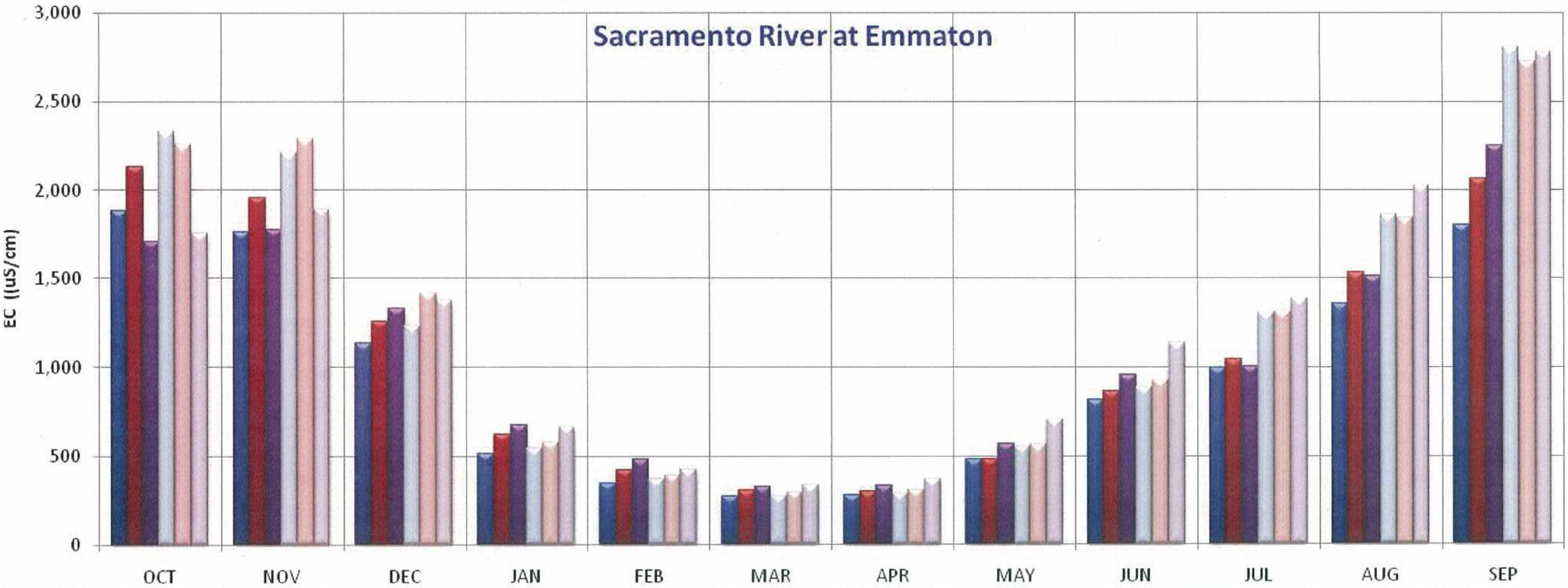
Water Year/Period : **ALL WATER YEARS**

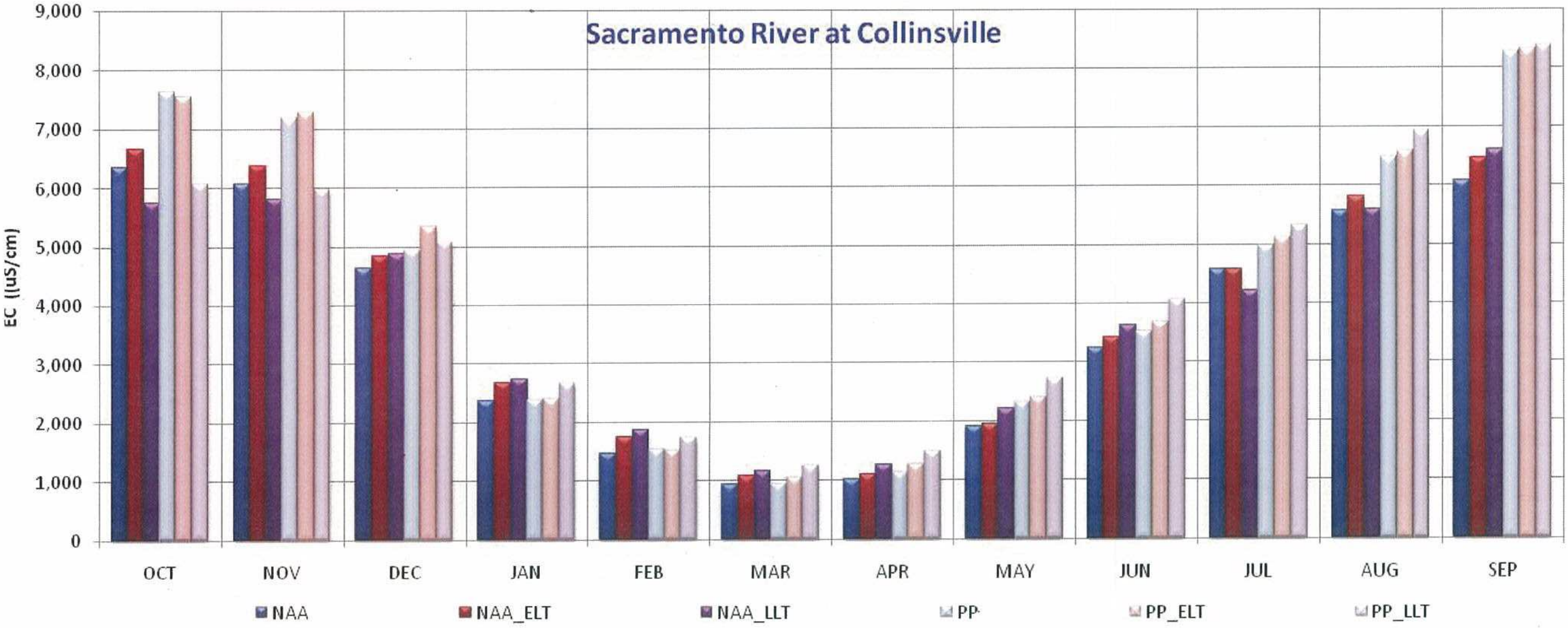

Cache Slough at Ryer Island

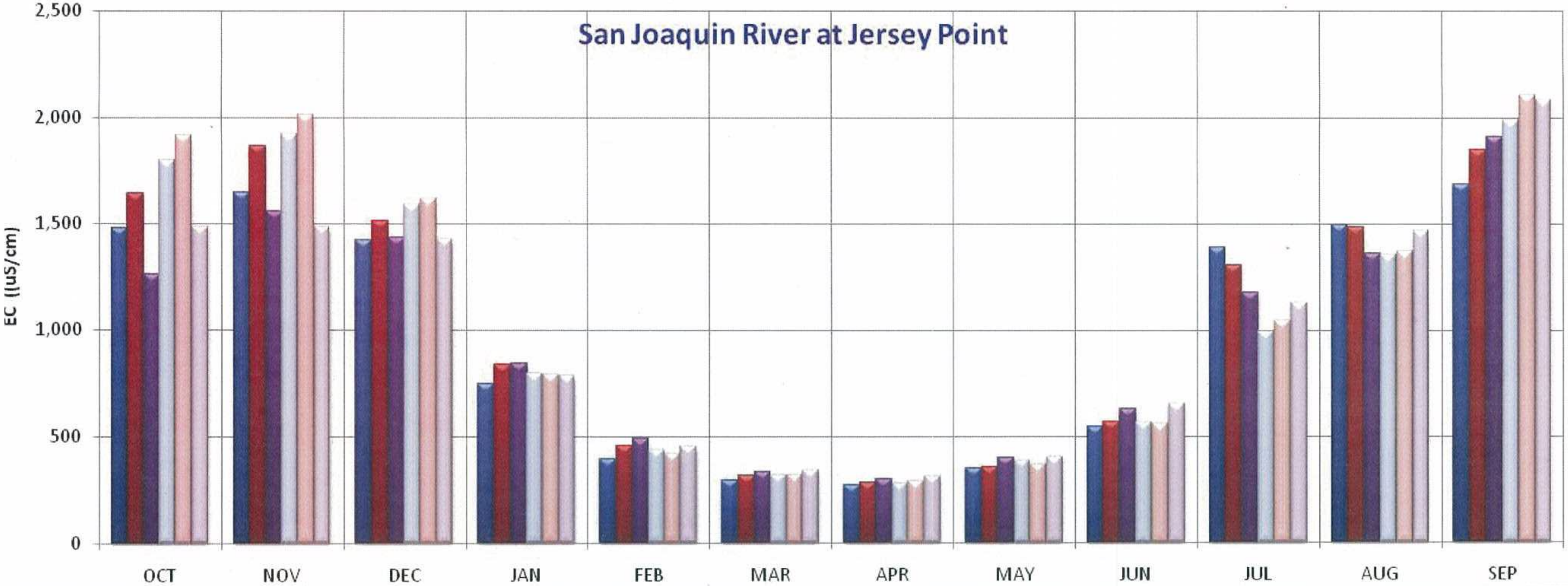
Salinity in ELT is relatively unchanged. LLT shows increased salinity in summer and fall

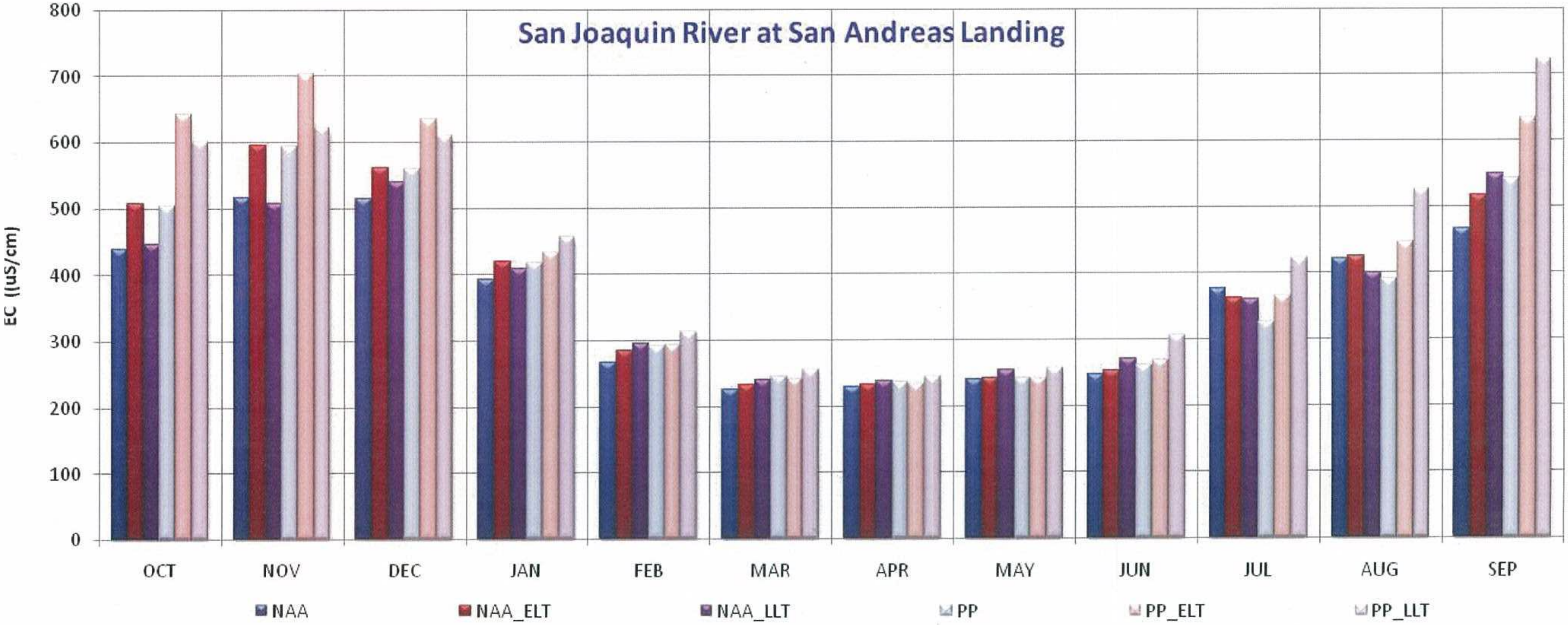

Sacramento River at Rio Vista

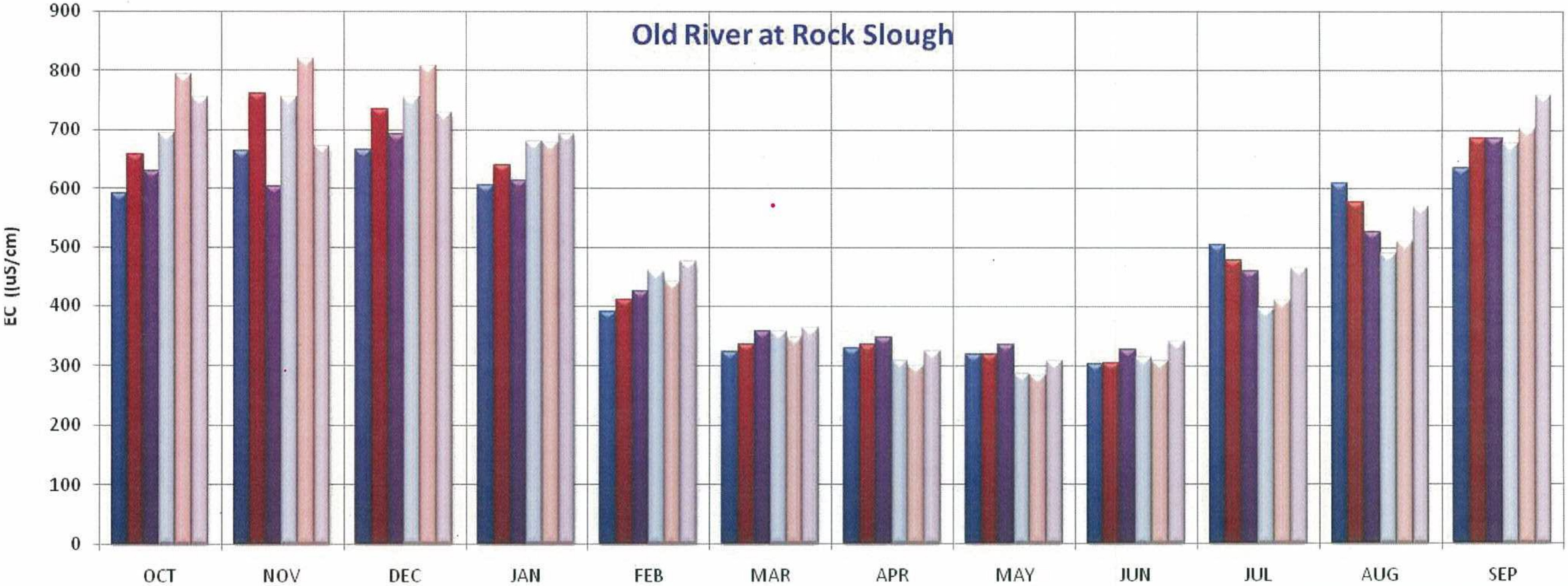
Reduced Sacramento flow and restoration caused increased salinity. The changes are minor in ELT except Jul –Sep and higher in LLT

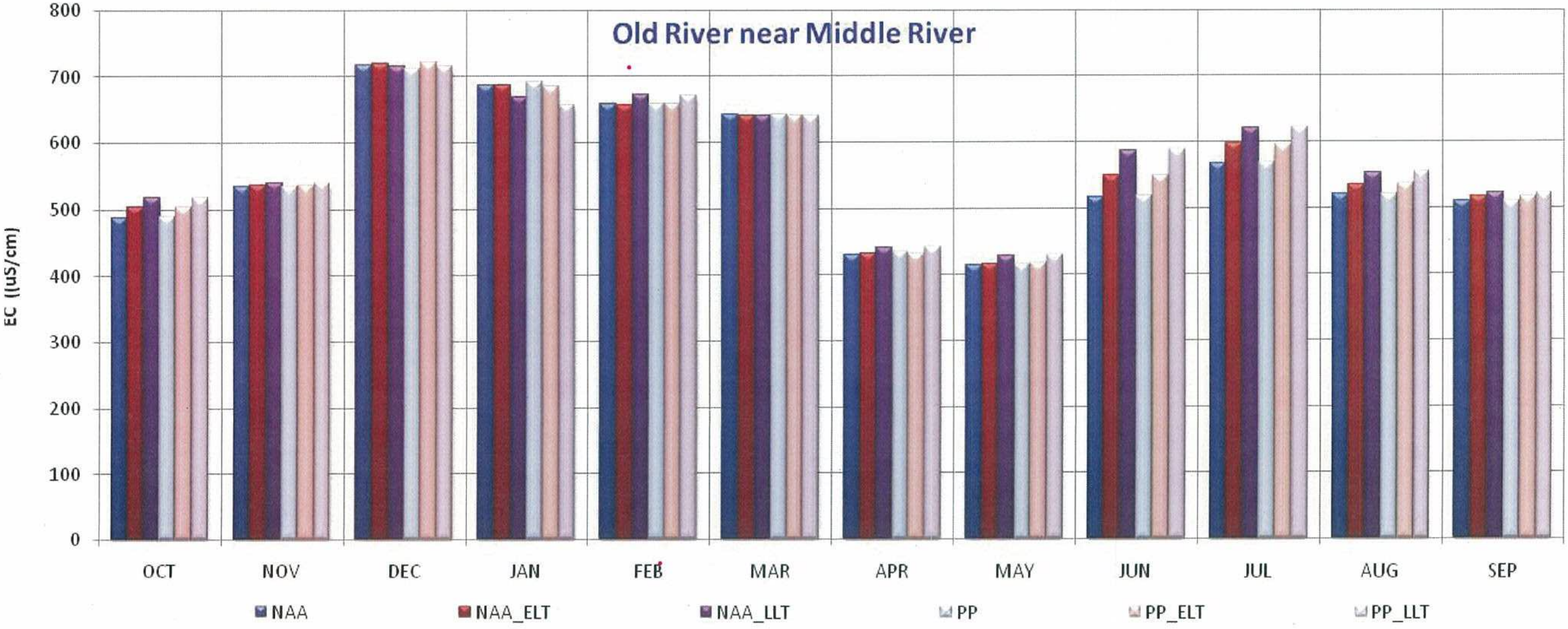

Sacramento River at Emmaton
EC (µS/cm)
3,000
2,500
2,000
1,500
1,000
500
0
OCT
NOV
DEC
JAN
FEB
MAR
APR
MAY
JUN
JUL
AUG
SEP


Sacramento River at Collinsville
EC (µS/cm)
9,000
8,000
7,000
6,000
5,000
4,000
3,000
2,000
1,000
0
OCT
NOV
DEC
JAN
FEB
MAR
APR
MAY
JUN
JUL
AUG
SEP
NAA
NAA_ELT
NAA_LLT
PP
PP_ELT
PP_LLT


San Joaquin River at Jersey Point
EC (|uS/cm)
2,500
2,000
1,500
1,000
500
0
OCT
NOV
DEC
JAN
FEB
MAR
APR
MAY
JUN
JUL
AUG
SEP


San Joaquin River at San Andreas Landing
EC (|uS/cm)
800
700
600
500
400
300
200
100
0
OCT
NOV
DEC
JAN
FEB
MAR
APR
MAY
JUN
JUL
AUG
SEP
NAA
NAA_ELT
NAA_LLT
PP
PP_ELT
PP_LLT


Old River at Rock Slough


Old River near Middle River

Key Findings Comparing Proposed Project to No Action at Early- and Long-Term

- Channel Flows
  - Net flows reduced in north and central Delta due to north delta diversion
  - OMR and QWEST increased due to reduced south Delta exports
  - Restoration allows more periods with unidirectional flows or reduced occurrence of reversals in the north Delta
- Stage
  - Mean water levels reduced in the north Delta near proposed diversion and remain fairly unchanged rest of the Delta
  - Tidal range decreased by 1 to 2 ft in portions of the Delta – mainly caused by the restoration

Key Findings Comparing PP to NAA at ELT and LLT

- Salinity
  - No significant change upstream of Rio Vista and in southern Delta
  - Slight increases in Old and Middle River and central Delta due to changes in contribution of the Sacramento (less) and San Joaquin
  - Salinity increases in the west Delta due to the increased tidal excursion and reduction in Sacramento River flow

On-going Work and Next Steps for Physical Modeling Team

- Supporting teams conducting effects analysis
- Completed analytical range sensitivity studies
- Completing climate sensitivity studies
- Conducting special studies
    - North delta intake and conveyance sizing sensitivity
    - North delta intake location sensitivity
    - North delta bypasses evaluation summary
    - Delta levee failure and sea level rise
    - San Joaquin inflow sensitivity
    - Old River corridor integration

Attachment C

City of Antioch's Testimony to the State Water Resources Control Board,
March 22, 2010

SWRCB Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding: March 22, 2010
EXHIBIT: Written Summary: City of Antioch

State Water Resources Control Board
Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding
March 22, 2010

Exhibit by City of Antioch
Summary of Historical Freshwater Availability at Antioch

Summary

The historic (pre-1918) Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta. The characterization of the Delta as "historically saline" is false and is not based on scientific evidence. Historical salinity and flow conditions must be considered when: (i) establishing Delta outflows and inflows to protect public trust values which adapted to these conditions, (ii) establishing the criteria (volume, timing and quality) required by Senate Bill 7X 1, and (iii) establishing drinking water quality standards for the Delta.

1. Introduction

The City of Antioch (Antioch), located along the San Joaquin River in the western portion of the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Delta (Delta), is one of the oldest towns in California. Since the 1860s, Antioch has obtained all or part of its freshwater supply directly from the San Joaquin River.[1] The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and its long-term viability as a recreational destination.

As part of the informational proceeding on establishing flow criteria in the Delta, this document summarizes the historical salinity and flow conditions near Antioch and contrasts them with the largely saline conditions prevailing today. The supporting document to this summary is a "powerpoint style" document containing text and figures relevant to the material presented in this summary.

2. Systemic changes have reduced freshwater flows and increased salinity in the western Delta, including at Antioch

Salinity in the western Delta (including at Antioch) is influenced both by natural factors, including ocean tides and hydrology of the upstream watersheds, and by artificial factors, including channelization of the Delta, elimination of tidal marsh, reservoir storage and release operations, and water diversions.

Major anthropogenic modifications to the Delta that affect salinity intrusion began with the European settlement of the region around 1850. Tidal marsh acreage in the Delta decreased from over 250,000 acres in the 1870s to less than 30,000 acres in the 1920s and

---

[1] Much of the water in the western Delta (including the City's water supply) comes from the Sacramento River. Historically, significant amounts of Sacramento River water flowed into the San Joaquin River east of Antioch at Three Mile and Georgiana Sloughs. Sacramento River water also reaches Antioch where the river merges with the San Joaquin River just west of the City. <u>Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District et al.</u> (1922) 188 Cal. 451, 455

has since continued to decrease (CCWD 2010), producing significant changes in the Delta landscape (Att. at pg. 7). For example, dredging of the Delta river channels to create the Stockton and Sacramento Deep Water Ship Channels affected the salt transport and distribution in the Delta (CCWD 2010). Construction of reservoirs for storage purposes started in the early 1900s and the largest reservoirs of the Central Valley Project (CVP, Lake Shasta) and the State Water Project (SWP, Lake Oroville) were completed in 1945 and 1968, respectively (CCWD 2010). Total upstream reservoir storage capacity increased from 1 million acre-feet (MAF) in 1920 to more than 30 MAF by 1979 (CCWD 2010). Water exports from the Delta have been steadily increasing since the 1950s, and the combined annual exports from CVP and SWP have increased, on average, from about 0.5 MAF/yr in the late 1950s to about 5 MAF/yr during the recent period (Att. at pg. 8).

3. Historical extent of freshwater

Testimony from the lawsuit filed by the Town of Antioch in 1920 and from various literature reports demonstrates that freshwater (low salinity conditions) prevailed in the western Delta in the late 1800s and early 1900s.

3.1 Testimony from Antioch's lawsuit in 1920

In 1920, the Town of Antioch filed a lawsuit against upstream irrigation districts alleging that the upstream diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch (Town of Antioch [plaintiff] v. Williams Irrigation District et al. [defendants] (1922, 188 Cal. 451)). The testimony from the Antioch lawsuit provides a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the early 1900s.

3.1.1 Pre-1918: Freshwater was available at Antioch year-round

Testimony from the defendants in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that in the late 1800s, water at Antioch was known to be brackish at high tide during certain time periods, but Antioch was able to pump freshwater at low tide throughout the year, with the possible exception of the fall season during one or two dry years. Water at Antioch was fresh at low tide at least until around 1915 (when the pumping plants started pumping continuously, regardless of tidal stage) (Att. at pg. 11).

Testimony from the plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that Antioch's freshwater supply was obtained directly from the San Joaquin River (see footnote 1 above) from about 1866 to 1918, first by private water companies and then by the municipality after 1903 (when the City acquired pre-existing water rights) (Att. at pg. 12). Plaintiff's testimony included salinity measurements taken at Antioch (1913-1917) that indicated that prior to 1918, freshwater was available at Antioch even during dry years and in the fall (Att. at pg. 12).

3.1.2 Post-1918: Increased upstream diversions drastically increased salinity intrusion

Testimony and measurements from the Delta (1918-1920) presented by the plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that after 1918, salinity abruptly increased during the irrigation (rice cultivation) season, but returned to a potable level after irrigation ceased (Att. at pg. 13). The effect of upstream diversions was also confirmed by records in the plaintiff's testimony from California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H) (CCWD 2010). Plaintiff's testimony indicated that although Antioch is located along the San Joaquin River, the source of much of the water at Antioch was the Sacramento River, which flowed to Antioch via Georgiana and Three Mile Sloughs (Att. at pg. 14-15); this was confirmed by the California Supreme Court (Att. at p. 15).

Information from the Antioch lawsuit is consistent with literature reports (see the following discussion) and with paleo records of salinity and river flow obtained from tree rings and sediment cores (CCWD 2010).

3.2 Literature reports

Several literature reports confirm that freshwater was available year-round in the western Delta (including Antioch) and Suisun Bay during the late 1800s and early 1900s. For instance, DPW (1931), the precursor to the Department of Water Resources, indicated that the City of Antioch obtained all or most of its freshwater supplies directly from the San Joaquin River until 1917, and that salinity intrusion prevented domestic use of water at the Antioch intake in summer and fall after 1917 (Att. at pg. 9). DPW (1931) and Tolman and Poland (1935) indicated that prior to the 1920s, water near the City of Pittsburg was sufficiently fresh for that City to directly obtain all or most of its freshwater (Att. at pg. 10). Dillon (1980) and Cowell (1963) indicated that prior to the 1920s, freshwater was available in the Suisun Bay and Carquinez Straits for use by the City of Benicia (Att. at pg. 10). Means (1928) indicated that Carquinez Strait (near Martinez in the western Delta) is the approximate boundary between salt water and freshwater under natural conditions. Moreover, Means (1928) also indicated that during the wet season freshwater extended up to the Golden Gate (Att. at pg. 9).

The California Department of Water Resources (DWR, 1960) estimated that water with a chloride concentration of 350 mg/L or less would be available at San Joaquin at Antioch about 85% of the time under "natural" conditions (Att. at pg. 16). DWR (1960) also estimated that chloride concentrations at Antioch would be less than 350 mg/L about 80% of the time in 1900 and about 60% of the time by 1940, with decreasing freshwater availability due to upstream diversions; DWR also projected further deterioration of water quality in 1960 and later, but did not include the effects of reservoir releases for salinity control (Att. at pg. 16).

4. Current Salinity Conditions at Antioch

Salinity data compiled by the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) and California Data Exchange Center (CDEC) were used to analyze the present availability of freshwater at Antioch. These quantitative measurements from the present were compared to the testimony from the Antioch lawsuit and to observation recorded by C&H to establish how salinity at Antioch and in the western Delta has increased over time compared to historical conditions.

4.1 Freshwater availability continues to decline

Availability of freshwater at Antioch continues to decline. Antioch may take water at its intake when salinity is less than 250 mg/L chlorides (equivalent to about 1000 µS/cm EC)[2]. The number of days per year, expressed as a percentage, when daily average salinity at Antioch was below 1000 µS/cm EC declined from about 70% in the late 1960s to about 40% during the recent period (Att. at pg. 19).

Even in years with above normal runoff in the Sacramento River watershed, freshwater at Antioch is less available than historically (Att. at pg. 20). For instance, during the above normal water year 2000, water at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 µS/cm EC for the entire day for about four-and-a-half months (early February through mid-June) and for a portion of the day at low tide for another three-and-a-half months (mid-June through September). For the remaining four months (October-January), water at the City's intakes exceeded 1,000 µS/cm EC for the entire day, regardless of tidal stage. Testimony from the Antioch lawsuit indicates that prior to 1918, water at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 µS/cm EC for the entire day during above-normal years and in all but dry fall months.

Salinity at low tide at Antioch during the present is higher than historical conditions (Att. pg. 21). For instance, during the period 1985 to 2009, the tenth percentile low tide daily salinity was below 1,000 µS/cm EC for about one-and-a-half months, and the 25th percentile low tide daily salinity was below 1,000 µS/cm EC for about nine months. However, testimony from the Antioch lawsuit indicates that during the driest years prior to 1918, low tide salinity at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 µS/cm EC for about nine months; for all but the driest years, salinity at low tide was below 1,000 µS/cm EC throughout the year. These data establish that salinity is higher at Antioch for a wider range of hydrologic conditions and for a longer duration of the year than under historic conditions.

4.2 Salinity intrusion occurs earlier and extends farther

Since the early 1900s the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H), located in Crockett near the western edge of Suisun Bay, obtained its freshwater supply in Crockett. When freshwater was not available at Crockett, C&H used barges that traveled upstream on the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers to procure freshwater. The measurements of distance to freshwater from Crockett, recorded during these barge operations, serve as a surrogate for the historical extent of freshwater in the western

---

[2] The freshwater salinity threshold of 250 mg/L chlorides at the San Joaquin River at Antioch is based on the 1968 agreement between the City of Antioch and DWR. This threshold is approximately equivalent to 1000 µS/cm EC, based on the site-specific empirical relationships between chloride concentration and EC (K. Guivetchi, DWR Memorandum dated June 24, 1986).

Delta. A comparison of C&H data during 1908-1917 and estimates[3] of distance to freshwater from Crockett during the post-SWP construction period (1966-1975) indicates that salinity intrusion into the Delta occurs on average about 4 months earlier (in March instead of July) during the post-SWP construction period of 1966-1975 (Att. at pg. 17). Comparison of C&H data from 1908-1917 to estimates of distance to freshwater from Crockett during the period 1995-2004 indicates that salinity intrusion during the recent period not only occurs earlier (by 4 months) but also extends farther in to the Delta (by about 5 to 20 miles) (Att. at pg. 18).

5. Conclusions

- Prior to 1918, freshwater was almost always available at Antioch at least at low tide. Only during dry years and during high tide conditions did salinity at Antioch become brackish.
- Between 1918 and the late 1930s, drought conditions, upstream water diversions, and channelization increased the salinity of water at Antioch.
- By 1940 the drought receded, but salinity at Antioch remained elevated.
- Salinity has continued to increase in recent years at Antioch.
- The fraction of time that water at Antioch is suitable for use (when salinity is < 250 mg/L chlorides or 1000 µS/cm EC) has declined significantly.
- "Historic" Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta.

6. Request

The City of Antioch requests that the State Water Resources Control Board review and incorporate historic salinity data into its analyses when considering Delta outflow requirements to protect public trust resources in the Western Delta and the flow requirements of SB X7 1 (e. g., volume, timing and quality), and that the Board use historic data to establish and to adjust its "baseline" of water quality for both fisheries health and drinking water quality standards. In fact, the City asks the SWRCB to establish flow and salinity standards in line with the Delta's historic fresh condition. The City also requests that the SWRCB consider using the gauging station at Antioch as a point of interest to ensure that flow criteria and salinity objectives are met.

References

[CCWD] Contra Costa Water District. 2010. Report titled "Historical Freshwater and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay".

Cowell, J. W. 1963. History of Benicia Arsenal: Benicia, California: January 1851 – December 1962. Berkeley, Howell-North Books.

[DPW] Department of Public Works. 1931. *Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay*. Bulletin No. 27. State of California, Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation.

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1960. *Delta Water Facilities*. Bulletin No. 76. State of California.

Dillon, R. 1980. Great Expectations: The Story of Benicia, California, Fresno, California. 241 pp.

Means, T. 1928. Salt Water Problem: San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, San Francisco, California, April 1928. Report prepared for the Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.

Tolman, C. F. and J. F. Poland. 1935. *Investigation of the Ground-Water Supply of the Columbia Steel Company Pittsburg, California*. Stanford University, California, May 30, 1935.

Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District (1922, 188 Cal. 451).

---

[3] These estimates were made using IEP data in CCWD (2010), which will be presented by the Contra Costa Water District during this informational proceeding.

February 16, 2010

Division of Water Rights
State Water Resources Control Board
Attn: Phillip Crader
P. O. Box 2000
Sacramento, CA 95812-2000

Re: Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding

Dear Mr. Crader:

The City of Antioch has been diverting Sacramento River water for drinking water use from the western Delta since the 1860s, and as such, has information and data directly relevant to the SWRCB's current proceedings to establish Delta flow criteria. The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and the long-term viability of the City's historic freshwater fishing and recreational opportunities.

Please find attached the City of Antioch's exhibits and supporting documents describing the historical salinity conditions at Antioch. The City of Antioch believes that it is vitally important to consider historical salinity and flow conditions when establishing flow criteria and water quality standards that will affect the future biological and ecological integrity of the Delta, and we believe that the SWRCB should not allow flow to be reduced below, or salinity to be increased above, levels currently allowed by both D-1641 and X2 requirements. In fact, the City asks the SWRCB to establish flow and salinity standards in line with the Delta's historic fresh condition.

We appreciate your consideration in this matter. Please feel free to contact me with any questions.

Sincerely,

P. Harrington

Phil Harrington
Director of Capital Improvements and Water Rights
City of Antioch

Attachments:

- City of Antioch's Witness List
- City of Antioch's Exhibit Identification List
- City of Antioch's Response to Key Questions
- City of Antioch's Written Summary
- City of Antioch's supporting document – a powerpoint presentation on historical salinity conditions
- City of Antioch's supporting document – A report by Thomas Means (1928): "Salt Water Problem"
- City of Antioch's supporting document – Excerpts from the DWR (1931) Report: "Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay"
- City of Antioch's supporting document – DWR (1960) Report: "Delta Water Facilities"

May 19, 2011

Dr. Jerry Meral
Natural Resources Deputy Secretary
California Natural Resources Agency
1416 Ninth Street, Suite 1311
Sacramento, CA 95814

Dear Dr. Meral:

As you requested, this is a follow-up to our meeting on April 27, 2011. The purpose of this letter is to inform you about Antioch's water supply in the context of the Delta and to propose potential physical solutions to Antioch's water supply needs in relation to possible adverse impacts arising from the Bay Delta Conservation Plan (BDCP).

Overview of Antioch and its Water Supply

As you know, the City of Antioch (City) is located at the western edge of the California Delta System at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers where the City has diverted water for approximately 150 years. The City currently provides water services to a population of 103,000 covering an estimated 29 square miles of developed and undeveloped land.

In order to meet the treated water demands of our customers, the City obtains water from two primary sources: 1) the Sacramento/San Joaquin Rivers via its pre-1914 adjudicated Appropriative Water Right; and 2) the Contra Costa Canal owned and operated by the Contra Costa Water District (CCWD) via a 1968 substitute water Agreement between the City and the Department of Water Resources[1] (a copy of which the City provided you with during our meeting).

Together, these sources have the potential to provide the City with a total treated water capacity of 52 million gallons per day (MGD). Currently, the City's average day demand for treated water is 14 MGD and a high maximum day demand of 31 MGD. Antioch owns and operates a Delta intake system located in the lower San Joaquin River along the City's waterfront. This river pumping intake has the capacity to pump up to 16 MGD whenever the river salinity is at an acceptable level (chloride concentration less than 250 milligrams per liter). Whenever the river

---

[1] The State of California Department of Water Resources and the City have an existing agreement which specifies that the City will be able to pump water with a chloride content less than 250 mg/L at least 208 days from our existing intake. This agreement was entered into by the City and DWR in 1968, to mitigate the damage caused by the State Water Project. If in any year the number of days of availability of usable water is less than 208 days, DWR must pay the City one-third of the City's incremental costs of purchasing substitute water from CCWD. The one-third fraction was based on the assumption that the depletion of the natural supply is due one-third to the operation of the Central Valley Project, one-third to the State Water Project and one-third to all the other upstream diverters. It was anticipated at the time of the Agreement that the Bureau of Reclamation would pay another one-third of Antioch's substitute water costs; however, this aspect of the Agreement has never been fulfilled.

Department of Capital Improvements/Water Rights
P.O. Box 5007, 200 H Street, Antioch, CA 94531 • Tel: 925-779-7050 • Fax: 925-779-7062 • www.ci.antioch.ca.us

salinity level is not acceptable or when demand exceeds the existing pumping capacity, the City is forced to purchase substitute water supplies directly from CCWD via the 1968 Agreement with the Department of Water Resources (DWR).

Historic Salinity and Water Quality

Although the impact of saltwater intrusion on the City's water supply has been impacted by various upstream projects over the years, including the state and federal water projects, Antioch has been able to divert water of sufficient quality for municipal use during most years since about 1850. The fact that Antioch has been able to divert fresh water for over 150 years directly refutes recent attempts to mischaracterize the historic Delta as saline or subject to salinity variation into the far interior of the Delta for extended periods of time. In fact, the opposite was true with a Delta historically fresher than today's Delta. Salinity variability occurred, but farther to the east than is occurring in the present Delta.[2]

Antioch's Concerns with the BDCP and Out-of-Delta Conveyance

Antioch is concerned that future diversion facilities and reduced flow regimes proposed for the Delta via the BDCP (and other Delta related processes) may further interfere with Antioch's ability to divert its water supply from the Delta. During our meeting with you, we discussed the impacts from BDCP's proposed move of X2 easterly, which would increase salinity in the Western Delta, impacting Antioch's water quality. We also discussed the BDCP "Effects Analysis," which indicated potential adverse impacts to Antioch's water supply through reduced outflow and increased salinity from the proposed out-of-Delta conveyance facility.

Reducing Delta outflow is contrary to various agencies' recommendations for increased Delta outflows to benefit species, which evolved in a more historically fresh Western Delta and are now in decline. Adverse impacts on Western Delta ecosystems and public trust resources from reduced flow and increased salinity will also impact the City's cultural identity and a significant portion of its local economy that has historically relied on freshwater outflow and low salinity.

Antioch's Proposed Regional Solutions to Mitigate any Impacts from the BDCP and Other Proposed Delta Processes

---

[2] *SEE FOR EXAMPLE*:

[CCWD] Contra Costa Water District. 2010. Report on "Historical Freshwater and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay".

[DPW] Department of Public Works. 1931. *Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay.* Bulletin No. 27. State of California, Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation. See http://www.archive.org/details/variationcontrol27calirich

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1960. *Delta Water Facilities*. Bulletin No. 76. State of California. See http://www.deltacorridors.com/uploads/Bulletin_No._76_Delta_Water_Facilities-Color.pdf

Means, T. 1928. Salt Water Problem: San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, San Francisco, California, April 1928. Report prepared for the Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.

Tolman, C. F. and J. F. Poland. 1935. *Investigation of the Ground-Water Supply of the Columbia Steel Company Pittsburg, California*. Stanford University, California, May 30, 1935.

As we discussed with you during our meeting, Antioch has over the course of the past few years proposed possible potential physical solutions and mitigations for projected adverse impacts on Antioch's water supply from various proposed Delta processes including the BDCP. These potential solutions have focused on regional solutions and have ranged from desalinization projects to re-located regional intakes.

One particular potential regional solution Antioch has proposed is an "in-Delta water user" supply diversion as part of any proposed Delta conveyance system. This is the proposal that we discussed with you during out meeting and that you requested for further discussion with the Department of Water Resources. Conceptually, this would involve creating a diversion point(s) as part of any new export or conveyance system that diverts water from the Sacramento River above Antioch's intake, in order to provide sufficient quality to impacted water users within the Delta with a substitute water supply. Diverters within the Delta with sufficient water or contractual rights (e.g. substitute water agreements with the DWR) could divert water from such a diversion point(s). Diverters with valid water rights could re-locate their point of diversion to such a diversion point or add it as an additional point of diversion.

Ideally, such a diversion point would be able to provide substitute water to several potentially impacted Delta users as a Regional Solution and would be designed and paid for as part of the project rather than as a proposed mitigation measure. The City believes that significant water diversion infrastructure already exists that could potentially be used to provide substitute water to municipalities and districts within the Central and Western Delta. This existing infrastructure will help to control project costs associated with combining and/or relocating existing diversion points and minimize environmental impacts within the interior Delta.

During our meeting, you stated that you would forward our letter and requests to DWR Acting Director, Mark Cowin, for consideration. It is our assumption that we would follow up with you and with DWR shortly after that. Thank you for your consideration and please feel free to call us if you have any questions.

Sincerely,

Phillip Harrington
Director of Capital Improvements/Water Rights

c: Jim Jakel, City Manager
Lynn Tracy Nerland, City Attorney
Matt Emrick, Water Rights Counsel
Ann Spaulding, Consultant
Susan C. Paulsen, Consultant

Frank Adams

SALT WATER PROBLEM

SAN FRANCISCO BAY *and* DELTA *of* SACRAMENTO *and* SAN JOAQUIN RIVERS

APRIL, 1928

THOMAS H. MEANS, *Consulting Engineer*
216 PINE STREET · SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA

THOS. H. MEANS
CONSULTING ENGINEER
216 PINE STREET
SAN FRANCISCO

TELEPHONE SUTTER 78

June 15, 1928.

Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.

Dear Sirs:

Statements in this report on pages 39, 51, 56, 63 and 69 concerning the proposed Southern Pacific Railroad's Suisun Bay Bridge, located near Army Point, were published before the plans of that company were made public. The information now available shows that the site selected for the railroad bridge lies from 800 to 1800 feet above the location for the Salt Water Barrier selected by Mr. Young. The plans for the bridge provide for piers founded on rock over both the waterway and marsh areas. The experiences of the railroad do not favor the location of the tracks upon rock fill dikes, as proposed by Mr. Young, but would require piers to rock throughout the length of the structure. According to estimates by the railroad company's engineer, the saving in cost by combining the railroad bridge with the barrier under these conditions would be small and the disadvantage of having the lift span located close to locks, where the movement of vessels is slow, serves to offset any saving in cost.

The railroad bridge as planned provides for a bridge giving a clearance of 70 feet (as compared with 50 feet in Young's plans), a height great enough to permit the free passage of river boats. The lift span will be used for ocean-going vessels. Piers are spaced 413 feet on centers and foundations in all cases will be carried to bedrock. The construction of the barrier as proposed by Young will not be interfered with if this site is selected.

The estimated cost of the bridge now proposed is about $6,400,000, exclusive of approaches, track, etc.

There is no advantage to be gained by a combined structure unless the result is in decreased cost to both barrier and railroad. Since there is apparently no such advantage to be gained and the bridge will not interfere with the barrier if the Army Point site is selected, I suggest that this letter be attached to my report in correction of the statements made therein.

Very truly yours,

THOS. H. MEANS.

SALT WATER PROBLEM

SAN FRANCISCO BAY *and* DELTA *of* SACRAMENTO *and* SAN JOAQUIN RIVERS

APRIL, 1928

THOMAS H. MEANS, *Consulting Engineer*
216 PINE STREET · SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA

MARTINEZ:
MARTINEZ DAILY STANDARD

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface

The following report by Engineer Thos. H. Means was financed by the Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.

The only instructions given Mr. Means in preparing this report were to get the facts, and it is hoped that this document will be of benefit in establishing some of the facts relating to the proposed Salt Water Barrier as designed by Engineer Walker R. Young.

The following firms are members of the Association:

American Smelting & Refining Co.
Associated Oil Company
Atchison, Topeka & Santa Fe Railway Co.
F. E. Booth Company
California-Hawaiian Sugar Refinery
Columbia Steel Corp.
Coos Bay Lumber Co.
Fibreboard Products, Inc.
General Chemical Co.
Great Western Electro Chemical Co.
C. A. Hooper & Co.
Johns-Manville, Inc.
Kullman-Salz & Co.
Mountain Copper Co.
Pioneer Rubber Mills
Redwood Manufacturers Co.
San Francisco & Sacramento R. R.
Shell Company of California
Southern Pacific Company
Union Oil Company

ASSOCIATION OF INDUSTRIAL WATER USERS
OF CONTRA COSTA AND SOLANO COUNTIES
C. W. SCHEDLER, *Chairman.*

PENETRATION OF SALT WATER IN UPPER BAY AND LOWER RIVER REGION

Under natural conditions, Carquinez Straits marked, approximately, the boundary between salt and fresh water in the upper San Francisco Bay and delta region of the two tributary rivers—the Sacramento and San Joaquin. Ordinarily salt water was present below the straits and fresh water was present above. Native vegetation in the tide marshes was predominantly of salt water types around San Pablo Bay and of fresh water types around Suisun Bay.

In tidal waters, into which run fresh water streams of variable flow, there is an ebb and flow of salt water and the zone of mixing will move up and down stream as the fresh water flow increases and decreases. For short intervals in late summer of years of minimum flow, salt water penetrated the lower river and delta region, and in wet seasons the upper bay was fresh, part of the time, to the Golden Gate. This variation in quality of water was not, however, of sufficient duration to affect the characteristic vegetation growth of the regions on each side of the straits, nor to change the designation of Suisun Bay as ordinarily a fresh water body and San Francisco Bay as salt water.

The works of man have changed conditions in many ways. The most important changes have been brought about gradually,—so slowly as to be hardly noticeable. The dry season of 1918,—when large summer diversions for irrigation in the Sacramento Valley resulted in the sudden penetration of salt water farther upstream than ever known before, at such an early period in summer,—first brought the salt water problem to public notice. The slow effects of increasing diversions in previous years had escaped notice, but were brought prominently to the attention of the inhabitants of the upper bay and delta regions in this year. Since 1918, the dry years of 1920, 1924 and 1926 have more convincingly demonstrated the importance of the salt water problem.

An accurate picture of natural conditions is not possible, because no records have been collected on which such a picture can be based, but very close approximations can be made. The log of the distance traveled by the water barge of the California Hawaiian Sugar Company in going upstream to obtain fresh water has been kept since 1908. These figures give the means of determining approximately the conditions during that period. In 1908 irrigation had been extensively developed in both valleys and conditions then were not natural. For an estimate of earlier conditions we must go to the stream flow records of the tributary streams before important diversions are taken out.

It is the practice of the Sugar Company to send the barge upstream until water of approximately 50 to 70 parts per million chlorine is reached. The crew of the barge are equipped with apparatus by which water is analyzed until this degree of purity is reached. Since trips are made nearly every day during the summer months, the record is a very good indication of the point reached by salt water. A summary of the complete records shows the fluctuation of the line between fresh and salt water. Records of the Sugar Company are attached. (Table I.)

The Sugar Company requires water of great purity. For irrigation, domestic or ordinary industrial uses, water of a lesser degree of purity may be used. A comparison of the point where the Sugar Company's barge is filled with the point where the remaining uses could be satisfied, indicates that from five to ten miles downstream from the place where the barge turns, water could be obtained satisfactory for domestic supply. Making an allowance of 7½ miles in the average records, we find that an average flow of 5,000 second feet in both streams will maintain fresh water at Collinsville; 7,000 second feet will maintain fresh water at the San Francisco-Sacramento ferry.

If we sum up the flow of the important tributaries of the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers at the points where these streams leave the mountains and assume that this flow under natural conditions would have reached the head of the Suisun Bay, we will find that at no time in the past ten years would the average monthly flow have been less than 5,100 second feet. It is probable, should all streams be running in a natural way, that salt water would have penetrated no farther in this extremely dry period than Antioch, and then only for a few days at a time.

It is not possible to make a more detailed study of this condition without making a number of assumptions as to speed of flow from the gaging stations to the head of the bay, and there is little accurate information on which the assumptions may be made. The definite statement that salt water under natural conditions did not penetrate higher upstream than the mouth of the river, except in the driest years and then only for a few days at a time, is warranted. (See Table 2 for monthly flow of tributary streams.)

At present salt water reaches Antioch every year, in two-thirds of the years running further upstream. It is to be expected that it will continue to do so in future, even in years of greatest runoff. In other words, the penetration of salt water has become a permanent phenomenon in the lower river region.

CAUSE OF CHANGE IN SALT WATER CONDITIONS

The cause of this change in the salt water condition is due almost entirely to the works of man. If natural changes have had any effect, it is too small to be measured. The most important natural condition is the sequence of dry and wet periods. Since 1917 the State has experienced dry years with low runoff in nearly all streams. During this period two years have exceeded normal stream flow in some streams (1921 and 1927). In each of these years excessive salinity (over 100 parts chlorine per 100,000) was present at Antioch about two months.

Irrigation

Storage and diversion of water have been the principal causes of salinity increase in the upper bay country. The area irrigated varies from year to year; in 1926 the acreage of lands on the floor of the valley was approximately as follows:

Estimate of Diversions and Area Irrigated 1926—Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys, Not Including Mountain Areas

	Acre Feet Diverted	Acres Irrigated
Sacramento and tributaries above Sacramento, including rice, 128,439 acres	1,644,973	235,995
Delta uplands	146,906	53,649
Delta area		264,479
San Joaquin Valley estimated	2,100,000	700,000
	3,891,879	1,254,123

In addition to this area on the valley floor, there is a large acreage in the mountains which uses water from the streams tributary to the rivers that drain through Suisun Bay. The acreage irrigated in the mountains is not so accurately known as the area on the valley floor, but it is large and, particularly in low flow season, very

effectively uses up the water in the streams. The use of water in the mountains is usually more economical than in the valley and the return seepage is less. The net effect is to consume all of the water diverted. The effect upon the flow is pronounced.

The latest accurate determination of area irrigated is that made by the United States Census.

IRRIGATION IN CALIFORNIA

Census of 1920

	1902	1919	1920 Area in Enterprises	1920 Area Capable of Irrigation
Sacramento River and Tributaries	206,312	640,950	1,204,769	864,605
Sacramento River direct	10,942	194,397	439,169	296,748
Pit River	72,072	89,984	129,984	107,478
Cow Creek	2,321	6,068	12,488	7,446
Cottonwood Creek	1,858	2,972	21,016	4,112
Battle Creek	2,642	2,966	6,590	5,108
Stony Creek	4,110	23,559	45,143	36,191
Feather River	67,111	142,841	186,756	167,463
Yuba River	Not Rep.	19,473	69,074	23,492
Cache Creek	3,756	24,541	56,498	31,212
American River	10,112	47,156	82,695	52,842
Other Tributaries	31,388	86,993	155,356	132,513
San Joaquin River and Tributaries	220,651	1,069,161	2,072,739	1,497,661
San Joaquin River direct	129,647	642,261	1,083,862	873,300
Fresno River	10,729	12,412	30,004	14,016
Merced River	19,636	65,151	222,715	71,709
Tuolumne River	Not Rep.	165,533	298,418	250,425
Stanislaus River	13,840	75,359	155,453	111,192
Calaveras River	Not Rep.	13,323	21,598	16,489
Mokelumne River	5,558	36,848	155,480	72,144
Cosumnes River	Not Rep.	3,259	9,011	6,405
Other Tributaries	41,241	55,015	96,198	81,981

The above includes springs and wells.

Where area in watershed is not reported (not rep.) it is included in other watersheds.
Records for other census periods have not been tabulated so as to be comparable.

This table shows that in the 18 years between 1902 and 1920 the area irrigated in the Sacramento Valley trebled, while in the San Joaquin Valley the increase was nearly five times as great. The area included in irrigation enterprises was only half watered in 1920, while the area capable of being irrigated was only about two-thirds watered. The total area irrigated in both watersheds was 1,710,000 acres in 1920.

No accurate records have been collected since 1920. It is known, however, that the growth of irrigation has continued, though at a slower rate than prior to 1920. Since 1920 the growth in area has been proportionally larger in the San Joaquin than in the Sacramento Valley. In the latter valley grain production (seldom irrigated) is still profitable and much land within irrigation projects goes into grain. Other crops, such as rice, vary in area with the price of rice.

United States Department of Agriculture tabulation of area in rice in California is shown below:

ACRES IN RICE IN CALIFORNIA

1920	162,000
1921	135,000
1922	140,000
1923	106,000
1924	90,000
1925	103,000
1926	149,000

Storage reservoirs, both for irrigation and power, have been built on many streams in the past fifteen years. Many others are planned and their construction will be undertaken within a short time. The following list of reservoirs is as complete as it is possible to make it. Small reservoirs—less than 1,000 acre feet capacity—have been omitted.

STORAGE RESERVOIRS
GOLDEN GATE DRAINAGE WATERSHED

SACRAMENTO BASIN		Height of Dam	Reservoir Capacity Acre-Feet
Cottonwood Creek	Misselbeck Reservoir	105	5,460
Pit River	Darris Reservoir	-----	12,500
Pit River	Big Sage Reservoir	-----	-------------
Pit River	Mt. Shasta Power Co. No. 3	112	36,000
Stony Creek	East Park	139	51,000
	Stoney Gorge	120	50,000
Paradise Creek	Paradise Reservoir	-----	------------
Battle Creek	2 Reservoirs	-----	3,000
Feather River	Lake Almanor	125	1,317,000
	Bucks Creek	128	103,000
	Butte Valley	115	106,000
Yuba River	Bullards Bar	183	11,000
	Lake Francis	70	2,400
	Spalding	-----	74,000
	25 Reservoirs, small	-----	54,000
	Bowman being enlarged	-----	-----
American	4 Reservoirs	-----	12,800
Mokelumne	Pardee under construction	350	200,000
	Electra System, 7 Res.	-----	24,800
Stanislaus	Salt Springs, under construction	300	130,000
	Relief	140	15,000
	Strawberry	135	18,000
	Utica, 3 Reservoirs	-----	8,900
	Woodward	-----	36,000
	Melones	191	112,500
Tuolumne	Hetch Hetchy	....	----------
	O'Shaughnessy Dam	344	206,000
	Dom Pedro	284	290,000
	Lake Eleanor	-----	25,300
	Dallas Warner	-----	28,000
	Davis	-----	48,000
Merced	Exchequer	330	278,000
San Joaquin	Florence Lake	-----	64,500
	Huntington	165	88,700
	Shaver Lake	183	138,500
	Crane Valley	150	38,000
Cache Creek	Clear Lake	-----	400,000
Suisun Creek	Gordon Valley	104	10,000
Total Constructed Reservoirs			3,998,360

Projected Reservoirs (Partial List)

Sacramento	Kennett	420	2,838,000
	Iron Canyon	-----	709,000
American	Folsom	220	300,000
Mokelumne	Dry Creek	140	1,200,000
Tuolumne	O'Shaughnessy, increased to	430	350,000
Total Projected Reservoirs			5,397,000

In round numbers, reservoirs of a capacity of 4,000,000 acre feet are in use on streams tributary to San Francisco Bay above Carquinez Strait. Reservoirs of much larger capacity are being considered for future construction.

Mining Debris. Mining debris and sediment in the rivers and by-pass channels have probably changed the tidal flow to a small extent, and may have affected salt water movements. The effect has been too small to measure, but it has been generally in the direction of reducing tidal prism and tidal flow where the deposits are laid down in bay waters, and of increasing tidal flow through the Golden Gate where deposited in the rivers. The net change has probably been very small. Gilbert, in his report upon Hydraulic Mining Debris (U. S. G. S. Prof. Paper 105, page 87) estimates the reduction in tidal currents in Golden Gate caused by deposition of debris as 2.49 per cent.

Land Reclamation. Reclamation of land by building levees has affected tidal flow and movement of salt water in two ways: first, by decreasing the tidal prism in the delta and, second, by changing the time of arrival of floods and of low water.

First, Reduction of Tidal Prism: The reduction in tidal prism by the construction of levees in the delta region and around the upper end of San Pablo Bay and around Suisun Bay has probably had the effect of slightly reducing the tidal flow through Golden Gate. As has been shown by Gilbert in the publication above referred to, the effect of leveeing in the lower river has had the tendency of increasing Golden Gate flow, while the same work in Suisun and San Pablo Bays has had the opposite effect. The net effect, however, is small and results in decreased flow. Gilbert (U. S. Geologic Survey Professional Paper 105, page 79) estimates the average percentage of the flow through Golden Gate as follows, when all marshes are leveed:

MARSH LAND AREAS—AVERAGE VOLUME FLOWING THROUGH GOLDEN GATE EXPRESSED IN PERCENTAGE

	Per Cent
San Pablo Bay marshes and Napa River	*1.95
Suisun Bay	*1.18
Sacramento Delta	†1.04
San Joaquin Delta	†3.35
Net effect on Golden Gate flow	†1.26

* Means decrease in tidal flow through Golden Gate.
† Means increase in tidal flow through Golden Gate.

Second, Change in Time of Arrival of Floods: The effect of leveeing upstream from tide lands has been to decrease the storage in basins and to increase the rate of travel of floods toward tide water. Under natural conditions the basin areas filled with water in flood time and slowly released this water in late summer, maintaining the flow well into the period of low water.

Most of these up-river basins have been leveed and floods run through the river channel and by-passes to the ocean with very little retardation by storage. There is no stored water from these basins to maintain low flow, consequently the low flow reaches the tidal channels earlier in the year than under natural conditions.

The effect of this reclamation work upon salt water conditions has been very pronounced. In the period just prior to 1918, some of the largest reclamation districts were leveed, Sutter Basin being a notable example. Prior to this closing off from flood flows these basins retained large volumes of water, sometimes until the middle of summer, the water slowly draining back into the channel. Nowadays instead of delivering water to the channel, water is taken from the channels for irrigation during summer months. Drainage returns a small part of the irrigation water directly to the river.

Return seepage from irrigation has had the effect of increasing the low water flow in the Sacramento. Stafford, in publications of the Division of Water Rights (Biennial Report November, 1924, page 133; Sacramento-San Joaquin Water Supervisor's Report 1926, page 85) estimates the water returned to the Sacramento River as follows:

WATER RETURNED TO SACRAMENTO RIVER (INCLUDING ALL ACCRETIONS)

Flow in Second Feet

	1924	1925	1926
June	879	....	2280
July	734	1624	1573
August	785	1320	1240
September	634	1310	1077
October	......	460	....
Mean	763	1179	1543

Dredging, particularly in the Sacramento River, near its mouth, has had the effect of increasing the water prism, but the probable effect upon tides through Golden Gate is to decrease them. The dredging work is so far upstream as to be on the tidal movement opposite to that in the Golden Gate.

The deepening of the channel has, further, the effect of permitting the deep flowing salt water to pass upstream with more ease through the deep channel. A like effect will probably result from deepening of Suisun Bay and the San Joaquin River to Stockton, a navigation project authorized by Congress.

It is not possible to measure these effects, but it is well established that salt water being heavier moves along the bottom of deep channels with greater ease than over shallow ones. Any deepening of channels or straightening of approach through dredger cuts has the tendency to facilitate the movement of the deeper waters.

Irrigation and Storage of Water in the San Joaquin Valley. Irrigation in the San Joaquin Valley has had an effect upon tidal conditions and the movement of salt water in two ways: first, by diverting and storing water during flood period, and second, by increasing the flow in late summer and fall months through return seepage.

A much larger utilization of water resources has taken place in the San Joaquin than in the Sacramento Valley. Rainfall is lighter on the floor of the valley, so dry farming has been less profitable and there is greater necessity of irrigation. All streams tributary to the bay are now completely diverted during the low flow period and no water enters the tidal channels except return flow. This condition has been true for over ten years.

The following brief description of the streams and the irrigated area will show the extent to which the water supply has been put to use.

Upper San Joaquin. The upper San Joaquin enters the valley floor at Friant. The mean annual flow of the stream at the valley's edge averages 2,050,000 acre feet. Storage above this point, built by the San Joaquin Light and Power Corporation and the Southern California Edison Power Company under contract with riparian owners and appropriative users of water, amounts to 330,000 acre feet. Other storage reservoirs have been planned. Lands irrigated from the stream lie on both sides of the river and aggregate 400,000 acres. The diversion capacity of the ditches, sloughs and canals in use is very large.

Above the Merced River, canals, ditches and sloughs with control gates have a capacity in excess of 7,000 second feet. Sloughs and channels used for wild flooding increase this diversion capacity to in excess of 10,000 second feet. Below the Merced, a number of pumps take water from the river to West Side slope. Down to Paradise Dam, about the head of tide water, these diversions total in excess of 500 second feet.

All water entering the valley is diverted in late summer. The San Joaquin is dried above the Merced for three or four months a year. Return seepage commences to "make" about the mouth of the Merced. Below that point there is always water in the channel, except for short periods of time, just below some of the larger pumping plants.

Fresno River. This stream has a small watershed area of low mountains with a mean annual flow of 68,000 acre feet. The entire low flow is utilized around Madera and toward the San Joaquin. No return seepage makes from this area, as pumping plants have lowered the ground water plane and probably intercept nearly the entire ground water flow.

Chowchilla River. This stream has about the same area and topographic conditions in its watershed as has the Fresno. Its mean flow approximates 68,000 acre feet. All low flow is utilized. Pumping has been heavy on its lower course. No return seepage makes from this area.

Merced River. The Merced Irrigation District and riparian lands lying above the junction with the San Joaquin utilize all low flow. The Exchequer Reservoir of the Merced District, with a storage capacity of 278,000 acre feet, controls the stream except in wet years. The power plant at the dam delivers water into the river, when water is plentiful, in excess of the district's diverting capacity. Water always passes the district's headgate for use of lands lower down on the Merced. The mean flow of the stream is 1,330,000 acre feet. Return seepage maintains a continuous flow at the mouth of the Merced, the water coming from both the Turlock and Merced sides of the river. This return flow now amounts to 80 to 100 second feet in summer months and there are indications that it is increasing. Pumps along the Merced utilize a part of this return flow.

Tuolumne River. The Tuolumne drains a high mountain area and has a mean annual flow of 2,055,000 acre feet. Three irrigation districts—the Waterford, Modesto and Turlock, with a total area of 276,783 acres—divert water at the LaGrange Dam. Three storage reservoirs with capacity of 366,000 acre feet are operated by these districts. The City of San Francisco has rights on the upper watershed for water for domestic uses and has built reservoirs of capacity of 231,000 acre feet. A conduit of capacity of 620 second feet is under construction. San Francisco has control of other reservoir sites and proposes, ultimately, to divert 400 million gallons daily (620 second feet) from the watershed. To do this, storage of about 850,000 acre feet will be required.

Return seepage in the Tuolumne, at its mouth, resulting from irrigation now amounts to from 250 to 350 second feet constant flow. Additional seepage from these irrigated areas appears in the Merced, the Stanislaus and San Joaquin rivers.

Stanislaus River. The Stanislaus River—mean annual flow 1,376,000 acre feet—is under storage control for both power and irrigation. Power reservoirs with capacity built or being built of 172,000 acre feet, high on the stream, increase the low flow, but this water is re-stored in reservoirs or diverted by the South San Joaquin and Oakdale irrigation districts. These districts, with an area of 145,348 acres, have in Melones and Woodward reservoirs a storage capacity of 148,000 acre feet. All low flow is diverted. Return seepage in the Stanislaus River at its mouth (coming in part from the Modesto District) now varies from 100 to 160 second feet constant flow. An additional amount enters the San Joaquin River.

Return Flow in the San Joaquin River. Return seepage in the San Joaquin River from the mouth of the Merced to Durham Ferry (just above tide water) now amounts to a continuous flow of from 600 to 1,000 second feet. About 300 second feet of this water is diverted above tide water by pumps irrigating West Side lands. Additional pumps recently installed or in process of installation and pumps diverting from the tidal portion of the stream have a combined capacity of between 750 and 800 second feet. In the peak of the irrigating season these West Side pumps divert practically all of the visible flow in the San Joaquin River. The delta lands and islands are dependent upon ground water flow and such water as flows down the Calaveras, Mokelumne and connecting sloughs from the Sacramento River.

NET RESULT OF IRRIGATION AND STORAGE ON SALT WATER PROBLEM

Summarizing former statements upon the effect of irrigation and storage upon the flow of salt water in the lower river and upper bay region, the following may be said:

1. Under natural conditions the boundary between salt and fresh water was Carquinez Straits. In late summer, Suisun Bay became brackish but salt water penetrated as far as Antioch only rarely and then for but a few days' time.

2. The combined effects of irrigation and diversion in the Sacramento Valley have been to reduce the flow entering tidal waters to a small fraction of the flow under natural conditions. In 1924 the flow at Sacramento was about 720 second feet and was below 1,000 second feet for in excess of a month. In 1925 the flow at Sacramento reached a minimum of 2750 second feet and was below 3,000 for nearly a month. In 1926 the flow of the Sacramento reached a minimum of 1200 second feet and was below 2,000 for over a month.

3. The late summer flow of the San Joaquin—all return seepage—has been below 1,000 second feet in all years except 1927. The capacity of pumping plants irrigating West Side lands exceeds the inflow nearly every summer, so that, so far as visible flow in the San Joaquin is concerned, all of the late summer inflow into tidal channels is used on West Side area. The delta lands now must obtain their supply from the water stored in channels or which flows underground, or from the Calaveras, Mokelumne, and sloughs connecting with the Sacramento River.

4. The use of water by the delta lands on both San Joaquin and Sacramento rivers has not been accurately determined. The area irrigated amounts to 360,000 acres. If this area consumes 1¾ acre feet of water per annum, of which 20 per cent is used in a month, the consumptive draft will be at the rate of 2100 second feet. This quantity exceeds the low flow in years of light rain.

PRESENT CONDITIONS OF SALT WATER IN UPPER BAY AND LOWER RIVER REGIONS

Salt water conditions have been under observation by the Division of Water Rights of the Department of Public Works since 1917. Results have been published in the annual reports of this Division. Earlier records of much value in the study of the problem are those of the California-Hawaiian Sugar Company, referred to earlier in this report, covering the period from 1908 to 1920. In 1920 the Sugar Company obtained a supply from the Marin Municipal Water District at San Quentin Point, approximately 15 miles from Crockett. Since then, when the distance traveled upstream to fresh water is less than 15 miles, the water is taken from the river; when the distance exceeds 15 miles, the Marin County water is used.

A number of other investigations of salt water conditions have been collected at various places and are of help in the determination of the changes which have taken place in recent years. Among these records are those collected by Mr. William Pierce north of Suisun Slough, on the north side of Suisun Bay; records for a short period by the Pacific Portland Cement Company at Suisun, showing salinity of Suisun Slough; records by the Great Western Electro Chemical Company at Pittsburg, extending from 1916 to date, giving total solids and chlorine in the river water; and information collected at various times in the investigation of water supplies by the City of San Francisco, the City of Richmond, and the East Bay Water Company. A large amount of information from these various sources has been obtained and is helpful in interpreting the changes which have taken place and in formulating a fairly accurate conception of conditions in the past and what may be expected in the future.

Attached to this report is a chart of the region, the base being photographed from the Annual Report of the Division of Water Rights. On this chart red lines have been placed showing the penetration of salt water during the months of June and September, 1924. Similar charts for other years show that in every year, salt water has penetrated to a point beyond Antioch on the San Joaquin River and Collinsville on the Sacramento, and that in years of low flow, such as 1918, 1920, 1924 and 1926, the extreme limit of salt water penetration has been well into the delta region.

The year 1927 is one of approximately 100 per cent runoff in the streams tributary to San Francisco Bay. In this year salt water reached the middle of Suisun Bay in June, was approximately at Collinsville and Antioch in July, and during August and September had reached approximately to Emmaton on the Sacramento and the lower end of Jersey Island on the San Joaquin River.

Stream flow records show that approximately one-third of the years are in excess of 100 per cent runoff and two-thirds of the years below that figure. This gives, roughly, an approximation of the period of time in which salt water conditions will be worse than in 1927 and the period in which better results can be expected.

For practical purposes, a period of thirty days or more would be detrimental to either irrigation, domestic use or supply for industrial purposes. An examination of records in more detail indicates that, under the conditions now existing, in practically all dry years salt water will reach the lower end of the delta for at least a month's time, and that in two-thirds of the years water will be in the lower delta region in excess of a month's time or as much as three to four months.

The areas of delta land within the salt water flow are shown in the following table:

	Approximate Stream Flow in Per Cent, Normal	Area of Delta Penetrated by Salt Water
1924	24	169,000
1926	53	58,000
1925	74	8,500
1927	100	5,000

PROSPECTIVE CHANGES IN THE FUTURE

Storage of water for power purposes and diversion for irrigation and domestic uses in the watersheds tributary to the bay are steadily increasing. The rate of increase of the irrigated area is not so rapid as during the decade 1910 to 1920, but there is a steady, continuous growth and plans are on foot for large increases in the use of water through new projects and through the extension of irrigation on old projects.

As illustrating the extent to which conditions are changing, reference may be made to the growth of the San Joaquin River basin since the year 1920, a period ordinarily regarded as one of stagnation in irrigation development in California. Since 1920, the Southern California Edison Power Company has constructed and placed in operation the Florence Lake and Shaver Lake Reservoirs on the San Joaquin River with a storage capacity of 203,000 acre feet. This stored water will be

diverted and used as fast as it is released for power purposes by the agricultural lands above the mouth of the Merced.

On the next stream, the Merced Irrigation District has built a storage reservoir of 278,000 acre foot capacity and has approximately trebled the area in irrigation in 1920. The district is rapidly growing and the entire irrigable acreage in the total of 189,000 acres will be all in cultivation within a few years.

On the Tuolumne River, since 1920, the Modesto and Turlock Irrigation Districts have built the Dom Pedro Reservoir of 290,000 acre foot capacity, and both districts have extensively increased their irrigated area. The growth is steady.

The Waterford District has acquired rights to use the water of the Yosemite Power Company, which formerly delivered approximately 60 cubic feet per second into the Tuolumne River below LaGrange Dam, further reducing the stream flow.

Since 1920 the City of San Francisco has built Lake Eleanor and the O'Shaughnessy Dam, storing 231,000 acre feet. The water released from these reservoirs has not yet been diverted from the watershed but it has been picked up, at least during the summer period, by the irrigation districts, and no water except return seepage has flowed into the Tuolumne River during the summer and early fall months.

On the Stanislaus River, the Melones Dam has been built by two irrigation districts in cooperation with the Pacific Gas and Electric Company, and the late summer use of water has been very much increased.

In addition the Power Companies have now under construction Salt Springs Reservoir on the headwaters of the Stanislaus, with the intention of ultimately raising this to storage capacity of 130,000 acre feet. This water when released will be caught by the Melones and Woodward reservoirs lower on the stream and utilized during the late summer.

The East Bay Utility District has now under construction the Lancha Plana Reservoir site on the Mokelumne River, a reservoir of 200,000 acre foot capacity, and has completed a pipe line from the Mokelumne to the East Bay district of a capacity of 60 million gallons daily (90 second feet). The water to be diverted by this Utility District will be taken out of the watershed and there will be no return flow from it.

In addition to the reservoirs and increased irrigated area on the east side of the San Joaquin, several pumping plants have been built lifting water up the West Side slope for the irrigation of high lands. Important among these are the Banta-Carbona Irrigation District, approximately at the head of tide water, which commenced irrigating in 1925 and now has a pumping capacity of 220 cubic feet per second.

The Burkhart Ranch further south has installed a pumping capacity of about 50 cubic feet per second since 1920, and a number of other districts and appropriators of water have increased either the size of their pumping equipment or the extent of their use, so that at the present time the capacity of the pumping plants irrigating West Side lands exceeds the flow in the San Joaquin River at the place where tide water is reached.

Further extension of this irrigated area is in progress and one new district is now engaged in preparation of plans which will result in the pumping of approximately 300 second feet from the river.

Extension of area supplied by pumping from wells has been going on at the same time. In Fresno, Madera, Merced, Stanislaus and San Joaquin counties, hundreds of pumping plants have been installed since 1920, all drawing from water which, under natural conditions, would have its outlet to the sea through the San Joaquin River. It is impossible to accurately estimate the effect of this withdrawal of water upon the stream flow or the underflow to delta areas, but, if it has not already done so, it will at some time affect the flow by reducing the quantity of water which reaches the stream from underground sources and affecting to that extent the late summer discharge into tidal waters.

Irrigation development has not been so pronounced in the Sacramento watershed since 1920. There are a large number of irrigation and reclamation enterprises in the Sacramento Valley which have irrigation systems of a capacity larger than the irrigated area. There is, in addition, a large area of land still devoted to grain, rice, sugar beets and other general farm crops, which goes in and out of cultivation as economic conditions vary. The years when grain prices are high, large areas of grain go into cultivation, a portion of which is irrigated. With prospects of low prices for grain other crops are planted, some of which use more water than does grain. The most noticeable effect on the water supply, however, is the increase and decrease in the rice crop. The area irrigated in rice since the industry became stabilized varies from 130,000 to in excess of 200,000 acres a year, and in years of large crop the effect upon the water supply is very noticeable.

Although no large new enterprises have been built in the Sacramento Valley in recent years, the increase in irrigation in the older districts has been steady. The area devoted to orchards, to alfalfa, and to general farm crops requiring irrigation, steadily increases. The result has been continued drafts upon the supply from the river and to gradual reduction in the total flow downstream from the main cultivated section. The reduction in flow, to some extent, has been controlled by the operations of the Division of Water Rights through the Commissioner appointed to superintend the diversions from the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers. The principal effect of the work of the Commissioner has been to reduce the waste of water, to encourage economy and to endeavor to keep the flow at Sacramento as high as possible, both for purposes of navigation and the use of delta lands.

Return seepage and waste from the lower ends of the rice irrigation canals have to some extent ameliorated the extreme low flow conditions experienced in 1920 and 1924, but the steady increase in irrigated area goes on each year. The total quantity of water which passes out of the valley in late summer is slowly but surely decreasing.

There is nothing to indicate any change of conditions in the immediate future. Irrigation has reached nearly stable conditions on the upland areas of the San Joaquin Valley, largely because the streams are nearly developed to their full capacities. On the Sacramento River, however, large areas of fertile land under irrigation systems built to supply them with water are certain to be placed in crop and increase the use of water. The result will be a steady depletion of the stream and an increase of the salt water menace.

Salt water conditions such as have occurred in the lower delta since 1918 have become permanent and will not be improved until some additional water supply is turned into the river during the low flow period, or unless a barrier is built to prevent the approach of salt water from the ocean. It is difficult to conceive a set of natural conditions that would change this situation. We have reason to expect years of heavy runoff to follow the long period of dry years since 1917, but a review of the past does not lead to the belief that summer water supply can be increased to such a point that any appreciable effect will be experienced by the delta region and industrial area.

EFFECT OF SALT WATER ON DEVELOPMENT

The industrial and agricultural areas along the upper bay and lower river region came into being before there was any serious thought of the salt water problem, in other words prior to 1918, for that was the first year in which the encroachment of salt water was serious and over a long period of the year. Since 1918 there has been no large increase of cultivated land in the delta region and few new industries of importance have been established in the industrial area. There has been, however, a steady growth in the industries already established.

The effect of salt water upon the various users of water will be discussed in the following paragraphs.

Agriculture. Water to be supplied for agricultural purposes must be free from large quantities of soluble matter. The upper limit of concentration safe for use depends upon the soil, crop, rate at which it has been used, drainage facilities, and to some extent upon whether fresh water is available at other times in the year for leaching purposes. The determination of the safe limit is, therefore, a matter of considerable difficulty, as it will vary as these factors differ.

For the purposes of this report, however, it is fair to assume that water containing 100 parts of chlorine per 100,000, equivalent to 160 parts of sodium chloride or common salt per 100,000, is the upper limit of safety; since the water contains other salts the total salinity of water containing 100 parts of chlorine will vary from 175 to 200 parts per 100,000. Water of this degree of salinity is not safe for use, except where precautions are taken to provide good drainage and to continue leaching the water through the soil so that there is no accumulation of salty matter. Such water may be used with safety on light soils where drainage is good and the use excessive, and is not harmful where used occasionally during late summer. One-half of this quantity, or 50 parts per 100,000, is much safer for use and waters of this degree of salinity could be used with comparative safety.

The records quoted above show that in years of extreme low flow, waters of 100 parts of chlorine per 100,000 will penetrate into the delta region to points beyond Rio Vista on the Sacramento, and to Stockton and beyond the mouth of Middle River on the San Joaquin. During some part of the summer approximately one-half of the delta area will be surrounded by salt water.

This condition has several results: First, it renders questionable the irrigation of permanent crops, particularly such crops as are sensitive to salt; second, it has a tendency through the percolation beneath the levees of sub-irrigating the adjoining land with saline water; third, it reduces the value of lands through the fear of salinity; and fourth, it adds expense and uncertainty to the question of domestic supply, for on most of the delta the river is a source of domestic water.

The net effect of this condition is to render agriculture uncertain in the delta, to reduce the value of land, and to create a menace which will result in the destruction of the land by the accumulation of salts.

AREA OF AGRICULTURAL LAND AFFECTED BY SALT WATER BARRIER

The area of agricultural land affected by the salt water barrier is taken as:

1st—The area of marsh land lying practically at sea level.

2nd—The area of land up to elevation 150 above sea level; an elevation to which pumping has been carried with success.

These areas may be subdivided into geographic regions as follows:

1st—The area around San Pablo Bay, between Carquinez Strait and the site of the San Pablo barrier.

2nd—The area around Suisun Bay, that is, from the mouth of the river at Collinsville to Benicia.

3rd—The delta area or region upstream from the mouth of the river.

4th—Irrigated or irrigable lands above the delta.

San Pablo Bay Area. A large area of marsh land lies along the west and north shores of San Pablo Bay. At present a large part of this area is in process of reclamation. Much of it is growing grain crops or pasture, but little of it is irrigated. The surrounding waters are salty at nearly all times of the year. Fresh water fills the sloughs and bay during flood time, a period becoming shorter each year. Ground water of good quality has not been found and there is little likelihood of its ever being obtained, as deep wells have been drilled in many places.

Much of the land is yet salt and all of it is influenced to some extent by the salt in the bay, and the reclamation by using rainfall alone to wash out the salt is slow. The presence of fresh water surrounding the area would permit much more rapid reclamation and would make it possible to bring into profitable agriculture nearly this entire area.

Surrounding the marsh area is an area of high ground nearly as large, all of which is now unirrigated. This marginal area could be all watered and made available for many different crops by fresh water from San Pablo Bay and tributaries if this bay were kept full of fresh water. Novato, Petaluma and Sonoma Creeks and Napa River all penetrate the marsh lands and extend to high land; they would make fresh water available for the adjoining high ground and enable pumps to supply small units or large, depending upon the physical conditions.

It is to be expected that at some future time all agricultural lands in California will make use to some extent of irrigation water where such is available. Irrigation in the coastal belt has not advanced as rapidly as in the interior valleys, because owners of such land can grow profitable crops without artificial watering. Maximum results can be obtained only by irrigation and it is but natural to expect water to be in demand at some future time.

The San Pablo Bay areas which may at some time become interested in irrigation are all areas where climate and soil are acceptable to agricultural pursuits. The region is close to centers of population; transportation facilities are usually good or easily improved; it is one where increased population is certain. The availability of fresh water in the bay and tidal sloughs will serve to stimulate this growth.

Lands so situated, close to tidal waters and centers of population, are likewise attractive to industries. As the San Francisco Bay region grows, more and more of the territory adjoining the bay will change from agriculture to industrial or residential property. With a water supply attached to it, the change in use becomes easier, for the amount of water required for agriculture supplies the needs of residential or industrial occupation.

Carquinez Strait. Carquinez Strait—7½ miles long—extends from Suisun Bay to San Pablo Bay. High hills with only small areas of flat land bound the strait. The opportunities for extensive developments for use of water in this territory are limited by the topographic conditions. Industries already occupy much of the available territory and the small valleys, particularly in Contra Costa County, are now filled by towns, the population resulting from industrial, transportation and commercial enterprises along the waterfront.

If the strait is filled with fresh water and tidal fluctuations and currents are decreased, the more complete occupation of all available ground will be possible. At the present time growth is restricted by water supply. Martinez, Port Costa and adjoining territory obtain a part of their water from wells at Concord, 12 miles away. The supply from ground water is limited. Large additions to this supply are impractical. The Sugar Refinery at Crockett has barged water from the river or the Marin County shore at great cost for many years.

On the north side of the strait, the town of Benicia has a small water supply but cannot increase this supply very much without great expense.

Suisun Bay Area. Marsh lands adjoining Suisun Bay total 70,000 acres. Immediately adjacent to these marshes is an area of 93,000 acres of higher land suitable for agriculture but not now irrigated. Fresh water in Suisun Bay would make it possible to convert this area of dry land to irrigated areas of high value.

The marsh area of Suisun Bay is all practically at sea level. Much of it is salt marsh or at least contains enough salt to interfere with some kinds of agriculture. A large part has been leveed and utilized for pasture, but with unsatisfactory drainage, and salt has accumulated.

Fresh water in the surrounding tidal channels and freedom from daily tidal fluctuations will permit the leaching of this land and make the reclamation of it practical. The land is inherently fertile and will become very productive when leached of salt. The works to accomplish this are simple in character and the operation is simple and certain of success.

If fresh water is made available, there is little question but that these marsh lands can eventually be made as productive as the delta lands of the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers further upstream.

The high ground above these marsh areas and which may be watered by practical lifts out of tidal channels includes the lower parts of Green Valley around Cordelia, the lower part of Suisun Valley, now highly developed to deciduous fruits, and the region from Suisun to Denverton.

South of the bay the lower parts of Walnut Creek and Ignacio and Seal Creek valleys may be reached with low pumping lifts. These valley lands are now in part planted to fruits and the agricultural possibilities of the region have been demonstrated. Irrigation water cannot be obtained for these areas from any other source known at this time. Wells are of small yield and uncertain life. Storage reservoirs on these streams may be possible but none is known except small ones, and these will serve only small local areas.

The most important difficulty is the extremely erratic nature of the runoff from this area. In wet years floods are heavy, but in years below normal precipitation the runoff may be very limited, often negligible. Storage to be dependable must hold water over two or three dry years, an impracticable condition for agriculture except in very limited areas. The greater part of the area will remain unirrigated unless some cheaper, more dependable supply of water is made available. A salt water barrier will place fresh water at points where it can be readily obtained by practical developments.

The Delta Region. The delta region, affected by tide levels, extends as far up the San Joaquin River as Duncans Ferry (6 miles below the mouth of the Stanislaus River) and up the Sacramento a short distance above the City of Sacramento. The distance from the mouth of the San Joaquin to the head of tide water by river is 77 miles; to the head of tide water on the Sacramento is 56 miles. Between these extremes are many miles of tidal channels and sloughs affording access by boat to nearly all parts of the region, and by relatively short dredger cuts, making it possible to deliver tidal water at the edge of high ground.

This region includes 367,000 acres of land, either marsh or swamp and overflow, and 91,000 acres of high ground immediately adjacent to the marsh on the west side of the valleys. These total 458,000 acres.

The entire area is irrigated or irrigable from waters at tide level. The most recent information indicates that of this area 360,000 acres are now irrigated in both deltas. In both deltas an area of 98,000 acres remain to be irrigated, parts of which are irrigated and farmed irregularly. The economic status of the farmer has much to do with the area under cultivation.

The Up River Country. The entire irrigated area tributary to Suisun Bay is to some extent interested in the salt water problem. At the present time a suit is before the Superior Court of San Joaquin Valley, between riparian users and appropriators in the delta region and 443 defendants on the streams above the delta. This suit involves nearly all of the large users of water, both for irrigation and power, on the stream. Much other litigation is in prospect. The outcome of this controversy cannot be foreseen but it is impossible to predict anything but serious complications and nearly endless difficulties no matter which turn the courts may take.

Should the outcome of the present suit be that tide water lands have no riparian rights upon waters of the streams, in excess of one-half of the present delta area will be periodically surrounded by salt water. The agricultural industry will be affected and the salt water menace to these lands will become permanent. The final result will be disastrous to a very large area of land which has been the most uniformly productive land in the state. The continued storage and use of water above tide level and the increase in pumping to high lands around the tidal area will cause salt water to enter the rivers in all years, and at times the greater part of the tidal waters will be contaminated with salt from the ocean.

Should the courts take the view that owners on tidal waters have riparian rights to the flow of the stream, a great deal of very valuable land now using water must release the water which has heretofore been used and a tremendous damage to higher areas will result. The release of waters may affect salt water conditions to some extent but it is impossible to conceive a condition in which enough water will be released to push back salt in years of light runoff.

As is shown later in this report in the chapter on "Storage and Release for Control of Salinity," the plan under which this proposal has been made does not look practical as a means of taking care of the irrigation problem of the delta. Furthermore, it leaves out of consideration the entire industrial area that lies just below the delta.

Power Companies. Two power companies supply the industrial region—the Great Western Power Company and the Pacific Gas and Electric Company. Both companies have an interest in the salt problem in two ways: The market for power is the first and most apparent interest the power companies have in this problem in that the maintenance of the present industries and their growth in the future affect the income of the distributing companies.

In a later chapter a statement of the approximate use of power for industrial and domestic purposes is included. The rate of growth of power sales indicates a steady increase in industrial activities. The more rapidly these factories grow and the more new factories there are installed, the better will be the power companies' incomes. A potential industrial territory offers opportunity for a very large increase in use of power and the encouragement of these industries is a legitimate function of power companies.

The second way in which these companies are interested is the question of litigation mentioned above. The Great Western Power Company and the Pacific Gas and Electric Company and subsidiary companies, such as the Sierra and San Francisco Power Company and Mount Shasta Power Corporation, are parties to the suit previously mentioned. In addition to them the San Joaquin Light and Power Company and Southern California Edison Company, both developers of power on the San Joaquin River, are included, and the Modesto and Turlock, South San Joaquin and Merced irrigation districts are included on account of their storage and use of water on tributary streams. The interests of these concerns, therefore, are created by the direct attack upon their storage and use of water in the higher watersheds.

Should the outcome of this suit establish the riparian right of the delta land owners, the power companies will suffer very seriously in consequence, by the necessity of either releasing water now stored or condemning the right to continue the practice of controlling the flows.

Fishing Industry. Under present conditions, with the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers open to the flow of tides, fish have free access from the ocean to the fresh water streams draining the Sierra Nevada Mountains. Several types of commercial fish are caught in these waters and other fish are important as food for the commercial varieties. There has developed a considerable fishing and fish-canning industry along the bay and lower river shore. The catch in river and upper bay approximates 5,000,000 to 6,000,000 pounds a year—largely salmon, shad and striped bass. (See table.)

The Fish and Game Commission has in charge the maintenance of fishing and the preservation and control of natural fish life, together with the propagation of existing species and the introduction of new forms suitable to these conditions.

Plans for the salt water barrier provide for fishways so that fish may travel upstream. Fish will have free travel at such times as gates are opened and will no doubt pass through the ship locks at all times.

THE FUTURE OF THIS REGION

The future of the industrial region on Carquinez Straits and Suisun Bay depends upon the growth of population. California and other Pacific Coast states are growing more rapidly than any other section of the United States. There has been for many years a constant inflow of people from the East and an increase in population along the whole Pacific shore. The cities of Los Angeles, Oakland, San Francisco, Seattle and Portland have grown much more rapidly than is the average growth of American cities.

There is no such rapid development anywhere in the country except the industrial growth in the cities around the Great Lakes, where large manufacturing interests have centered. Aside from the City of Los Angeles, the rapid-growing cities of the country have been the industrial centers. In the case of Los Angeles, the industrial growth has been large but the great increase in population arises, to a large extent, from the attractive climate of this southern city.

Estimates of future population of the San Francisco Bay region have been made by several organizations in studies concerning public utility matters. The results of three such studies are shown in the table following. The first, Column I, is the estimate of the population of San Francisco and East Bay cities made in connection with studies of Trans-bay bridge; Column II is an estimate of the metropolitan district, taken as San Francisco, Alameda, Contra Costa and San Mateo counties, by the Telephone Company; and Column III the estimate of population of the East Bay Municipal Utility District by that organization. Each of these estimates indicates that the population will double in about 25 years.

ESTIMATES OF GROWTH OF POPULATION

YEAR	I. San Francisco and Trans-bay Cities	II. San Francisco Metropolitan District	III. East Bay Municipal Utility District
1910		686,873	229,404
1915	760,000		
1920	850,850	891,477	330,348
1925	976,000		
1930	1,100,000	1,329,200	501,000
1935	1,250,000		
1940	1,400,000	1,856,700	702,000
1945	1,577,000	2,172,000	
1950	1,750,000		948,000
1960			1,230,000

I. Estimate of population San Francisco and East Bay cities by Board of Engineers Trans-Bay Bridge, San Francisco, May, 1927.

II. Pacific Telephone & Telegraph Company—estimate by Robert W. Bachelor, includes San Francisco, Alameda, Contra Costa and San Mateo counties, April, 1925. Published in "San Francisco Business" April 17, 1925.

III. East Bay Municipal Utility District, Annual Report 1925, page 7.

Contra Costa County has grown at a more rapid rate than the Bay region as a whole. Census figures for the counties around the bay are shown in Table 4. Contra Costa's growth as compared with other bay counties is shown below:

Subdivision of State	Population 1920	Increase 1910 to 1920 Per Cent	Increase 1900 to 1920 Per Cent
State	3,426,861	44	130
Alameda County	344,171	40	164
Contra Costa	53,889	70	198
Marin	27,342	9	74
Napa	20,678	4	26
Sacramento	91,029	34	98
San Francisco	506,676	22	48
San Joaquin	79,905	58	125
San Mateo	36,781	38	204
Solano	40,602	47	69

Recent figures to show increase in population are shown in Table 5, in which are given the school enrollments for years 1915, 1921 and 1927. These are summarized below:

SCHOOL ENROLLMENT
BAY SHORE DISTRICTS—CONTRA COSTA COUNTY

	1915	1921	1927	Per Cent Increase 1915-21	Per Cent Increase 1915-27
Elementary Schools	5020	7262	9118	45	82
High Schools	510	1037	1586	103	210
Totals	5530	8299	10,704	50	94
Increase		50%	30%		

Population Growth and Its Cycles. California, in common with other states, is going through a readjustment of population distribution and kind of occupation. A comparatively few years ago the greater part of our population was engaged in agriculture; today manufacturing and mechanical industries occupy more people than agriculture. In 1920 agricultural pursuits (including forestry) occupied 18 per cent of the wage earners of the state as compared with 28½ per cent engaged in manufacturing and mechanical industries. Today the percentage engaged in manufacturing is higher and increasing all the time.

Students of population growth recognize cycles of growth which, for certain reasons, start slowly, grow rapidly and decline slowly. California has gone through two cycles of growth—mining and agricultural—and is now entering upon a third cycle—industrial.

The gold rush commencing in 1848 caused the first rapid increase of population after California became a part of the United States. As mining gradually declined in importance, agriculture attracted many people and a great increase in population occurred. Agriculture ceased to make rapid growth in 1912 and since that period manufacturing and mechanical trades have been the principal source of increase in population.

There are several reasons for present conditions:

1. Agriculture has been depressed since the deflation period of 1921. Costs are still high and the sale price of products has not entirely recovered. Profits have been low.

2. Land values in California are high. There is no more chance for cheap land. The incentive which caused many to enter agricultural pursuits in the great period of agricultural growth does not now exist.

3. Farming is more and more becoming purely mechanical; the same area of land can be farmed now with fewer men. This releases men for other occupations and reduces the number of men trained in farming operations—the potential buyers of farms.

4. Freight rates increased during the war and added greatly to cost of placing agricultural products in eastern market centers. At the same time the increase in freight has made it practical and necessary for many manufacturers to establish branches on the Pacific Coast.

5. Since 1900, hydroelectric power and long distance transmission of energy to manufacturing centers have been made practical and cheap, and dependable power for manufacturing has resulted.

6. California, since 1900, has become a large producer of oil. The cheap oil has encouraged manufacturing in many ways.

7. The Panama Canal and better shipping facilities have made raw materials

for manufacturing more easily available, and have made it easier to ship products of manufacture to other markets.

8. The climate of the coast region of California has become recognized as being well adapted to manufacturing. The cool weather, uniformity of seasons, freedom from freezing or destructive storms, have attracted workmen and capitalists.

The result of all this is that at present the growth of California lies around industrial centers. We are now living in an industrial age. The future of the state depends largely upon the rate and quality of this manufacturing and industrial growth.

This does not mean that there is to be expected a decline in agricultural activity. On the contrary the growth of cities and centers of industrial enterprises will stimulate the growth in agriculture. Markets for more farm produce will result from increases in industrial population, there will be a better market for the raw products of manufacture which originate on the farm and the improvements in transportation that will result from manufacturing will benefit agriculture. We may expect the growth in agriculture to continue, but at a rate lower than during the years prior to 1912.

Agricultural Extension Possible and to Be Expected. In the chapter in which the region lying tributary to the upper end of the bay and lower river is described, the statement is made as to the area of land which could be irrigated from fresh water basin above the proposed salt water barrier. These areas are as follows:

AREAS IRRIGABLE FROM FRESH WATER BASIN
ABOVE BARRIER

	Marsh	Upland	Total
San Pablo Barrier			
San Pablo Bay	51,000	48,000	99,000
Army Point Barrier			
Suisun Bay	70,000	93,000	163,000
Totals above San Pablo	121,000	141,000	262,000
Delta Region above mouth of river:			
San Joaquin	257,000	58,000	315,000
Sacramento	110,000	33,000	143,000
Grand Total	488,000	232,000	720,000
Of this area, that above Army Point is	437,000	184,000	621,000

Of this area, approximately 360,000 acres are irrigated in the delta region. The areas around Suisun Bay and on San Pablo Bay are surrounded by salt water for so much of the summer that pasture crops alone are grown to a considerable extent.

Following the history of growth of the country, it is reasonable to expect that all of the areas which can be irrigated from this fresh water basin will be irrigated and cultivated as rapidly as the population and increase in markets warrant. The region is close to markets, well supplied with transportation facilities, which will be both by rail and water, has a climate suitable to a great variety of crops, and it would be only natural that such areas would be put to use.

Industrial Growth to be Expected. There is no possible way of predicting what increase there will be in the industrial development except that it will be large and substantial in character. There are many basic industrial activities not represented in this part of the Pacific Coast—industries that will unquestionably settle in this region when a fresh water supply is assured—and there will be a continued and more rapid growth of the ones already on the ground.

Every large industrial region of the world has developed at points where fresh water is abundant and cheap, and where facilities for handling of raw products to factories and carrying the finished products to markets are well established, and the rates to markets are reasonable. San Francisco Bay, being in the geographical center of the Pacific Coast, is the natural point where large factories will locate. The fact that large cities are close at hand, that transportation facilities are established, that power is abundant and cheap where oil pipe lines bring oil from the fields further south, and that the climate is an unusually good one for a manufacturing business, are all important. If there is added to these essential conditions a large fresh water reservoir, there will be no more favorable location for manufacturing. It can be expected that the growth here will be as rapid as in any other part of the country and more rapid than has been true at any time in the past history of the state or Pacific Coast.

WATER REQUIREMENTS OF THE REGION

The present water requirements of the region are supplied from many sources. Richmond, on the upper end of San Pablo Bay, is within the East Bay Municipal Utility District, a public organization engaged in the construction of a water supply system from the Mokelumne River. It is to be expected that this district will purchase the distribution system of the East Bay Water Company now serving the territory, and that it will construct such additional facilities as may be required to supply industrial and domestic requirements of the territory. Water from this system will be costly. The charges of the East Bay Water Company average nearly 30 cents per 1,000 gallons. Little if any reduction in cost can be expected from the Utility District unless a part of the expense is raised as taxes.

The smaller towns, such as Martinez, Port Costa, Benicia, Bay Point, Antioch and Pittsburg, obtain water either from wells or by pumping from the river at fresh water times, or by small storage reservoirs filled during flood or fresh water season. In all of these towns water is high-priced (the average price of water from the Port Costa Water Company is about 27 cents per 1,000 gallons), usually of inferior quality at least some time of the year, and there is no great supply in sight to take care of rapid increase in growth of population. In fact the growth of the territory outside of the Utility District mentioned is to a large extent restricted by its water supply. The Utility District cannot serve the industrial plants on account of the high cost of water.

The construction of a salt water barrier will effectively remove this deterrent to growth, for it will place fresh water of good chemical quality alongside of all of these towns, and with the modern methods of filtration and purification the water will be suitable for domestic or any industrial use. The cost of pumping will be a small part of the cost of water from any other known source.

The industries now established between Oleum and Antioch, on both sides of the straits, use 10 million gallons daily and the use is increasing at the rate of a million gallons daily per year. Enlargements and extensions to these plants will probably increase this rate of growth.

Prediction as to the future is hazardous, as much depends upon whether or not a salt water barrier is built. This structure will greatly stimulate growth of present industries and will encourage the establishment of new ones. It is within the bounds of reason to expect 100 million gallons daily to be used by industries within the next 25 years.

Domestic Supply for Cities and Towns. Water for domestic purposes is higher priced in San Francisco and the East Bay cities than in any other large cities of America. This high price results from the difficulty of securing water in quantities sufficient to take care of the rapid growth of these communities. The same thing may be said of smaller cities along Carquinez Straits. Water for domestic use has been difficult to secure, the price is high, the quality is not good at all times. There is no known way by which small communities can satisfactorily grow unless the water supply is ample for the needs of their growing population.

As an example of this condition, the history of the Benicia Water Company may be cited. This company has made a careful investigation of the possibilities of securing water, has drilled wells for underground investigation, has considered storage possibilities in the hills back of the town, and has finally been required to use river water at such times as this water is available, and to supplement this supply with pumps. During much of the year the community is unable to supply water of a good quality without great difficulty.

On the south side of the straits the water supply for towns of Crockett, Martinez and surrounding territory is provided by the Port Costa Water Company, largely from wells in the neighborhood of Concord. Litigation has restricted the extent to which these wells can be utilized and this community will be faced with the very large expense of going to distant points for a water supply if the growth of the towns continues.

The town of Pittsburg is supplied from wells and, at seasons of the year when the water is fresh, from the San Joaquin River. The limit to the availability of underground waters is in sight and Pittsburg will be placed to great expense to secure a water supply if the growth continues to be as rapid as it has been in the past. Similar conditions prevail at Antioch, where protracted litigation called the attention of the state to the difficulties of this community carrying out its plan of pumping water from the river. Since 1920 Antioch has built a storage reservoir on the slopes to the south of the city, into which fresh water is pumped during the early summer, and stored and used in late summer. The result is that water is more costly and of poor quality for domestic purposes, largely on account of the taste of stored water in open reservoirs in bright sunlight.

The entire industrial areas along Suisun Bay and Carquinez Straits may be said to be restricted in growth on account of the fact that there is no easily obtainable supply of fresh water. The result has been a restricted rate of growth of population and an increase in cost of water to those who are already in the community.

The salt water barrier, to a large extent, will remove these difficulties. If the barrier is located at the San Pablo site, the entire area will be cared for. If it is placed at the Army Point site, the entire region upstream will be on a fresh water lake. The industrial area below the upper end of the straits can then be supplied from a relatively short pipe line heading above the barrier.

The reversal of flow, caused by tides at Sacramento, has endangered the cities' water supply by causing sewage to back upstream. The barrier will prevent this from occurring, as it will raise low water at Sacramento and prevent upstream flow.

SURVEY OF REGION AFFECTED BY SALT WATER

The region affected by salt water includes the area from the lower end of Carquinez Straits upstream to Isleton on the Sacramento River, Wakefield Landing on the San Joaquin, and Mansion House on Old River. It includes Carquinez Straits, Suisun Bay, and approximately one-half of the delta on the San Joaquin and Sacramento rivers. San Pablo Bay is of course affected but salt water is more nearly a natural condition in that body of water. Indirect effects are experienced in all parts of the watershed draining through Carquinez Straits and the Bay region and cities which have commerce with these industrial and agricultural areas. The problem, in fact, is one which interests all of California, for the prosperity of this industrial region and the prospective growth of this country in some measure affect the entire area engaged in agriculture or trade in this part of the Pacific Coast.

The region directly affected by the recent invasion of salt water includes the cities and towns of Oleum, Crockett, Port Costa, Martinez, Bay Point, Pittsburg and Antioch on the south side of the straits and Suisun Bay, and Vallejo and Benicia on the north side. Salt water extends as far upstream as Rio Vista.

The estimated population of these towns and outlying territory is in excess of 30,000.

Industries. The important industries located along the Straits af Carquinez and Suisun Bay are as follows:

INDUSTRIES

CARQUINEZ STRAITS

	Town
Left Bank:	
1—Union Oil Company Refining, casing and shipping petroleum products.	Oleum
2—Selby Smelting & Lead Company Branch of American Smelting & Refining Co. Smelting and refining non-ferrous metals.	Selby
3—California-Hawaiian Sugar Company Sugar refineries, largest in world, 5,000,000 lbs. a day.	Crockett
4—Port Costa Brick Company Makers of brick, etc.	Port Costa
5—Grain Warehouses Storing, cleaning, shipping—principally barley.	Port Costa
6—Petroleum Products Company Petroleum products.	Martinez
7—Mountain Copper Company Copper smelting and refining, fertilizers.	Martinez
8—Shell Oil Company Refining and shipping petroleum products.	Martinez
9—Southern Pacific Company Operating railroad and ferries.	—
Right Bank:	
10—Mare Island Navy Yard Repairs and construction of naval ships.	Vallejo
11—Sperry Flour Company Milling of wheat and other grains.	Vallejo
12—Benicia Barracks and Arsenal U. S. Army stores.	Benicia
13—Kullman-Salz Tannery Leather.	Benicia

Suisun Bay

Left Bank:

	Town
1—Associated Oil Company Refining and packing for shipment petroleum products.	Avon
2—Coos Bay Lumber Company Manufacturing and wholesale lumber; large storage 75,000,000 F. B. M.	Bay Point
3—Pacific Coast Shipbuilding Company Ship building—steel and iron products.	Bay Point
4—General Chemical Company Large manufacturers of heavy chemicals.	Nichol
5—San Francisco & Sacramento Railroad Company	—

Most Important From Pittsburg to Antioch:

6—Booth Cannery Company Canners of fish, fruit and vegetables.	Pittsburg
7—Hickmott Cannery Company Fish, fruit and vegetables.	Pittsburg
8—Paraffine Company Paper board.	Pittsburg
9—Great Western Electro Chemical Company Diversified heavy chemicals.	Pittsburg
10—Redwood Manufacturing Company Redwood pipes and tanks and other products of redwood.	Pittsburg
11—Columbia Steel Company Steel products.	Pittsburg
12—Pioneer Rubber Company General rubber products.	Pittsburg
13—H. W. Johns-Manville Company Magnesium and asbestos building specialties.	Pittsburg
14—Santa Fe Railroad Company	—

Industries in Richmond and along the shores of San Pablo Bay are as follows:

Left Bank—Below Carquinez Straits:

	Town
1—California Cap Company Caps for detonating high explosives.	Stege
2—Stauffer Chemical Company Bulk chemicals from crude ores.	Stege
3—Metropolitan Match Company Matches.	Stege
4—Pullman Manufacturing Company General shops, repairs and construction of cars.	Richmond
5—Santa Fe Railroad Company General shops, repairs and construction of cars.	Richmond
6—Standard Sanitary Mfg. Company Porcelain and enamel plumbing fixtures. Distribution of other porcelain and enamel ware.	Richmond
7—Certainteed Products Company Roofing and paints.	Richmond
8—Republic Steel Package Company Metal containers, principally drums for oil and gasoline.	Richmond

9—Standard Oil Company Refining and shipping of petroleum products.	Richmond Point
10—Philippine Refining Corporation Refining copra and other vegetable oils.	Richmond Point
11—California Wine Association Formerly largest winery in world; industrial alcohol.	Winehaven, Richmond Point
12—Giant Powder Company Dynamite and other explosives.	Giant
13—Hercules Powder Company Dynamite, T.N.T. and other explosives.	Hercules

The majority of these establishments along the Straits and Suisun Bay produce large outputs of material and are in the class ordinarily called "heavy" industries. They produce products essential to modern life both in peace and war times. Steel, iron, petroleum products of all kinds, chemicals, fertilizers, powder and fuse, leather, brick and tile, flour and feed, lumber and lumber products, ships and boats, sugar, fish and canned goods are produced in very large quantities.

A survey of the plants between Oleum and Antioch shows an annual production in 1927 of products valued at $250,000,000. The increase in annual output is large and the growth has been regular. The first large factory to establish in this territory was the Sugar Company in 1907. The period up to 1920 was an active one in growth, but since salt water troubles became so prominent only one new plant of large size has located here.

Freight in and out of this district by rail and water, directly attributable to these plants, approximated 14,000,000 tons in 1927. Three railroad systems serve the territory. Vessels, both river and ocean-going, handle much freight. Oil pipe lines from the fields in the San Joaquin Valley deliver oil to the refineries, to large tank farms for storage, and to vessels.

Expenditure for electric power by these industries was $800,000 in 1927. Electric power is furnished by the Pacific Gas and Electric Company and the Great Western Power Company. The use of power increases every year. Power rates are the same as in the Bay cities.

In 1927 these plants employed on an average of 8500 persons, the annual payroll amounting to $15,000,000. Comparatively little seasonal employment is found—most of the factories run fairly constantly through the year. The population dependent upon the factories, using a ratio of 4 to 1, is 34,000.

The industrial territory on San Pablo Bay below Oleum, in Contra Costa County, is nearly as large as the district described above. If the entire waterfront area in Contra Costa County is considered, we find the annual products to be $515,000,000; the number of employees to be 17,000; the annual payroll $29,000,000.

The industries between Oleum and Antioch now use 10,000,000 gallons of water a day. The annual increase is 10 per cent or a million gallons a day. All of this water is pumped from tide water level when there is fresh water in the stream, but some of the factories use wells during the salt water period. Draft upon the ground water is causing a change in the quality of many wells by drawing in salt water. There is a definite limit to the amount of water which may be drawn from underground sources, and it is apparent that this limit has been reached.

Factories engaged in the production of large quantities of "heavy" products ordinarily locate where fresh water is abundant and can be had at the cost of pumping. New plants seldom locate under any other conditions and when there is a choice between localities, the one where water is abundant and cheap is selected, providing the other factors which control locations are the same. There is only one place on the coast of California where such conditions existed in the past—the upper bay and lower river country. Industries now located there expected to obtain water by pumping direct from tide levels, and the change brought about by the invasion of salt water has added to expense of operation and has discouraged increase in plants which involve increased use of water.

There is great need of restoration of the favorable conditions of fresh water which formerly existed in this region. New industrial establishments will be attracted by abundant fresh water. If California does not provide such facilities, northern cities will offer greater inducements and many industries will locate Pacific Coast branches in these northern cities. There are in these other states large areas of land where pure, fresh water is abundant and may be had for the cost of pumping from permanent lakes or streams.

Rates for water in California cities are higher than in the north, as is shown in the following table:

COST OF 500,000 GALLONS OF WATER PER MONTH

San Francisco	$157.56
Oakland	161.71
Los Angeles	72.16
Stockton	54.50
Portland	44.11
Seattle	32.94

The recent disaster to Los Angeles' St. Francis Dam will probably result in an increase in water rates in that city. Proposals have been made to increase the base rate from 5 cents per 100 cubic feet to 18 cents. If this proposal is carried into effect, the rate for 500,000 gallons in the above table will be nearly $120.

Hardness of water is another factor in which northern cities have an advantage over the public supplies in California cities. Hardness is undesirable in water for either domestic or industrial uses—in some classes of industries hard water must be treated before use.

The comparison below will show the relative hardness of public water supplies of Pacific Coast cities:

HARDNESS IN CITY WATER SUPPLIES

Hardness as Calcium Carbonate, Parts Per Million.

(From Water Supply Paper 496)

	Maximum	Minimum	Average	
San Francisco	166	83		
Oakland			181	Reservoir and wells.
Stockton			560	Wells.
Sacramento			60	River.
Los Angeles			163	Owens River.
			251	Los Angeles River.
Portland, Oregon	22	6	9	
Seattle, Washington	33	14	23	

The supply of Sacramento approximates the hardness of water that will be retained above a salt water barrier. The quality of water reservoired above the barrier will be better than any other city supply in California shown.

Hardness may be partly removed from water in modern purification plants. At Columbus, Ohio, water with average hardness of 272 parts per million was reduced to 97 parts at a cost of treatment of 2.45 cents per 1,000 gallons. (Proceedings of American Society of Civil Engineers, February, 1928.)

One of the needs of California today is a fresh water reservoir around which factories can be located with assurance of a permanent supply of pure water. Probably no single accomplishment in the construction program now under discussion will do more toward the general progress of the state. More factories mean greater population and more local markets for agricultural produce and amelioration of the general level of prosperity of the state.

A salt water barrier at San Pablo or Army Point will remove the obstacle now deterring the location of new industries in this region. It will remove the cause of added expense to the present plants and will encourage their more rapid growth.

Besides great quantities of water, large industries require cheap power, efficient transportation facilities, both by rail and water, and a good climate attractive to labor. The lower river and upper bay region lack only water. The salt water barrier will supply this single deficiency. If the barrier is not built, California, without doubt, will lose many important factories.

Shipping Interests. San Francisco Bay and the rivers drained through Carquinez Strait are used by boats engaged in river and bay traffic as well as ocean-going vessels. At the present time there is a large amount of river and bay traffic between Stockton, Sacramento and numerous delta landings and the cities around the bay. During parts of the year the river traffic extends beyond Sacramento and upstream from Stockton. Ocean-going vessels land at Carquinez Straits' points, Bay Point, Pittsburg and intermediate ports. Traffic by water is on the increase.

Tables 6, 7 and 8, in this report, give the tonnage and value of freight carried by water.

Projects for the improvement of navigation above Carquinez Strait have been approved by Congress and the work of acquiring rights-of-way in preparation for dredging is nearly completed. Two projects have been approved: First, the dredging of the channel through Suisun Bay to provide 26 feet of water for navigation purposes through this bay, and second, the Stockton deep channel which will provide 26 feet of water to Stockton.

Projects for deepening and regulating water depths for Sacramento River navigation are under consideration. A system of dams for controlling levels at low flow has been proposed, though not yet adopted by act of Congress. The present project provides 7 feet of water to Sacramento, 4 feet to Colusa, and with provision for 3 feet as far upstream as Chico Landing. Practical navigation upon the upper San Joaquin is now limited to the head of tide water, though if the project of the state for canalization of the San Joaquin under the "Coordinated Plan for Development of Water Resources" is carried out, navigation will be practical to points far above any places recently reached by boats.

Water transportation is available to all of the islands and reclaimed lands in the delta region, and nearly all of the agricultural produce grown in this country is shipped to market by boat.

Tides, currents and salt water phenomena in the upper bay and lower river region are important to shipping interests for several reasons: First and foremost is the fact that the presence of salt water has retarded growth and, if continued, will decrease the agricultural productivity of this region. Second, and no less important to shipping interests, is the fact that the industrial region along Suisun Bay and Carquinez Strait is held back in its natural growth by the menace of salt water. The water-carried tonnage in and out of this industrial area is large and is on the increase. The completion of the deep water channel will give a stimulus to commerce by water.

The natural result of a salt water barrier would be to increase very rapidly the industrial territory and there would be, in consequence, much more freight to be moved, a larger population to be served, and a tremendous increase in shipping. The effect will be noticeable on both bay and river boats and upon ocean-going traffic.

The plans for a salt water barrier provide for locks so that vessels may have uninterrupted access to the fresh water basin above the barrier. As discussed later, the Young report considers thoroughly the shipping business and the plans provide for locks of at least two sizes—one for small vessels and the second for large vessels. Locks are designed to provide for future increase in traffic, both in size and amount of traffic and depth of drafts.

Tides and currents now cause a loss of time to the shipping interests and necessitate special provisions and greater care in the handling of vessels, particularly in the rapid currents in the Carquinez Strait region. A barrier will provide for a constant water level above the structure except during periods of flood, which will reduce the currents to one direction only, and that downstream, and will facilitate the movement of vessels by reducing the time now consumed by bucking adverse currents. The ability to dock without currents is an additional value to ships.

It is generally agreed by navigation interests that there is some benefit in sea-going vessels docking in fresh water, in the destruction of growths of salt water which cling to the bottoms of the vessels and reduce their speed. Ocean-going shipping entering the fresh water basin above the barrier will have the benefit of this condition.

Sediment carried by the river waters into Suisun and San Pablo Bays adds to the difficulties of navigation and causes annual expenses in its removal. Debris from hydraulic mining is one of the principal sources of such hindrances to navigation. The rivers which enter Suisun Bay bring to salt water each year a portion of the debris deposited in stream channels in years of unrestricted mining. From the best information available, it is probable that the peak of movement of debris has passed out of the rivers and is moving through Suisun and San Pablo bays en route to the ocean.

What effect the salt water barrier will have on the movement is important from the standpoint of navigation interests. Studies which furnish information on the problem have been made several times in the past twenty-five years. The brief statement below discusses these investigations.

In 1906 the writer, then in the employ of the United States Reclamation Service, made a study of the sediment carried by many important streams in the West. The results are in part published in Water Supply Papers Nos. 274 and 237. The investigation had in part the determination of the amount of sediment carried in streams that might be lodged in storage reservoirs. At the time this study was undertaken, experimental work was carried on to determine methods of field and laboratory work. Sampling apparatus was designed and tested to permit the collection of samples at any depth. The use of this apparatus indicated that the problem resolved itself into two phases—suspended silt and sand rolled along the bottom. The suspended silt was found to be very fine and to remain in suspension a long time. It is moved as the water moves and in the tidal portions of the stream remains in suspension during the tidal movements.

Samples collected daily during 1906, a 125 per cent runoff year with heavy floods, gave an average silt content (weighted for flow) of 64.5 parts per million by weight or, for silt weighing 80 pounds per cubic foot, 0.081 cubic yards per acre foot. In 1908, a 67 per cent runoff year, the average silt content was 85 parts per million by weight or 0.106 cubic yards per acre foot. The total suspended silt in 1906 was 2,300,000 cubic yards; in 1908 it was 1,550,000 cubic yards.

The greater part of this material continues in suspension until the bay is reached, where slow currents permit a part of it to drop to the bottom. Flocculation from salt water to some extent encourages the deposition.

A salt water barrier will have the effect of improving conditions as affected by the deposition of the suspended silt. Fresh water above the barrier will remove the effect of salt water flocculation above the structure and there will be a greater tendency for the silt to be carried lower than under present conditions. As it is now, the flocculation commences in Suisun Bay or at the first point where fresh water and salt water mix. Eighty per cent of the sediment is carried in the flood months, at times when the barrier gates will be opened and the current above the barrier is highest. In these periods the tendency will be for sediment to be carried through the barrier with less deposition in Suisun Bay than under natural conditions.

Below the barrier, where fresh and salt water mix, there will be the same tendency for deposition and flocculation that now exists, the only important difference being the decreased tidal movements due to the barrier. There is no reason to expect any great change in conditions from those now found. Sediment moves to a large extent in flood periods, so that any accumulations which are deposited in low flow periods or in years of light runoff are swept away in flood years. Fine sediment which enters the streams probably will not greatly change in amount in future years, as the fine materials originating in former hydraulic mining operations are on the decrease. Storage reservoirs on the headwaters will tend to trap sediment and further reduce the load that will arrive at tide waters. On the whole, the barrier will probably benefit rather than harm the navigation interests so far as it affects suspended silt.

Sand and coarse debris rolled along the stream bottom make up an important but unknown part of the total stream load of sediment. Estimates by the writer, made in 1905, indicated that the equivalent of from 10 to 20 per cent of the suspended load was carried along the bottom. In a recent study of silt in the Colorado River (U. S. Dept. of Agriculture Technical Bulletin No. 67), the estimate is made that in that stream 80 per cent of the silt is in suspension and 20 per cent carried as bed load. Though the actual quantity may be in doubt, there is no question but that the stream bed at Sacramento and below has been lowering in recent years—an indication that the burden of debris from the old hydraulic mines is decreasing.

Sand and gravel along the stream bed do not move at ordinary flows but only when the stream is in flood. The barrier, therefore, will have little or no retarding effect upon the movement of sediment carried along the bed, for in times of flood the flow in all practical consideration will be unobstructed and the downstream velocity will be practically the same as without the barrier. The bed load will move as it now does, or at least will move as it would do if the barrier were not present.

Structures in Water. The teredo and other varieties of marine life which destroy wood have been noticeably active in San Francisco Bay and adjoining waters since about 1914. Prior to that time all wharves, docks and other structures in water in the upper bay country were built of untreated piles and the lives of the structures were very long. About 1914 the teredo became active and in the dry years which followed 1917 practically all wood structures in water below Antioch were destroyed. The Marine Piling Committee estimates that $25,000,000 damage was done in this period. Of this sum several million dollars represent damages in the territory upstream from Richmond. Here the invasion of the teredo is encouraged on account of the encroachment of salt water. In earlier periods fresh water was present each year long enough to prevent wood-destroying animals establishing themselves.

Many of these structures have not yet been replaced. Those which have been replaced have been largely of creosote or other treated piling at an additional cost over untreated timber. No form of treatment gives permanent protection but reduces the activities of boring animals and lengthens the life of timber.

The cost of structures built of timber is, therefore, greatly increased over what it was prior to the invasion of salt water in the upper bay. Where concrete is used an additional increase in cost also occurs, for concrete to be placed in sea water has to be of much better quality than concrete suitable for fresh water conditions. The ordinary mix of concrete for sea water contains approximately two-thirds of a barrel of cement per cubic yard in excess of that considered good quality for fresh water conditions. On this account alone concrete work costs at least $2.00 a yard more, due to the salt water invasion.

Under the present conditions, all future structures to be erected in this region must be built to resist teredo and other boring animals and salt water. The increased cost of wharves, docks, bulkheads, and all similar structures in water, will approximate 20 to 25 per cent more than if fresh water were present. The construction of a barrier to prevent the encroachment of salt water will greatly simplify such construction work and will reduce the cost under present conditions.

Corrosion of Pumps, Piping and Equipment from Salt Water. Steel and iron are corroded more rapidly in brackish or salt water than in fresh water. Experiments indicate that unpainted steel or iron lasts from two to ten times as long in fresh water as in brackish or salt water. This means that all gates, pipes, pumps and other parts of structures in water, or in industrial establishments where water is used, must be painted frequently or they will corrode more rapidly, require more frequent replacement, and cost more to operate than where fresh water is present. In the large industries, such as oil refineries, steel mills and plants where large amounts of cooling water are used, this becomes a very important factor.

Accurate estimates of the cost of salt water due to corrosion alone are difficult to make. Mr. C. W. Schedler, of the Great Western Electro Chemical Company of Pittsburg, California, estimates that there is a minimum of three million dollars' worth of equipment located in the plants between Crockett and Antioch being seriously depreciated by the presence of salt water. The normal life of this equipment is twenty years, or a depreciation of $150,000 a year. Mr. Schedler estimates that the salt water conditions of 1924 caused a depreciation twice as fast as ordinarily. The loss between Crockett and Antioch in that year is a cash loss of $150,000.

Conditions nearly as bad as 1924, so far as these industries are concerned, occurred in 1920 and again in 1926, and in each of the years between there is some

increase in corrosion from salt water. Conditions in the future offer little promise of improvement, and the probability is that unless a barrier is constructed the present industrial plants alone, without consideration of future extensions or new plants, will suffer an annual loss from salt water in excess of that experienced in the past.

Estimates by the writer in the territory from Oleum to Antioch, on both sides of the channel, indicate a loss from salt water corrosion in excess of that made by Mr. Schedler. The writer is of the opinion that the average annual loss approximates $300,000 a year in the plants now operating.

Railroads. The natural and most feasible direction of travel north to south is across Carquinez Strait for both vehicular and rail traffic. At the present time all railroad transportation is handled by boats. Four lines of boats carry freight and passengers across this waterway. A year ago the first bridge was built—that across Carquinez Strait—for vehicular traffic only.

The Southern Pacific Company, the greatest railroad system in California, has studied a plan of bridging Carquinez Strait for many years. It is understood that a more active study of this problem is now going on than in any time in the past, and that prospects are good for the railroad to carry out such a development.

The San Francisco-Sacramento Railroad, which crosses the channel near the upper end of Suisun Bay, at one time acquired a permit to build a bridge at this point. The traffic carried by the company did not warrant such a heavy expenditure at that time, but recently the control of this road has been acquired by the Western Pacific Railroad Company, and it is likely that a large development of this transportation company will take place in the near future.

Any barrier built to hold back tide water can be easily arranged to act as a bridge for rail and vehicular traffic. In the Young report, a part of which is quoted later, estimates of the cost of providing such a barrier with a bridge are given.

Two applications have been recently filed with the County Board of Supervisors of Contra Costa County for a bridge permit across the bay region in the neighborhood of Richmond, the estimated costs being from $9,000,000 to nearly $20,000,000.

Should the barrier be built at San Pablo Point, it can serve there all present and probably future transportation needs. A barrier in Carquinez Straits, either at Army Point or Dillon Point, will be available for rail transportation and when the present bridge facilities are outgrown it may be used for vehicular traffic.

Mr. Herbert Benjamin, of the Southern Pacific Company, stated before the Joint Legislative Committee on April 16, 1928, that his company had made plans for a bridge between Bulls Head and Army Point, and that the cost, including approaches, was estimated to be less than $10,000,000. The bridge was designed to give clearance of 70 feet. Application for permit had not been formally made to the War Department.

The site selected for this bridge is one of the sites investigated by Young, and any bridge built for the railroad would prevent its use as a site for a salt water barrier. It is highly advisable that full consideration be given of the barrier problem before any bridge permit is let for this location. The barrier can be made to serve as a bridge and the advantages of the double use are apparent. If the barrier is built to accommodate both rail and vehicular traffic and a proper allowance made for this service, the net cost to other interests can be lowered. This phase of the question is discussed later in this report.

Ferries. The ferry from Benicia to Port Costa, now operated to care for vehicles, could be replaced by a barrier at Army Point or Dillon Point. The ferry now operating from Richmond to Point San Quentin could readily be replaced by a barrier at San Pablo Point. This slow method of crossing the water barrier can be replaced by a modern bridge, with little delay in traffic and with cost not greater than the present ferry charges. The automobile registration in California is on the increase and travel across the straits will be greatly stimulated by a bridge. There is no certain method of determining this quantity.

Local Shipping. The tonnage and value of local shipping on the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers are given in attached tables. It will be seen that there has been a nearly constant increase in freight, except during the period of, and following, the World War. At present 2,100,000 tons of a value of $140,000,000 are carried yearly.

The increase in shipping which will follow the construction of a barrier against salt water will benefit local shipping. As shown elsewhere, the advantages of the barrier will offset the disadvantages, and on the whole greatly benefit shipping.

Ocean-borne Traffic. Ocean-borne traffic is varied, though lumber and petroleum products make up the greater part of the business. The tables attached show the volume of business in Suisun Bay to be about 2½ million tons, valued at over $40,000,000; for Carquinez Straits 4 to 5 million tons valued at $100,000,000 to $150,000,000; San Pablo Bay 4 million tons valued at over $60,000,000.

Increases in ocean-borne traffic will follow the building of a barrier and completion of a deep water channel to Stockton. The stimulation to industrial production will greatly increase traffic for all classes of vessels. Ocean shipping will benefit by the ability to dock in fresh water without the menace now caused by tidal currents. Fresh water tends to cleanse ocean vessels of growths which retard movement.

The menace to shipping in passing through locks is so small that no additional insurance is charged to vessels which use locks. The safeguards to navigation, now provided around locks, greatly reduce the danger in using them. Periods of fog are the times of greatest difficulty. The removal of ferry traffic across the straits at Benicia will probably offset the dangers due to navigating through locks in foggy weather.

SOLUTIONS OF THE SALT WATER PROBLEM

Several solutions of the salt water problems may be suggested:

1. Salt water barrier.
2. Storage and release.
3. Fresh water brought in by conduits or pipes.

The first is the only complete and the most satisfactory method of solving the problem. The Young report best describes the barrier and its effects upon the territory.

The Young Report. Mr. Walker R. Young, Construction Engineer, U. S. Bureau of Reclamation, has written a "Report on Salt Water Barrier—California, Below the Confluence of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers." This report is dated August 27, 1927, and was made by the U. S. Bureau of Reclamation in cooperation with the California State Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation, and Sacramento Development Association.

The report consists of a volume of 405 pages of discussion and descriptive matter, a volume of 592 pages of exhibits and tabulations, a portfolio volume of drawings and diagrams, and three volumes giving records of borings at various sites. The work described in these volumes extended over a period in excess of three years, or from January, 1924, to the date of completion.

A large amount of field work was done as a basis for office studies. The investigations include all problems that affect the construction or operation of the structure.

In his report Mr. Young describes in detail the various investigations he has made concerning the salt water problem. He presents sixteen preliminary designs and estimates with three alternatives "in order that they may be readily available in the economic study which is considered necessary in the final determination of the feasibility of the barrier." He made "no attempt to study the economic aspect of the problem other than to enumerate the advantages and disadvantages, as such a study was not considered within the scope of this (his) report." The report, therefore, is an engineering study of the barrier so far as concerns its physical feasibility.

The report determines what kind of a barrier should be built to accomplish its purpose, and presents a large amount of data to show its bearing upon various activities which will be affected by it. Four sites were investigated and the merits and objections to each are set forth in detail, but no final recommendation as to a site is made.

The following quotation from this report gives in condensed form the essentials included therein:

"SUMMARY OF RESULTS

"*General.* The studies made lead to the conclusion that it is physically feasible to construct a salt water barrier at any one of the sites investigated, but at great expense; and that it will be effective in controlling the salinity of the reservoir impounded above it. Not only will it protect the delta and industrial plants along the shores of the bays, but its construction will result in the conservation of a large part of the fresh water required to act as a natural barrier against invasion of water under present conditions.

"Without the barrier, salinity conditions will become more acute unless mountain storage is provided to be released during periods of low river discharge to act as a natural barrier against invasion of salt water. The amount estimated as necessary to act as a natural barrier was in excess of the flow in the Sacramento River above Red Bluff in 1924, and Red Bluff is located above the points of diversion of water used in irrigating the Sacramento Valley.

"The sites selected for development by drilling are considered geologically satisfactory for the type of structure proposed. Although preliminary designs and estimates are presented for four sites, there are only two general plans involved. A barrier, if constructed at the Army Point, Benicia, or Dillon Point site, would create a body of fresh water in Suisun Bay and in the delta channels, while a barrier at the Point San Pablo site would include San Pablo Bay as well.

"*Type of Dam Proposed.* The type of structure to which principal consideration is given is one in which the ship locks and flood gates are located at one side upon rock foundations, the closure of the present waterway being effected by means of an earth and rock fill dam to be brought up to its designed height after completion of the ship locks and flood gate structure. In another type studied the flood gates form the closure between concrete piers sunk to bed rock foundations in the present waterway by the open caisson method. Both types have been designed with and without provision for carrying a railroad and highway.

"The passage of floods is probably the most important problem since it involves the safety of the delta levee system. It would be desirable, if practicable, to provide gate area equivalent to, or slightly in excess of, the present waterway area in order that conditions of flow might remain unchanged, but the accomplishment of this plan would be very costly, if not altogether infeasible.

"In the design of the structure, advantage is taken of the difference in the elevation of water surface which it is possible to create above and below the barrier to discharge flood water. On account of the fluctuating head, resulting from tides on the downstream side, the discharge through the flood gates will vary from a maximum at low tide to a minimum at high tide. The reservoir above the barrier, therefore, will function as a basin in which the river discharge in excess of the flow through the flood gates at high tide is stored to be discharged at a rate in excess of the river discharge during low tide.

"The flood gates are of the Stoney roller type with sills depressed to 50 or 70 feet below sea level in order better to control the salinity of the water behind the barrier as explained in Chapter IX. In operation, the gates would be raised clear of the water surface as required to allow free passage of the floods. As the flood receded the gates would be lowered, one at a time, as necessary to maintain the water surface above the barrier at any predetermined elevation.

"The requirements for passing vessels through the barrier is an important consideration irrespective of where it might be located, but particularly, if located below Mare Island Navy Yard. In the designs proposed, ship locks have been provided in number to care for considerable growth in water-borne commerce, and in size to pass the largest ships likely to navigate the waters above the barrier.

"In some of the designs for the Army Point site, the ship locks would be constructed away from the flood gates, which, of course, would be advantageous for shipping during the passage of great floods from the rivers, but these are rare and considerable study would be required before it could be determined whether the advantage thus gained would offset the advantage of having the large salt water sump adjacent to the ship locks where the salt water entering the fresh water reservoir through the locks could be caught and returned to the salt water side. It is possible that the design with the ship locks and flood gates separated would be even more efficient in controlling salinity, but this is doubtful. The plan at the Army Point site in which the structures are separated interferes least with the plant of the Mountain Copper Company and results in economy otherwise.

"In the designs including a railroad and highway bridge across the locks these have been placed at an elevation to permit a large proportion of vessels using the locks to pass underneath without opening or lifting the bridges. In one design at the Dillon Point site, the clearance is made sufficient to pass

large ships without the necessity of moving bridges. Adequate clearance will be more important 25 years hence than at present on account of the increase to be expected in commerce.

"A fish ladder is provided in one of the ship lock walls and provision is made for relieving salinity above the barrier by pumping salt water from that side in an emergency. The design of the structure is discussed in Chapter IV.

"*Estimated Cost.* Following is a table showing the estimated cost of the barrier at each of the sites investigated. It should be noted, particularly, that the estimates for the Benicia site are based upon assumed foundation conditions since the site was not developed by drilling as were the other three sites. No attempt will be made to analyze the costs, as such an analysis would be quite involved and of no particular value. Conclusions as to the desirable plan can be arrived at best by balancing the estimated costs against the features of the design as shown on the general plans referred to in the table, and to other drawings contained in Volume IV. Estimate No. 13 is unique in that Carquinez Strait, for its full width, is taken advantage of in providing an extra large flood gate area, and the railroad and highway bridges are placed at the elevation required to avoid the necessity of lifting bridges to allow the passage of vessels.

"The preliminary estimates are believed to be conservative. Refinements in the final designs will undoubtedly result in reduction of quantities. All construction materials are readily available in large quantities and can be brought to any of the sites investigated by rail or water. Large manufacturing plants, foundries and machine shops are located nearby, all tending toward low unit costs. The estimates of cost are based upon present prices of material and labor. Should these change materially it will, of course, be necessary to make adjustments in the estimates.

"The benefits to be derived from the construction of the barrier are believed to be commensurate with the cost but an economic study of the situation must precede the adjustment of the cost of the barrier for the reason that so many interests will be directly affected—beneficially or otherwise. The true value of the project can be determined and a decision reached as to who should contribute to the cost thereof only after such a study has been completed.

"*Tides and Floods.* The most critical condition to be met is a combination of a large flood from the rivers, a storm on the ocean tending to pile up the water driven through the Golden Gate in the bays, and an unusually high tide. An analysis of past floods leads to the conclusion that provision should be made for the passage through the barrier of not less than 750,000 second feet.

"According to computations made the effect of a barrier of the type proposed at the Army Point site would be to raise the water surface immediately above the structure 0.7 of a foot with a discharge of 750,000 second feet. The effect would be felt less at the mouth of the rivers as a result of the smoothing out of irregularities by the reservoir created. The studies indicate that if a 750,000 second foot flood from the rivers should coincide with a tide reaching the maximum height records at Army Point in 1909, but otherwise similar to the high tides of January 24 and 25, 1914, the elevation of extreme high water (8.5 feet above mean sea level) at Collinsville, computed by the Flood Control bodies of the State, would not be exceeded.

"It is probable that the rise in water surface at Collinsville, due to a barrier at the Point San Pablo site with equivalent gate area, would be less than if located at the Army Point site, but it would not be safe to reduce the gate area at Point San Pablo for the reason that extreme tides through the Golden Gate are more effective near the gate as evidenced by the fact that the tide of November 18, 1918, at Presidio, was 0.7 feet higher than that of January 25, 1914, at which time the maximum elevation of water surface at Suisun City was reached.

"At the Army Point and Dillon Point sites the ship locks are considered effective in passing extremely large floods but they are not considered available at the Point San Pablo site because of the greater necessity for keeping the locks open to navigation at that site, even during great floods.

"The effect of a barrier at the Army Point site would be to reduce the tidal volume passing the Golden Gate by less than 8% in comparison with about 35% if it were built at the Point San Pablo site. The occurrence of frequent high tides in the bays due to piling up of water in them as a result of storms on the ocean would be to eliminate through construction of a barrier at any one of the sites investigated. The effect on the elevations of tides below the structure would be to raise them slightly according to the U. S. Coast & Geodetic Survey.

"*Navigation and Bridge Traffic.* Any plan for the control of salinity involving the construction of a dam across the bay or river channels must be coordinated with the requirements of navigation.

"Ship locks are provided in number and size to meet the requirements of the present and immediate future. Provision for ultimate traffic at the time the barrier is constructed does not seem necessary since flood control on the upper rivers will improve to permit the replacement of flood gates by ship locks as the need for them develops. A summary of the operation as it would have occurred on July 6 and 7, 1925, is shown in Table 6-33.

"Although railroad and highway bridges are contemplated in most of the designs they are not regarded as indispensable and are omitted in some in anticipation of indifference on the part of railroad and highway interests toward the opportunities afforded by the barrier. In the studies made it is considered that traffic over them is subject at all times to the convenience to navigation. The bridges are designed to give a vertical channel of 50 feet above high water when in the lowered position and 135 feet when raised. The interruptions to bridge traffic, as they would have been on July 6 and 7, 1925, are summarized in Table 6-40.

"An examination of Plates 2-3 and 2-4, showing depths in San Pablo and Suisun Bays, will indicate the limitations placed upon commerce under present tidal conditions. If the elevation of the water surface above the barrier were maintained at about 2½ feet above mean sea level, a constant depth equivalent to that at mean high tide under present conditions, would be obtained. Uncertain and varying tidal currents would be eliminated above the barrier and they would be reduced in velocity below. The maintenance of a permanent water level would not only be convenient for navigators but would be a material benefit to owners of wharf property above the barrier.

"The farther downstream the barrier is located the more it will interfere with shipping. Locking requirements can be satisfied with least expense at the Army Point site and conditions are most unfavorable at the Point San Pablo site.

"The construction of a barrier at the Point San Pablo site probably would be looked upon with disfavor by the Navy Department for the reason that it would restrict free navigation through San Pablo Bay to the Mare Island Navy Yard by the necessity of passing war vessels through ship locks. This objection does not apply to the Dillon Point, Benicia or Army Point sites.

"*Storage in the Delta Channels and Bays.* For convenience the calculated storage in the tidal prism above each barrier site, between elevations —3.6 and +6.4 U. S. G. S. Datum (0 and 10, U. S. Engineer Datum) has been summarized in Table 7-2, Volume II.

"*Silt.* The problem has been attacked with the idea that any structure that would be detrimental to San Francisco Harbor would be looked upon with disfavor by those in jurisdiction. The investigation has not definitely determined the effect of a barrier upon silting. Conclusions must, therefore, take the form of conjecture until studies more comprehensive than it was possible to make in this investigation have been completed.

"The construction of a barrier at any one of the sites investigated may possibly have a beneficial effect upon the Golden Gate bar rather than detrimental. The movement of silt toward San Francisco Bay will be checked by the construction of a barrier at Army Point, Benicia, or Dillon Point. A beneficial effect upon the Pinole Shoal will result through the construction of a barrier at Army Point or Point San Pablo. The effect upon Pinole Shoal of a barrier at Dillon Point is at present indeterminate, as is also the effect on silting in San Francisco Bay of a barrier at Point San Pablo.

"Whether the scouring action of the tidal current tends to maintain or destroy fixed channels in the bay system remains to be determined. Should shoaling occur it will be comparatively small in amount and the channels can readily be maintained by dredging, perhaps with less effort and expense than without the barrier. Dredged material pumped into the marshes would build them up and improve their fertility.

"*Salinity.* In years of normal river discharge there is no salinity problem in the delta. It is menacing for a few days in the fall only but, considering the marshes surrounding the upper bays and the towns and industrial plants along their shores, the encroachment of salt water presents a serious problem almost every year.

"Conflict between irrigation interests in the upper valleys and in the delta region never will occur in years of large run-off for the reason that in the development of storage the construction of expensive reservoirs to hold the excessive run-off from the drainage area, occurring only once in a number of years, will not be practicable even though sufficient reservoir sites in which to store all of the run-off were available.

"The introduction of salt water into the fresh water lake through the ship locks can not be prevented but means are provided for drawing off this salt water and thereby controlling the salinity of the water up-stream from the barrier.

"Leakage of salt water past the flood gates, although comparatively small in amount, can be prevented by maintaining the water surface above the barrier at a higher elevation than below.

"Deep gates, opening from the bottom, are essential to the successful operation of the barrier for dependence is placed upon them as a means of drawing off the heavier salt water which seeks the deep holes and channels, and for flushing out the reservoir above the barrier.

"Unless fresh water is available for occasional flushing, the reservoir above the barrier will gradually become salty. Flushing can be accomplished quite readily if water is available for that purpose. The studies of water supply, although based on meager data, indicate that in normal years there will be from eleven to twelve million acre feet available for that purpose. In years of deficient water supply there will be little, if any, fresh water available for flushing and the reservoir above the barrier may have to hold over one or more years without flushing.

"*Return Flow.* Return flow will increase with irrigation development in the upper valleys with the result that the salt menace in the delta will be alleviated; but, even though the return flow should increase to the 3500 second feet estimated to be sufficient to act as a natural barrier against encroachment of salt water, the demand for water will be such that it could not be used for that purpose unless it is replaced by water from mountain storage.

"*Control of Salinity by Storage in Mountain Reservoirs.* Salinity in the delta can be controlled through construction of storage reservoirs in the mountains from which water could be released during the season of low river discharge in the amount necessary to act as a natural barrier against invasions of salt water. Mountain storage would be a temporary expedient for the reason that, ultimately, there will be use for all of the available flow from the rivers, and the discharge into Suisun Bay and thence to the ocean, of water sufficient to act as a natural barrier against salt, would be an economic waste. However, storage created in mountain reservoirs constructed mainly for other purposes might be used for some time to control the salinity in the upper bays and delta channels during development of the requirement for full use of the reservoirs for the purpose for which they were primarily constructed, thus deferring the large investment in the salt water barrier.

"*Teredo.* The factor of salinity is one of fundamental importance in the distribution of teredo. The average lethal salinity for teredo navalis, the species to be feared most in the upper bays, has been determined experimentally as 5 parts per 1000; therefore, if the water above the barrier is maintained at a concentration below the limit for irrigation use teredo can not exist there.

"*Fish.* Fishing industries above the barrier, if constructed, should not suffer for the reason that, even though the fish ladder, which is an integral part of the structure, should fail to function, the fish would not be prevented from entering the fresh water reservoir because they would have free accesss to it through the ship locks which, under normal conditions, would be operated many times throughout each day and night.

"*Sewage.* No investigation was made of the effect of the barrier upon sewage, but from investigations made elsewhere it appears that fresh water will be better adapted for receiving sewage than either salt or brackish water since, gallon for gallon, fresh water disposed in a normal manner of more sewage than salt water. It will be best, in this respect, to keep the water above the barrier fresh because the intermittent admission of salt water interferes with bacterial, animal and vegetable growths that effectively aid in taking care of and digesting sewage.

"*Use of Water in Operation of the Barrier.* The seven main sources of loss of fresh water accompanying the operation of the barrier are evaporation from the water surface of the reservoir created; water required for the operation of the ship locks; leakage around the flood gates; water used in operating the fish ladder; and water to supply the requirements of industries, municipalities and possibly irrigation. With the exception of losses past the flood gates and through the fish ladder, which are constant for the same type of structure, the losses increase as the barrier is moved downstream and this factor has an important bearing upon the selection of a site.

"Owing to the increasing difficulty of maintaining the reservoir created by the barrier free from salt water as the water surface is permitted to fall, and because of navigation requirements, it probably will not be advisable to allow the water surface to fall below mean sea level. Likewise, because of the nature of the delta levees and the cost of drainage in that region by pumping, the ultimate maximum allowable water surface for periods of several months' duration may be fixed at 4.0 feet above mean sea level, although later developments may show that this maximum storage level can be increased to 5.0 feet.

"It is not necessary to decide at this time at what elevation the water surface above the barrier should be maintained. To begin with, it should be held at, or a little below, ordinary high tide level. As time goes on the elevation may be raised as experience dictates.

"Water drawn from the fresh water lake for irrigation, domestic and industrial uses, as well as that required in the operation of the ship locks, should be replenished from river flow or mountain storage with the idea of maintaining a constant depth of water for the navigable waterways effected by construction of the barrier. In years of extreme low run-off the water surface could be drawn down to the elevation of mean sea level, or possibly, in an emergency, to the elevation of mean lower water.

"As the water surface behind the barrier is lowered, the cost of maintaining the Delta levee—not considering floods—should become less; the cost of pumping water out of the lake for any use becomes greater; the cost of pumping seepage water would become less; the difficulties of keeping the lake fresh would increase; and the depth of navigable channels affected would become less.

"Ship locks are provided in various sizes in order to economize on the use of fresh water and to prevent entrance into the fresh water lake of larger volumes of salt water than necessary by requiring vessels to use the smallest lock which will accommodate them. Intermediate lock gates are added for the same reason.

"Economy in the use of fresh water in the operation of the ship locks can be effected through the adoption of lock gates divided horizontally at a depth to allow a large portion of the vessels having a shallow craft to pass through the locks without opening the lower half of the gates and it is assumed that this type of construction will be adopted. It is estimated that the resulting annual saving of fresh water, based on an average daily traffic as it was on July 6-7, 1925, would be:

Army Point Site	173,000	Acre Feet
Dillon Point Site	146,000	" "
Point San Pablo Site	295,000	" "

it being assumed that the water surface above the barrier would be maintained at an elevation 2½ feet above mean sea level.

"It will be necessary to flush the reservoir, preferably once each year, to rid it of accumulations of brackish water resulting, principally, through the inability to trap all of the salt water finding its way into the fresh water reservoir from one source or another. The amount of fresh water required cannot be predicted with any degree of accuracy but a study was made of the amount of fresh water available for the operation of the barrier, based upon the assumption that storage in the mountains was well developed. The study is based upon meager data but the results are believed to be indicative.

"From Table 10-13, it is evident that if the maximum height of water surface in the reservoir is restricted to 2½ feet above mean sea level, the water stored in the reservoir thus formed will not be sufficient to operate the barrier at any of the three sites studied during the irrigation season, even in years of heavy run-off, and it will be desirable, therefore, to seek the highest practicable elevation at which to maintain the storage level.

"The shortage due to lack of reservoir capacity increases as the barrier is moved downstream, although the capacity of the reservoir is greater. This is principally due to the greater evaporation, and to the larger requirements of navigation, industries and municipalities.

"As the storage elevation above the barrier is raised the amount of water available for flushing in years of low run-off is decreased. According to Table 10-13, no water would be available in the season 1923-24 for flushing out the reservoir created through construction of a barrier at the Point San Pablo site whether water were impounded to elevation +2.5, +4.0 or +5.0. It appears that, in any case, there would be no flushing water available in 1923-24 if water were stored to elevation +5.0, although in a normal year there would be a large amount available for flushing, regardless of where the barrier is constructed or of the elevation at which the water surface above the barrier is maintained.

"If the above analysis is correct, it may be concluded that since one of the principal objects of the salt water barrier is to conserve fresh water, it will be desirable to maintain the largest practicable storage capacity above the structure. Likewise, it is evident that the farther downstream the location for the barrier is chosen the greater will be the quantity of water required for operation, and the greater will be the shortage during seasons of low run-off. Since the shortage must be supplied from mountain storage in order to maintain sufficient depth for navigation, and to hold the water level at an elevation where the reservoir will not be deluged with salt water whenever the ship locks are opened, it is apparent that consideration of the necessity for conservation of water would require the selection of one of the upstream sites—Army Point, Dillon Point or Benicia, if the latter, upon investigation, is found to be suitable structurally."

Discussion of Young's Report. The summary just given of Young's report gives his main engineering conclusions. As will be seen, the engineering conclusions are as follows:

1. The construction of a salt water barrier is feasible at either San Pablo Point or at one of three sites near the upper end of Carquinez Strait.
2. The barrier can be utilized for both rail and automobile traffic.
3. The cost will depend upon the method of construction. A barrier can be built at Army Point with bridge of 50-foot clearance for $49,800,000; at Benicia for $46,200,000; at Dillon Point for $44,700,000; at Point San Pablo for $75,200,000.
4. The barrier will pass a flood of 750,000 second feet (larger than any flood measured into Suisun Bay) with an estimated raising of water surface of 0.7 of a foot at the barrier, at Army Point, and about 0.55 of a foot at Collinsville. Water levels in the delta under extreme conditions are estimated to be below elevations of high water computed by Flood Control Engineer of the state. With a barrier at Point San Pablo, the raise in water level would be slightly less than at Army Point.
5. The barrier would effectively handle both water transportation through locks and bridge transportation.
6. The barrier would store fresh water and prevent the encroachment of salinity now taking place every summer.
7. The barrier will prevent teredo from working above its location.
8. The barrier can be operated so as not to be a detriment to the fishing industry.
9. The elevation at which water is maintained above the barrier in summer has not been determined. To begin with it should be held a little below ordinary high tide. This point is discussed in more detail in the following pages.
10. Young makes no determination of the economic features of the barrier, nor does he recommend a site.

Two things in connection with Young's conclusions may be given further consideration: first, that return seepage will increase in quantity and ameliorate conditions in the delta, and, second, that water from the Sacramento river may be temporarily carried across the delta for use in the San Joaquin valley by releasing stored water and without the construction of the salt water barrier.

With reference to the first matter, it has been shown that return seepage in the San Joaquin Valley is being recaptured by the pumping plants on the west side of the valley and there is now no benefit from the return seepage to delta lands in late summer. There is no prospect for increase in return flow, in fact the increase in pumping from wells all over the valley and new pumps along the river will decrease that flow.

In the Sacramento valley similar conditions prevail. It is not certain that return seepage on this stream has reached a maximum, because a large area of land close to the river is not yet regularly irrigated. When this land becomes more intensively farmed, it is to be expected that it will utilize to a great extent this very return water and decrease the net amount which reaches the tidal waters. Return flow, therefore, cannot be depended upon, in either river, to improve salt water conditions in the delta.

As to the second matter, it may be said that so long as the tide ebbs and flows there will be the opportunity for salt water to penetrate the delta, just as far or farther than was the case in dry years since 1917. In 1920, 1924 and 1926, salt water went beyond Three Mile Slough, the principal connection between the Sacramento and the San Joaquin deltas. If water were drawn up the San Joaquin, there would be a greater tendency for salt water to penetrate the delta and be drawn southward. It should be remembered, too, that in dry years released water from storage reservoirs is going to be very difficult to deliver past the large areas of riparian lands. The flow of the rivers will undoubtedly be so low that tides will carry salt water beyond Three Mile Slough. Certainly no dependence can be placed upon this method of carrying water across the delta. The barrier is essential to prevent tidal movements and the encroachments of salt water.

ELEVATION OF WATER ABOVE BARRIER

Objection, from owners of delta land, has been raised to the proposal by Young that levels above the barrier might eventually be raised above mean high tide in order that more water might be stored for use by the towns, irrigated area and industries around the lake above the barrier.

Mr. G. A. Atherton, who is probably as thoroughly acquainted with the delta region as any other person, is authority for the statement that a level of 6.0 feet U. S. E. D. (or 2.4 U. S. G. S.) continuously maintained in summer months is as high as can be safely held against the delta levees under present conditions. According to him, to carry water higher would endanger the levees, would increase seepage and pumping, and therefore add greater maintenance cost to the delta land owner. It should be understood that Mr. Atherton has reference to the delta lands where peat predominates.

The answer to this argument is that the delta lands will be surrounded by salt water unless the barrier is built, but the barrier can, and should, be operated so as to do no damage to these peat areas.

There is some uncertainty as to the exact difference between the datum of the two surveys (U. S. G. S. and U. S. E. D.) and the level of tide as indicated by tide tables. U. S. G. S. elevations refer to mean sea level and are based upon a number of years of observation. U. S. E. D. levels are based theoretically upon mean lower low water but practically are taken as 3.6 feet lower than the U. S. G. S. levels. Tide gage levels are theoretically based upon mean lower low water but practically are referred to the elevation of a point on the Presidio tide gage staff in San Francisco. As near as can be determined, the U. S. E. D. and tide table datum planes are not the same, but the U. S. E. D. datum is about 0.63 feet lower. This figure is not exact, however, and for practical purposes it may be assumed that the two are the same. In the delta region the tidal range varies more in different parts of the delta than this variation between the two systems of measurement.

If water is held at 6.0 U. S. E. D., it will be at less than high tide in the central delta. Here the tide rises to over 7.0 feet two or three times a year, and in times of southwest storms it has risen to over 8.0. In 1907, during the flood, the elevation exceeded 10.3. With water held at 6.0 there will be no menace to levees and comparatively little increase in pumping out of seepage water. Furthermore, this elevation will permit the efficient operation of the barrier, for salt water is higher than 6.0 at the Golden Gate less than one per cent of the time, excluding storm and flood periods.

Any increase in height should be made only if it can be done without menace to the island levees. In storm periods water will be held lower than would naturally occur except in the most extreme floods. Reservoirs which have been constructed on nearly all tributaries of the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers will undoubtedly have the effect of reducing the peaks of floods, and there is little likelihood of a repetition of the extremes experienced in 1907, at least such extremes will occur less frequently.

On the whole, the delta lands will be better off with the barrier than without it. The one factor of slightly increased pumping with the summer level held at 6.0 will be more than overbalanced by the freedom from the present menace of salt water.

SELECTION OF SITE FOR BARRIER

Mr. Young in his report sets forth the conditions surrounding the locations investigated as sites for the barrier. The following statement compares the two locations—the three sites investigated near the upper end of Carquinez Strait being treated as one:

Water Supply: Tables attached give the estimated quantities of water required for all uses above the barrier. The quantities here given are estimated uses when all area above the barrier is developed and are liberal figures, with an allowance for flushing to remove salt water let in by ship locks and leakage. The figures show that under these conditions the requirements for the full year are:

Point San Pablo	2,024,000	Acre Feet
Army Point	1,160,000	" "
Difference	864,000	" "

For the irrigation period May to September, inclusive, the requirements are:

Point San Pablo	1,236,000	Acre Feet
Army Point	638,000	" "
Difference	598,000	" "

The large difference comes principally from the quantity of water required to operate locks and the increased evaporation in the lower site. In other words, from six to eight hundred thousand acre feet are required to supply the additional unavoidable losses from evaporation and ship lockages in San Pablo Bay.

In the matter of cost, Young's estimates show for a barrier with 50 feet of clearance the following:

Point San Pablo	$75,200,000
Army Point	49,800,000
Difference	$25,400,000

The convenience to other interests is of great importance. The Mare Island Navy Yard is located above Point San Pablo but below Carquinez Strait, naval officers will object to the barrier. On account of the greater number of vessels which pass San Pablo than through the upper end of Carquinez Strait, there will be less objection to the upper site.

Barriers at both sites will serve as bridges. The San Pablo location will replace a ferry now in operation—the upper site in Carquinez Strait will serve both for rail and vehicular traffic and will replace two ferries.

The opportunity to combine the barrier with the Southern Pacific Railroad at Port Costa should not be overlooked. The Railroad Company is contemplating the construction of a bridge to replace the present ferry. If the Army Point-Suisun Point site is selected by the railroad, the barrier can not be built on this site. In some respects this is the most attractive site and until final determination is made of the location, no permit should be given for a bridge across this place.

STORAGE AND RELEASE TO CONTROL SALT WATER

This method of solving the salt water problem has been suggested in several recent publications of the Department of Public Works. Examination in detail of the proposals shows that "salt water control" means the supplying of water of less than 100 parts chlorine per 100,000 to the delta lands. Emmaton on the Sacramento and Jersey Island on the San Joaquin are the limits of control and no suggestion has been made that it is practical to release water to supply Antioch or any of the lower industrial area. This, in fact, leaves out of consideration the area now most seriously damaged.

Studies by the Division of Water Rights based on records including the year 1925 show that to control salinity below 100 parts chlorine per 100,000, the combined flow of the Sacramento at Sacramento and San Joaquin at Vernalis (both points about the head of tide water in late summer) must exceed the following figures:

For control at	Cubic Feet Per Second
Emmaton and Jersey Island	3500
Antioch	5000
Collinsville	5500
O. & A. Ferry	6000

These quantities will depend to some extent upon the months preceding the period when control is desired and will, of course, vary with the diversions below the points of measurement. Furthermore, storage of water above tide level will affect the matter by limiting the distance salt water is forced downstream by spring floods.

To effectively supply these quantities of water will require very large storage capacity in dry years.

In 1924 storage in excess of a million acre feet would have been required to control salinity at the Oakland & Antioch Ferry and 370,000 at Emmaton and Jersey. In 1926 over 500,000 acre feet would have been required at the Oakland & Antioch Ferry and 200,000 acre feet at Emmaton and Jersey. Storage in large amount would be needed about half the years at Emmaton and Jersey and every year for control at the O. & A. Ferry.

The above is under the assumption that storage and diversions in these two valleys do not increase. As shown earlier, this condition has already been violated, for there has never been such increased activity in building storage reservoirs as in the period since 1924. Many reservoirs are planned for construction in the near future. Furthermore, diversions increase every year. Estimates of the quantities required for storage control must therefore be continuously revised upwards.

Release of stored water, to control salinity, will occur in dry parts of the year and to the greatest extent in dry years. To effectively control the right of storage and release, all riparian owners below the reservoir must agree to the arrangement. As the law now stands, the use of such a reservoir may be enjoined and it will be impossible to prevent, except through litigation, the riparian owners from diverting the released water. This difficulty can be removed by condemnation of rights along the stream. The problem looks too large for human accomplishment in any reasonable time and at any reasonable cost.

To one acquainted with water problems in California, it does not seem reasonable to expect that in the dry part of a dry year a flow of 5,000 or more feet per second would be allowed to pass pumps and ditches, under which crops were suffering, in order that salt water could be pushed back into the ocean.

As to the cost of storage reservoirs to accomplish the release for salt control, there is little definite information which permits a comparison of costs. The following statements are of some interest:

Kennett reservoir is proposed by the State Department of Public Works as a unit in the "Coordinated Plan." (See Bulletin 13, Department of Public Works, 1928.) The recommended reservoir capacity is 2,940,000 acre feet; the estimated cost of dam and rights of way is $55,000,000; of power plant $25,000,000; a total of $80,000,000. With allowances for prior rights, the mean annual irrigation yield of reservoir will be 2,838,000 acre feet. In minimum years the deficiency would be large; 19 per cent in 1920, 42 per cent in 1924. If this reservoir were depended upon for salinity control, the entire available supply would be needed to control salt water at the mouth of the river, leaving no water for the area depending on this reservoir for irrigation. In other words, the very year when the reservoir is most needed it would be of little practical use. Furthermore, Kennett is not practicable unless operated to generate electric power. If the water is held and released for salt water control, the power value is greatly decreased.

Iron Canyon Reservoir is proposed as a secondary unit in the "Coordinated Plan." (See Bulletin 13 of Department of Public Works.) The recommended capacity is 1,121,900 acre feet; the estimated cost of dam and power plant is estimated as $26,000,000; the canal system to utilize this water is estimated at $30,000,000. The reservoir may be utilized in controlling salinity. To quote from the above mentioned report, page 115:

> "Sacrificing the power features at Iron Canyon dam would, with other construction unchanged with the exception of the arrangement of outlets through the dam, supply a reserve storage of 364,600 acre feet of water in Iron Canyon reservoir to overcome, or alleviate, the salt water menace in the delta region should such be desirable. Such use is not advocated, but it is demonstrated that there are possibilities along this line."

Should the irrigation feature likewise be disregarded, Iron Canyon would provide a net annual irrigation draft of 800,000 acre feet or just about enough water to control salt water as low as the mouth of the river—provided the water could be carried past head gates and pumps on its way to tidal waters. Under this condition the power feature would be sacrificed to a larger extent. It is difficult to picture a dry year when water and power are both scarce, in which it would be possible to release a large quantity of water, disregarding its best use for power, and have the riparian and appropriative users of water along the hundred and fifty miles of the Sacramento River permit this flow to pass by uninterrupted to tide water. The plan does not look practical.

Other reservoirs may be used for the same purpose, that of increasing the flow to control salt water. For example, a reservoir on Feather River has been suggested, another on the American at Folsom. Both of these reservoirs will have value for power development and that value will be greatly reduced if a large quantity of water is held for saline control. The most practical suggestion is in connection with a reservoir on Dry Creek, north of the Mokelumne, the water to be diverted from the Mokelumne River. The rights obtained by the East Bay Municipal Utility District for storage in Lancha Plana Reservoir practically eliminate this reservoir from consideration.

In connection with the proposal for storage and release of water, it should be remembered that the State Department of Engineering has made the suggestion as a temporary expedient, with the expectation that permanent relief would be brought about by the construction of the salt water barrier. This state of affairs would leave the delta lands dependent on a temporary right to be replaced by a permanent right which would be arranged for at some later time. With the growing condition of California and the certainty that the temporary supply will be invaded by increased diversions, this is a very precarious water right, not one which will satisfy the delta land owners. Furthermore, the plan does not consider users below the delta, either towns or industries.

New industries will not be attracted by any temporary improvement in water conditions. Some permanent solution must be reached. It is important to California to have the decision made at once so that the great industrial expansion now going on can be located to a maximum extent in this state.

WATER FROM OUTSIDE SOURCES

Water may be brought in from outside sources to supply the towns and industries along the Straits and Suisun Bay. It is not likely that the agricultural lands can be reclaimed by any outside source of water on account of the high cost. But for the uses of towns and factories it is possible to secure outside water.

Under present conditions water cannot be drawn at any point on tide water without either running the risk of getting salt water or of interfering with rights already vested. It may be possible to pump during the fresh water period into reservoirs and to pipe the water thus stored along the waterfront, supplying both domestic and industrial consumers. Reservoirs of good size are available in the Montezuma hills north of Suisun Bay and a few small reservoirs are found on the south side of the bay. No estimate has been made of the cost of this method. Surveys beyond the scope of this report would be required. It is known that the cost would be large, though cheaper than any other known source.

Other possible outside sources are:

Eel River—a supply which has been suggested for both San Francisco and East Bay cities. The distance to Carquinez Strait is 125 miles. Harroun estimates the cost at $22,000,000 to carry 50,000,000 gallons daily to south sides of Carquinez Straits.

Conn Valley—a small tributary to Napa River with probable yield of 10,000,000 gallons daily. Cost not known but the supply would only furnish a part of present needs and would provide nothing for future growth.

Putah Creek—a tributary of Sacramento north of Dixon. Cost not known. About 50 miles north of Suisun Bay. Complicated with riparian claims. All storage at considerable distance in mountains.

Mokelumne or Cosumnes—draining Sierras north of Stockton. Cost unknown. Early rights conflicting. About 75 miles distant.

Pumped water from San Joaquin Valley—It has been suggested that the irrigation districts in the San Joaquin Valley could deliver pumped drainage water into the river to be pumped out above salt water limit and delivered to industries and towns along the bay through pipe lines.

East Bay Municipal Utility District—The main pipe line of this district parallels the bay shore from Antioch to Bay Point. To secure water from it the area must enter the district. The district has voted $64,000,000 to complete a 60 m.g.d. supply. Water will be costly if the entire cost is collected from rates, and there

is little incentive for Contra Costa County and towns to enter this organization. The water is too costly for the heavy industries, such as now are located along the waterfront.

All of these sources are so distant and costly that the supplies are more of the nature of domestic supplies than of cheap industrial water supplies such as are required in any large and growing industrial region. None of them solves the salt water problem as affecting construction along the waterfront and none of them can possibly be made available for agricultural industries on the bay lands.

THE BARRIER AS A UNIT IN THE STATE COORDINATED PLAN OF WATER CONSERVATION

A plan for the development and use of all waters of the state upon a coordinated plan has been presented in part to the Legislature by the State Department of Public Works. This plan provides for the storage and utilization of all water required in the Sacramento Valley and the transmission of excess water to the San Joaquin Valley for use on lands for which insufficient water can be supplied from local sources. The salt water barrier is a necessary unit in this plan, for water can not be carried through the delta with tidal flow bringing salt water in and out of the channels twice a day.

GENERAL DEVELOPMENT OF BAY REGION

The entire bay region is interested in the salt water problem in that the prosperity of the region immediately concerned affects the prosperity of the cities. The industrial territory along Carquinez Strait is essential to the well being of the whole state. The industries are fundamental to modern civilization. Oil, gasoline, lubricants, steel, fertilizers, sugar, leather, timber, soda, chlorine, fire-proof roofing, paper board, brick, tile, flour, mill feed, and the remaining varieties of manufactured products are necessities of modern existence. To have them abundant and cheap is greatly to the advantage of modern society.

Many of these factories would be classed as nuisances if located in a large city, on account of the odors. Carquinez Strait and Suisun Bay have regular winds which prevent a serious nuisance in this locality. Other communities are not so fortunately situated.

The ratio of factory employees to population of towns is about 1 to 4. This means that the population of the towns immediately surrounding the industries will grow as the industries thrive. This population in towns makes a market for the products of the cities and the multitude of manufacturing establishments which have located in the cities. The heavy industries in turn furnish raw material for use in the factories in the cities.

As a result of this interlocking of interests, the large cities of the bay region have a direct interest in seeing a salt water barrier established. Behind it, around the fresh water lake thus created, there will grow up a thriving industrial community engaged in the production of essential materials which could not be produced within the cities themselves.

CALIFORNIA NOW IN THE INDUSTRIAL AGE

California is now in an age of industrial growth. Approximately one-third of the people of the state are engaged in manufacturing and mechanical industries as compared with less than 20 per cent engaged in agriculture, forestry and animal husbandry (the next largest class of workers). The present growth of the state is due largely to the activity in industrial matters.

Students of population growth recognize cycles of increase in population. There seems to be a definite limit to the number of people that can be reached in any set of circumstances. The growth of California very well illustrates three cycles of growth. In the early days of the state, mining was the attraction and the whole life of the community centered around the mines. As mining reached its climax in the seventies, agriculture came to the forefront and there was a continuous growth on this account. The agricultural era lasted until about 1915. In the meantime, through the discovery of oil and the unprecedented development of the electrical industry, cheap power was made available and manufacturing began to grow. At present there is very little actual increase in agricultural population but a large increase in industrial activities. So far as it is possible to see in the future, our growth will be industrial. Agriculturists have learned to grow more crops with less man power and there is comparatively little likelihood of any large increase in agricultural population. The problems of the state are nowadays to a large extent those of the people of the towns and cities and industrial areas.

DISTRIBUTION OF BARRIER COST

Several interests should share in the cost of this barrier. As has been shown, conditions now existing have been brought about by developments on the higher parts of the watershed, an area covering 32,000 square miles. The Bay cities will be contributing to the salt water problem by diversions which they propose to make out of the watershed. The agricultural interests through both valleys are using fresh water in such a way as to contribute to the salt water troubles of the delta lands and the industrial territory. The power companies through use of water in the watershed also affect the problem, and in addition these companies are interested in the increase and prosperity of the industrial region. Other public utilities in this region have the same interest in its prosperity.

The problem is so large and its interests so widespread that it may be said to be state-wide in scope.

The federal government through its control of navigation, as well as its general interest in the prosperity of the country, is likewise interested in the problem. The California Debris Commission and the River and Harbor work under the Chief of Engineers of the Army already are engaged in river improvement and in control of reclamation work so far as it affects navigation. It would appear reasonable, therefore, to have participation in this construction work by the federal government.

Local interests which will receive direct and tangible benefits from this barrier, such as the towns, cities and lands which can use water directly from the fresh water lake above the barrier, should contribute to the cost of the structure. The delta lands so far as they divert water from tide water levels should also be included in the area contributing because of benefits.

Railroads and vehicular traffic utilizing the barrier as foundation of a bridge should pay the value of this service. It seems reasonable that railroad and vehicular traffic could reasonably contribute a large sum for the use of the bridge.

It appears from examination of Young's estimates that the sum of $45,000,000 will complete a barrier with a bridge at a point near the upper end of Carquinez Strait. A detailed economic study should be made to determine the proportion of the cost that should be borne by each interest involved.

SUMMARY

1. Carquinez Strait marked approximately the boundary between salt and fresh water under natural conditions.
2. Prior to diversions for irrigation, Suisun Bay was brackish in late summer and salt water may have penetrated as far as Antioch, but only for a few days at a time in years of lowest run-off.
3. If the water now diverted for irrigation and held in storage were released, natural conditions would again be brought about.
4. The dry year of 1918, in which the urge of war had encouraged heavy plantings of rice and other crops in the Sacramento Valley, resulted in penetration of salt water into the Delta for a longer time and to a greater distance up-stream than ever known before.
5. Examination of available information shows that the yearly increased diversion of water which had been going on since irrigation commenced in the valleys of California, had been gradually affecting the movements of salt water. This slow effect was hardly noticed until 1918.
6. Irrigation and storage are not solely responsible for the influx of salt water. The load of hydraulic mining debris deposited in the streams draining the Sierra Nevadas is a minor factor in the problem. As the sediment moves down-stream the tidal prism is changed and the movement of water is affected.
7. Leveeing and reclamation of marsh lands, around the bays and in the delta region, have had a slight effect upon tidal movements. The net effect of leveeing marsh land has been to decrease the tendency of salt water to flow up-stream.
8. Leveeing of basin lands and diversion of floods through by-pass channels has had an important effect in sending floods rapidly to tide water and in reducing the late summer flow of water which under natural conditions was stored and slowly released from basins.
9. Dredging, particularly in lower portions of the rivers and in the navigation channels of San Pablo Bay, has increased the tendency for salt water to flow up-stream. Dredging in Suisun Bay and in the deep water channels to Stockton may have the same tendency. All increases in channel depth and in straightening of approach have a tendency to increase up-stream flow of salt water, though a quantitative estimate of this tendency cannot be made.
10. Irrigation now diverts the entire low flow of all streams entering the San Joaquin Valley. The only flows reaching tide water in late summer and early fall are return waters—seepage from irrigation.
11. Pumping plants on the west side of the San Joaquin Valley, lifting water to the west side slopes, now divert more water during late summer than enters tide-levels from the river. The San Joaquin delta under present conditions is dependent in late summer of dry years on flow from the Sacramento River. Additional pumping plants are being installed and there will be a greater tendency in the future than in the past for salt water to flow up-stream into the delta channels.
12. Irrigation in the Sacramento Valley in late summer diverts practically all the flow of streams entering the valley floor. The flow of the river at Sacramento, the head of tide water, is now largely return seepage or waste from canals. The low flow at Sacramento was 500 second feet in 1920; 2750 in 1921;

3200 in 1922; 3100 in 1923; 705 in 1924; 2760 in 1925; 1330 in 1926; and 3420 in 1927.

13. The area irrigated in the delta of both rivers is now 360,000 acres. The quantity of water used by this land has not been determined with any accuracy. Comparing crops and other conditions affecting use of water, it is probable that the annual consumption approximates 1¾ acre feet per annum. Twenty per cent of the annual amount is used in the summer months of greatest evaporation. At this rate the consumption of water by the delta area is at the rate of 2100 second feet in the summer. This exceeds the flow into tide water by the river in all years of low flow.

14. Records of salt content of the water have been collected by the Division of Water Rights since 1917. The area of delta land surrounded by salt water (100 parts chlorine per 100,000) at high tide is shown in the following table:

Year	Approximate Stream Flow before Diversions in Per Cent of Normal.	Area in Delta Surrounded by Salt Water, Acres.
1924	24	169,000
1926	53	58,000
1925	74	8,500
1927	100	5,000

15. Contrary to popular opinion, the period since 1918 has not been one of stagnation in irrigation development. A number of large storage reservoirs have been built and placed in operation since then. Of approximately 4,000,000 acre feet of storage reservoirs on streams draining through Carquinez Strait, 55 per cent or 2,725,000 acre feet have been built since 1920. Diversions of water, particularly on the lower San Joaquin River, have increased.

The area under irrigation has steadily increased in both valleys. In 1926 it is estimated that 1,250,000 acres were irrigated in the floor of the valley with 3,900,000 acre feet of water by diversions from streams draining toward Carquinez Strait. If mountain valleys and lands irrigated from wells are included, the total area irrigated is probably over 1,750,000 acres.

16. Further extensions of irrigated area are being planned in both valleys. Within the next five years the bay cities will have diverting capacity of about 185 second feet and will control 431,000 acre feet of storage reservoirs. These enterprises will tend to increase the salt water menace. There is reason to expect the same menace of salt water as occurred in 1920, 1924 and 1926 to be present every year.

17. Salt water will penetrate the lower delta region every summer under present conditions. The distance water will flow up-stream will depend less and less upon the flow of streams into the valleys as the increase in use of water continues. About one-half of the delta is likely to be menaced any year. The area may extend beyond this line.

18. There is now no legal control of diversions, other than by the slow and costly process of litigation, except upon a few small tributary streams where the Division of Water Rights has completed adjudications. Litigation between lower users of water in the delta and upper riparian users and appropriators has been in progress for several years. Other litigation may be started. The legal processes are so slow, cumbersome and costly that little result is to be expected for many years, if ever.

The outcome of present litigation will be disastrous if the courts uphold the contentions of either of the parties to litigation. If the delta lands have riparian rights to the waters, a large area of land will have to release water, and storage reservoirs constructed by power companies will be decreased in efficiency and value. On the other hand, if the courts decide that riparian rights do not attach to lands on tide water, the delta will be further menaced by salt water and there will be grave danger of permanent injury to a large area of land.

19. The engineering study of a salt water barrier made by Walker Young, of the Bureau of Reclamation, in cooperation with the Department of Public Works of the State of California, concludes that the construction of such a barrier is feasible. Investigations were made at three sites—Point San Pablo, Dillon Point and Army Point. The estimated cost of the barrier with and without bridges is given in the table on Page 60.

20. This barrier will maintain a fresh water reservoir free from tidal fluctuations and currents other than those caused by the flow of river water toward the sea. The level of water up-stream of barrier will be maintained at the highest practical level. Young estimates this level at elevation 2.5, U. S. G. S., or 6.0 on tide gage. It is probable that this height of water will be controlled by conditions of levees in the peat areas. As these levees become more stable the level can be increased. Flood levels will not be increased above those of floods in the past, in fact flood conditions will be improved in all but the most severe and protracted floods.

21. The salt water barrier, if built, will affect agriculture and the industries and activities along the bay and lower river as shown in the following statement:

A. AGRICULTURE

(a) A salt water barrier at Point San Pablo will make fresh water available for the irrigation of 51,000 acres of marsh and 48,000 acres of high land around San Pablo Bay. There is no known source of water for this area of land at present. If such lands are increased $50 an acre above cost of irrigation works, the total increase in value will be $4,950,000.

(b) A salt water barrier in Carquinez Strait or at Army Point will make fresh water available for 163,000 acres (marsh 70,000 acres; high lands 93,000 acres) around Suisun Bay. There is no other known source of water for this area. At $50.00 an acre, the increased value above cost of irrigation works will be $8,150,000.

(c) Either location of barrier will solve the irrigation problem for the lands now irrigated from tide waters in the delta and adjoining it. The area now watered is about 360,000 acres. The total area of irrigable lands is estimated as 458,000 acres. The area menaced by salt water is 169,000 acres. The value of this land is $35,000,000. Improvements at 20 per cent of land value add another $7,000,000.

There will be some increment in value to all the delta area from the security which the salt water barrier will bring about.

(d) The salt water barrier will benefit the areas up-stream from tidal lands by removal of litigation which is now a source of expense and annoyance and which is an obstacle to future projects.

SALT WATER BARRIER

Comparison of Estimated Costs for Alternate Design at Four Sites.

DISTINGUISHING FEATURES OF ASSUMPTIONS OF DESIGN

No.	Estimated Cost	Highway and Railway Bridge			Locks		Flood Control Gates			Pier Width
		Minimum Clearance at Locks	Decks	Piers or Towers	No.	Location	No.	Size	Location	
	ARMY POINT-SUISUN POINT AND ARMY POINT-MARTINEZ									
1	$46,300,000		No Bridge		3	In Suisun Point	14 2	70x80 50x60	Partially in Suisun Pt.	20 Ft.
2	49,800,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	3	In Suisun Point	do	do	Partially in Suisun Pt.	15-20
3	54,100,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	3	In Suisun Point	30	50x60	Partially in Suisun Pt.	15 Ft.
4	55,900,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	3	Offshore from Suisun Pt.	15	70x80	Partially in Suisun Pt.	20 Ft.
5	58,500,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	3	Offshore from Suisun Pt.	30	50x60	Partially in Suisun Pt.	15 Ft.
6	77,300,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	3	Offshore from Martinez	15	70x80	Offshore from Martinez	20 Ft.
	BENICIA-PORT COSTA									
7	40,200,000		No Bridge		4	In Benicia	30	50x60	Offshore from Benicia	15 Ft.
8	46,200,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	4	In Benicia	30	50x60	Offshore from Benicia	15 Ft.
	DILLON POINT-ECKLEY									
9	38,900,000		No Bridge		4	In Dillon Point	15	70x80	Offshore from Eckley	50 Ft.
10	44,700,000	50 Ft.	Double	Concrete	4	In Dillon Point	15	70x80	Offshore from Eckley	50 Ft.
11	44,900,000	50 Ft.	Double	Steel	4	In Dillon Point	15	70x80	Offshore from Eckley	50 Ft.
12	47,600,000	135 Ft.	Double	Steel	4	In Dillon Point	15	70x80	Offshore from Eckley	50 Ft.
13	50,400,000	50 Ft.	Double	Concrete	4	In Dillon Point	21	70x80	Across Carquinez Sts.	50 Ft.
14	50,600,000	50 Ft.	Double	Steel	4	In Dillon Point	21	70x80	Across Carquinez Sts.	50 Ft.
15	53,300,000	135 Ft.	Double	Steel	4	In Dillon Point	21	70x80	Across Carquinez Sts.	50 Ft.
16	97,100,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	4	In Dillon Point	15	70x80	In Dillon Point	20 Ft.
	POINT SAN PEDRO-POINT SAN PABLO									
17	66,000,000		No Bridge		5	In Point San Pablo	15	70x82	Offshore Pt. San Pablo	20 Ft.
18	75,200,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	5	In Point San Pablo	15	70x82	Offshore Pt. San Pablo	20 Ft.
19	82,100,000	50 Ft.	Single	Concrete	5	In Point San Pablo	15	70x82	In Point San Pablo	20 Ft.

One estimate only is given for the Army Point-Martinez Location—Estimate No. 6.
This site was not drilled—Estimates based largely on assumed foundation conditions except for S. P. Co. test pile data.

NOTE—At all sites except Dillon Point-Eckley, conditions are such that flood gates, locks, piers, etc., would be constructed in the dry behind coffer dams. A limiting depth of 90 feet below mean sea level to rock surface is assumed for this method of construction. The depths at Dillon Point-Eckley exceed this, and Estimates 9 to 15, inclusive, are based upon the placing of concrete under water by the tremie method using caisson gates for the final work on the Stoney Roller Gates. Estimate 16 uses construction methods comparable to those at the other sites as the flood gates are placed in Dillon Point.

(e) The salt water barrier is a step in the direction of carrying out the state's plan of supplying water to the Southern San Joaquin Valley—a step in the coordinated plan of water development. It is the first portion of the project which should be built.

B. INDUSTRIES

Industries occupy a large area of land along the waterfront of San Francisco and San Pablo bays, Suisun Bay and Carquinez Strait. Between Oleum and Antioch there are seventeen large industrial plants and a number of smaller ones. On the north side of the straits there are two large industries besides the Mare Island Navy Yard and Benicia Arsenal.

These industries are of the "heavy" type, fundamental industries, which produce essential products necessary both in war and peace. Steel and iron, petroleum products, chemicals, fertilizers, powder and fuse works, leather, brick and tile, flour and feed, roofing lumber and wood products, fish, canned goods and sugar are produced in large quantities. The products of these works have an annual value of $250,000,000. Freight in and out of the district approximates 14,000,000 tons a year. Expenditures for electric power average $800,000 a year. The average number of employees is 8500, having an annual payroll of about $15,000,000. The portion of the population of towns and suburban territory dependent on these industries includes 30,000 inhabitants.

The industries are large users of water. At present 10 million gallons a day are used, not including the Navy Yard or Arsenal, and the annual increase in use by the establishments is one million gallons a day.

Immediately adjoining the industrial area above described are other large establishments which could receive benefit from the fresh water reservoir created above the barrier. If the zone along the waterfront to Richmond were included, the annual value of products for the whole territory would be $515,000,000; the number of employees 17,000; the annual payroll $29,000,000. A part of this area is within the East Bay Municipal District.

Since the salt water menace became widely advertised through the Antioch litigation, only one new industry of large size has been established in this territory. The factories already established have continued to grow but the uncertainty about fresh water has discouraged new industries seeking location.

Fresh water in large quantities at low prices is essential to the prosperity of such establishments. Water from any existing utility or municipal district is too high in price for these "heavy" industrial plants.

Ordinarily such works locate where water can be had for the cost of pumping, and such manufacturing establishments will not go to any place where practically free water is not available. There is no other location in California suitable for heavy industries where this condition can be created.

The establishment of new basic industries will be attracted to abundant cheap water. If California does not provide the proper location, Seattle or Portland or some other northern locality will offer greater inducements and many industries will establish Pacific Coast branches in these northern cities. There are in these other states large areas of land where pure fresh water is abundant and may be had for the cost of pumping from permanent running streams.

Further than this, rates for water in the cities are cheaper than in California.

Below are given the costs of 500,000 gallons of water in the principal Pacific Coast cities:

Cost of 500,000 Gallons of Water Per Month

San Francisco	$157.56
Oakland	161.71
Los Angeles	72.16
Stockton	54.50
Portland	44.11
Seattle	32.94

One of the greatest needs of the state today is a fresh water reservoir around which factories could be located with assurance of a permanent supply of water. Probably no single accomplishment in the construction program now under discussion would do more toward progress. More factories mean greater population and more local markets for agricultural produce, and the general level of prosperity of the state will be raised.

Salt water is detrimental to the piping and more costly to handle in factories of this sort. The increased annual cost to the users of saline water is estimated to be $300,000 a year through deterioration of equipment and piping in the industries now established. This sum capitalized at 6% means the equivalent of an investment of $5,000,000.

Some of the industries, notably the sugar refinery at Crockett and the chemical works at Pittsburg and Nichol, require water free from saline matter. The presence of salt water in the river for long periods of each year has been the cause of much expense and annoyance in these establishments, and brings seriously to consideration the ability of these factories to continue to exist under the trying conditions.

The salt water barrier will remove the cause of additional expense to the plants now located here, will encourage their more rapid growth, and will offer a great incentive to new establishments to locate here. Large industries require, in addition to large quantities of pure water, cheap power, efficient transportation facilities, preferably both by rail and water, and a good climate attractive to labor. The lower river and upper bay regions lack only water. The salt water barrier will supply this single deficiency. If the barrier is not built, California, without doubt, will lose many important factories.

C. DOMESTIC WATER SUPPLY

The domestic water supply of towns along the straits in Suisun Bay is high in price and limited in quantity. Vallejo, the only exception to this statement, recently has constructed Gordon Valley Reservoir on Suisun Creek, and has a permit to store 10,000 acre feet and to divert 5,000 acre feet annually. Other towns have no large amount of water for future growth. In fact lack of available water has been a deterrent to the location of industries and the resultant increase in population.

A salt water barrier will solve the water difficulties. If the barrier is located at San Pablo Point, the entire area can be supplied with fresh water; if the barrier is located at Army Point or in Carquinez Strait, all towns on Suisun Bay and in the lower river will be on fresh water; towns below the barrier, such as Crockett, can be readily supplied with short pipe lines heading above the barrier.

Either barrier will be of benefit to the city of Sacramento in preventing the up-flow of tide and reducing the menace of sewage water being carried toward the water intake.

D. TRAFFIC ACROSS STRAIT

Routes of travel between northern and southern parts of the state naturally pass through Carquinez Strait. The Southern Pacific Company maintains ferries for trains between Benicia and Port Costa and for passengers between Vallejo Junction and Vallejo. The Sacramento-San Francisco Railroad maintains a train ferry from Mallard to Chipps Island. A bridge for vehicular traffic now crosses the strait just below Crockett. A ferry for automobiles and passengers is maintained between Martinez and Benicia.

At Richmond an automobile ferry is in operation a short distance below the site of the proposed salt water barrier at Point San Pablo.

A barrier at San Pablo can be made to serve as a bridge. There are now two applications for bridge permits near this place. The estimated cost of these bridges is from $10,000,000 to $20,000,000. The difference between the cost of a barrier with and without bridge is estimated by Young to be $9,000,000.

At Army Point a bridge 50 feet above water increases the cost $3,500,000; at Benicia a bridge 50 feet above water level increases the cost $6,000,000; at Dillon Point a bridge with a clearance of 50 feet increases the cost $3,800,000; a bridge with clearance of 135 feet increases the cost $8,700,000. Approximate figures indicate that a railroad bridge near the location of the present Southern Pacific ferry between Benicia and Port Costa will cost in excess of $10,000,000. Upon this estimate railroad transportation could bear a part of the cost of barrier. Vehicular traffic is growing so rapidly that there will be need for a second bridge across the straits within a few years.

E. POWER COMPANIES

The power companies are interested in the salt water problem because it has decreased their market for power by discouraging new plants from locating here and by reducing the growth of those already established.

The litigation over water rights may seriously affect their plants supplied from storage in the mountains.

F. FISHING INDUSTRY

Fishing in the bay and rivers is important. Salmon, shad and striped bass are important commercial fish. Smelt and smaller fish are important in furnishing food for commercial varieties. Sturgeon are nearly extinct but it is the endeavor of the Fish and Game Commission to prevent complete extinction and to encourage increases in this species.

The salt water barrier will be an obstacle to migrating fish during low water season. Young's plans provide for fishways and it is his belief that fish will use the locks and that on the whole the barrier will not obstruct the migration. Objection to any forms of barrier will be raised by the fishing industry. Wherever the structure is built there will naturally be some obstruction to free migration of the fish. It is probable, however, that the structure can be so designed and operated as to do only a small amount of damage.

G. NAVIGATION

Any barrier is an obstacle to free movement of vessels, and it is to be expected that owners of vessels will object to the project. This objection arises from the delays caused by using locks and the danger of handling vessels in such restricted quarters, particularly in foggy periods.

As to delays, it may be said that ordinarily the time lost in transit through locks will be regained by the freedom from adverse currents above the locks. While this will depend upon the place to which the vessel is bound, it is believed that for the great bulk of traffic the delay is likely to be small.

The danger to vessels maneuvering in approach to locks is of course real, but with the safeguards now provided for vessels the risk is small and there are compensating advantages. The ability to dock without tidal currents, as would be true above the barrier, is both a saving in time and reduction of risk. The cleansing action of fresh water upon the bottoms of ocean-going vessels is valuable.

The fear that the barrier will cause silting in channels or will create changes in the Golden Gate bar does not seem to be well founded. Sediment moves almost entirely at flood times when the barrier will be open and the current constantly down-stream. The movement of sediment will probably be facilitated rather than retarded.

Owners of shipping facilities are of course interested in the growth and prosperity of the communities served. The industrial area which will grow up around the fresh water reservoir above the barrier will produce freight for vessels at a greatly increased rate. The depth of water through Suisun Bay and to Stockton will be increased to 26 feet under the plan already adopted by Congress. This depth of channel will be ample for from 73 to 88 per cent of the vessels normally entering the Golden Gate during a year.

In considering the location of the barrier, the extent of shipping is important. The farther downstream the greater the traffic through locks, the greater the quantity of water required for lock operation, and the greater will be the objection by the shipping interests. In this regard the upper location of the barrier will meet with the least objection.

The Navy Yard is above San Pablo site and naval officers will probably be impressed with the difficulties presented by the barrier in time of war. Here we have another and important reason for the selection of the upper site.

H. STRUCTURE BUILT IN WATER

Teredos and other wood-destroying animals have caused damage to structures in San Francisco Bay waters in excess of $25,000,000 since 1914, according to estimates made by the San Francisco Bay Marine Piling Committee. In the upper bay region, teredos have gone as far as Antioch. All structures built in water which may become brackish must be constructed of treated piles or of concrete. Brackish water carried up by tides will continue to cause greater expense in all structures built in water and greater maintenance costs. It is difficult to measure this damage in dollars, but it is a very considerable sum annually.

A salt water barrier will reduce the maintenance cost of structures and will make it practical to build structures as economically as was done prior to the invasion of salt water.

I. THE BARRIER AS A UNIT IN THE STATE'S COORDINATED PLAN OF WATER CONSERVATION

A plan for the development and use of all waters of the state upon a coordinated plan has been presented in part to the legislature by the State Department of Public Works. This plan provides for the storage and utilization of all water required in the Sacramento Valley and the transmission of excess water to the San Joaquin Valley for use on lands for which insufficient water can be supplied from local sources. The salt water barrier is a necessary unit in this plan, for fresh water cannot be carried through the delta with tidal flow bringing salt water in and out of the channels twice a day.

J. GENERAL DEVELOPMENT OF BAY REGION

The entire bay region is interested in the salt water problem in that the prosperity of the region immediately concerned affects the prosperity of the cities. The industrial territory along Carquinez Strait is essential to the well-being of the whole state. The industries are fundamental to modern civilization. Oil, gasoline, lubricants, steel, fertilizers, sugar, leather, timber, soda, chlorine, fire-proof roofing, paper board, brick, tile, flour, mill feed, and the remaining varieties of manufactured products are necessities of modern existence. To have them abundant and cheap is greatly to the advantage of modern society.

Many of these factories would be classed as nuisances if located in a large city on account of the odors. Carquinez Strait and Suisun Bay have regular winds which prevent a serious nuisance in this locality. Other communities are not so fortunately situated.

The ratio of factory employees to population of towns is about 1 to 4. This means that the population of the towns immediately surrounding the industries will grow as the industries thrive. This population in towns makes a market for the products of the cities and the multitude of manufacturing establishments which have located in the cities. The heavy industries in turn furnish raw material for use in the factories in the cities.

As a result of this interlocking of interests, the large cities of the bay region have a direct interest in seeing a salt water barrier established. Behind it, around the fresh water lake thus created, there will grow up a thriving industrial community engaged in the production of essential materials which could not be produced within the cities themselves.

CALIFORNIA NOW IN THE INDUSTRIAL AGE

22. California is now in an age of industrial growth. Approximately one-third of the people of the state are engaged in manufacturing and mechanical industries as compared with less than 20 per cent engaged in agriculture, forestry and animal husbandry (the next largest class of workers). The present growth of the state is due largely to the activity in industrial matters.

Students of population growth recognize cycles of increase in population. There seems to be a definite limit to the number of people that can be reached in any set of circumstances. The growth of California very well illustrates three cycles of growth. In the early days of the state, mining was the attraction and the whole life of the community centered around the mines. As mining reached its climax in the 70's, agriculture came to the forefront and there was a continuous growth on this account. The agricultural era lasted until about 1912. In the meantime, through the discovery of oil and the unprecedented development of the electrical industry, cheap power was made available and manufacturing began to grow. At present there is very little actual increase in agricultural population but a large increase in industrial activities. So far as it is possible to see in the future, our growth will be industrial. Agriculturists have learned to grow more crops with less man power and there is comparatively little likelihood of any large increase in agricultural population.

The problems of the state are nowadays to a large extent those of the people of the towns and cities and industrial centers.

SOLUTION OF THE SALT WATER PROBLEM

23. The salt water problem may be partially solved in several ways but completely only in one way. Conditions may be ameliorated by storage and release of water from reservoirs to push back the salt water or water supply from outside sources may be brought in to supply fresh water through conduits or pipes. The only satisfactory solution of the problem is the salt water barrier.

These methods are briefly discussed below:

STORAGE AND RELEASE TO PUSH BACK SALT WATER

24. This method of solving the salt water problem has been suggested in several recent publications of the Department of Public Works. Examination in detail of the proposals shows that "salt water control" means the supplying of water of less than 100 parts chlorine per 100,000 to the delta lands.

Emmaton on the Sacramento River and Jersey Island on the San Joaquin are the limits of control and no suggestion has been made that it is practical to release water to supply Antioch or any of the lower industrial area. This, in fact, leaves out of consideration the area now most seriously damaged.

Studies by the Division of Water Rights based on records including the year 1925 show that to control salinity below 100 parts chlorine per 100,000, the combined flow of Sacramento River at Sacramento and the San Joaquin at Vernalis (both points about head of tide water in late summer) must exceed the following figures:

For Control at	Cubic Feet Per Second
Emmaton and Jersey Island	3500
Antioch	5000
Collinsville	5500
O. & A. Ferry	6000

These quantities will depend to some extent upon the months preceding the period when control is desired, and will, of course, vary with the diversions below the points of measurements. Furthermore, storage of water above tide level will affect the matter by limiting the distance salt water is forced downstream by spring floods.

To effectively supply these quantities of water will require very large storage capacity in dry years.

In 1924 storage in excess of a million acre feet would have been required to control salinity at the O. & A. Ferry and 200,000 acre feet at Emmaton and Jersey.

Storage in large amount would be needed about half the years at Emmaton and Jersey, and every year for control at the O. & A. Ferry.

The above is under the assumption that storage and diversions in these two valleys does not increase. As shown earlier, this condition has already been violated, for there has never been such increased activity in building storage reservoirs as in the period since 1924. Many reservoirs are planned for construction in the near future. Furthermore, diversions increase every year.

Estimates of the quantities required for storage control must therefore be continuously revised upwards.

Release of stored water, to control salinity, will occur in dry parts of the year and to greatest extent in dry years. To effectively control the right of storage and release, all riparian owners below the reservoir must agree to the arrangement. As the law now stands, the use of such a reservoir may be enjoined and it will be impossible to prevent—except through litigation—the riparian owners from diverting the released water. This difficulty can be removed by condemnation of rights along the stream. The problem looks too large for human accomplishment in any reasonable time and at any reasonable cost.

To one acquainted with water problems in California, it does not seem reasonable to expect that in the dry part of a dry year a flow of 5,000 or more feet per second would be allowed to pass pumps and ditches, under which crops were suffering, in order that salt water could be pushed back into the ocean.

As to the cost of storage reservoirs to accomplish the release for salt control, there is little definite information which permits a comparison of costs. The following statements are of interest:

Kennett Reservoir is proposed by the State Department of Public Works as a unit in the "Coordinated Plan." (See Bulletin 13 of the Department of Public Works, 1928.) The recommended reservoir capacity is 2,940,000 acre feet; the estimated cost of dam and rights-of-way is $55,000,000; of power plant $25,000,000; a total of $80,000,000. With allowances for prior rights, the mean annual irrigation yield of reservoir will be 2,838,000 acre feet. In minimum years the deficiency would be large; 19 per cent in 1920; 42 per cent in 1924. If this reservoir were depended upon for salinity control, the entire available supply would be needed to control salt water at the mouth of the river, leaving no water for the area depending on this reservoir for irrigation. In other words, the very year when the reservoir is most needed it would be of little practical use. Furthermore, Kennett is not practicable unless operated to generate electric power. If the water is held and released for salt water control, the power value is greatly decreased.

Iron Canyon Reservoir is proposed as a secondary unit in the "Coordinated Plan." (See Bul. 13, Dept. of Public Works.) The recommended capacity is 1,121,900 acre feet; the cost of dam and power plant is estimated as $26,000,000; the canal system to utilize this water is estimated at $30,000. The reservoir may be utilized in controlling salinity. To quote from the above mentioned report, page 115:

"Sacrificing the power feature at Iron Canyon dam would, with other construction unchanged with the exception of the arrangement of outlets through the dam, supply a reserve storage of 364,600 acre feet of water in Iron Canyon reservoir to overcome, or alleviate, the salt water menace in the delta region should such be desirable. Such use is not advocated, but it is demonstrated that there are possibilities along this line."

Should the irrigation feature likewise be disregarded, Iron Canyon would provide a net annual irrigation draft of 800,000 acre feet or just about enough water to control salt water as low as the mouth of the river—provided the water could be carried past head gates and pumps on its way to tidal waters. Under this condition the power feature would be sacrificed to a larger extent. It is difficult to picture a dry year when water and power are both scarce, in which it would be possible to release a large quantity of water, disregarding its best use for power, and have the riparian and appropriative users of water along the hundred and fifty miles of the Sacramento River permit this flow to pass by uninterrupted to tide water. The plan does not look practical.

Other reservoirs may be used for the same purpose, that of increasing the flow to control salt water. For example, a reservoir on Feather River has been suggested, and another on the American at Folsom. Both of these reservoirs will have value for power development and that value will be greatly reduced if a large quantity of water is held for saline control. The most practical suggestion is in connection with a reservoir on Dry Creek, north of the Mokelumne, the water to be diverted from the Mokelumne River. The rights obtained by the East Bay Municipal Utility District for storage in Lanch Plana Reservoir practically eliminate this reservoir from consideration. In connection with the proposal for storage and release of water, it should be remembered that the State Department of Engineering has made the suggestion as a temporary expedient, with the expectation that permanent relief would be brought about by the construction of the salt water barrier. This state of affairs would leave the delta lands dependent on a temporary right to be replaced by a permanent right which would be arranged for at some later time. With the growing condition of California and the certainty that the temporary supply will be invaded by increased diversions, this is a very precarious water right, not one which will satisfy the delta land owners. Furthermore, the plan does not consider users below the delta, either towns or industries.

New industries will not be attracted by any temporary improvement in water conditions. Some permanent solution must be reached. It is important to California to have the decision made at once so that the great industrial expansion now going on can be located to a maximum extent in this state.

WATER FROM OUTSIDE SOURCES

25. Under present conditions the towns and industrial area cannot look to any place within tide water level for a source of water. Above tide levels the following are the principal supplies which may be considered:

Eel River,
Conn Valley,
Putah Creek,
Mokelumne or Cosumnes,
Pumped water from irrigation districts, San Joaquin Valley,
East Bay Municipal Utility District.

All of these sources may be considered, but as all are distant, with long pipe lines and other costly works, they will be able to supply water only at relatively high cost, prohibitory to the types of factories now located in Contra Costa and Solano Counties. Piping water across these straits will be a very costly and difficult affair. The barrier removes the necessity of any pipe line crossing.

LOCATION OF BARRIER

26. For the purpose of providing fresh water to cities, industries and agriculture on adjoining land, the lowest location of the barrier accomplishes the most. However, water supply, cost and convenience to other interests must be considered before the location can be selected. The following may be said on these points:

Water Supply. The attached tables give the requirements for fresh water above the barrier upon the assumption that development is complete. These figures, in part, are taken from the Young report—in part are the results of studies made for this investigation.

Requirements for the full year are:

Army Point	1,160,000	acre feet
Point San Pablo	2,024,000	" "
Difference	864,000	" "

For the irrigation period May to September, inclusive, the requirements are:

Army Point	638,000	acre feet
Point San Pablo	1,236,000	" "

Additional storage on the headwaters will be required to supply the barrier at San Pablo.

Cost. Young's estimate of cost of barrier with bridge of clearance of 50 feet is as follows:

Point San Pablo	$75,200,000
Army Point	49,800,000
Difference	$25,400,000

Convenience of Other Interests. San Pablo site is below the Mare Island Navy Yard, a great obstacle. Navy men will be against the project. Shipping interests will be more inconvenienced with the lower site occupied. At present about two-thirds of the vessels that pass Point San Pablo continue upstream above Army Point. The San Pablo site will be a convenience to vehicular traffic. The Army Point site will be convenient for both vehicular and railroad traffic, though at present vehicular traffic is cared for by the Carquinez Bridge.

FINAL CONCLUSION

27. If the salt water barrier is built at Army Point to carry vehicles and railroads, and the proper part of the cost paid by these interests, the salt water problem can be solved permanently and cheaper than by any other solution that has been suggested.

The cost of a bridge for rail and automobile traffic at Army Point cannot be determined without more work than is possible in an investigation such as this. It can be safely said, however, that the cost will exceed $10,000,000. Automobile traffic over the Carquinez Bridge (which has been in use less than a year) is at the rate of approximately 1,100,000 automobiles a year and is growing rapidly. There will be economic justification for an auto bridge at Benicia before it can be built. Automobile traffic will justify an expenditure of over $10,000,000. The two combined will be over $20,000,000. If this figure is taken as the value to transportation, there will be left, approximately, an equal sum to be paid by other benefits.

Iron Canyon Reservoir, the only definite storage reservoir suggested for temporary control, will cost $26,000,000. The salt water barrier would permanently solve the difficulties for a smaller sum.

[TABLE 1]

AVERAGE MILES TRAVELED BY WATER BARGE CALIFORNIA-HAWAIIAN SUGAR COMPANY

Year	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1908	19.8	11.6	12.5	14.0	12.9	16.7	26.3	26.8	33.2	27.1	24.8	25.7
1909	6.9	0	4.5	7.7	5.0	4.7	10.5	19.4	23.2	24.2	21.0	11.7
1910	9.6	10.0	3.8	3.0	6.4	10.8	20.4	26.7	27.6	25.4	24.6	19.7
1911	11.6	2.3	16.2	1.0	2.1	0.7	5.7	16.4	23.2	24.5	24.7	25.5
1912	22.0	16.1	14.5	12.7	8.8	7.1	17.6	24.7	24.4	24.2	19.0	18.5
1913	16.4	13.6	13.2	9.9	6.9	10.3	21.0	25.7	26.6	27.8	26.1	20.4
1914	2.1	1.2	1.6	2.5	2.2	3.4	10.3	20.0	24.4	24.5	23.9	23.7
1915	16.4	2.3	3.1	4.3	2.6	3.7	12.6	20.8	24.4	24.2	23.0	17.5
1916	4.9	0.5	1.0	2.3	6.4	5.8	13.2	22.6	25.0	21.7	21.2	15.4
1917	16.0	13.1	6.5	6.3	3.5	4.8	15.5	24.9	26.2	26.0	25.1	24.4
1918	24.3	15.1	9.6	6.2	9.2	15.0	27.0	38.5	37.2	23.0	23.1	21.0
1919	20.4	9.4	7.7	5.7	4.3	14.1	35.3	37.7	37.7	26.8	25.7	25.5
1920	23.8	24.0	17.2	12.0	12.9	17.4	26.0					

[TABLE 3]

COMMERCIAL FISHING—SAN PABLO AND SUISUN BAYS AND SACRAMENTO AND SAN JOAQUIN RIVERS

(Varieties)

Year	Salmon Native	Shad Planted	Striped Bass Planted	Total Pounds
1919	4,529,048	1,573,713	759,733	6,862,494
1920	3,860,312	1,409,322	668,290	5,937,924
1921	2,511,127	797,128	599,698	3,907,953
1922	1,765,066	1,109,445	682,717	3,557,228
1923	2,243,945	1,285,334	906,869	4,436,148
1924	2,640,110	1,538,735	658,244	4,837,089
1925	2,778,846	2,439,441	836,301	6,054,588
1926	1,261,776	902,202	749,573	2,913,551
1927	920,471	4,103,012	644,789	5,668,272
Total, 9 Years	22,510,701	15,158,332	6,506,214	44,175,247
Mean	2,501,189	1,684,259	722,913	4,908,361

The run of fish will vary from year to year in accordance with weather, feed and unknown factors.

A low or high run for one year may not mean absolute evidence of either increase or decrease in the species.

For example, the extremely low run of salmon in 1927 does not necessarily mean still lower run in 1928, and similarly with shad in reverse tendency.

However, there seems to be a general decrease in salmon, probably an increase in shad, and a static condition in striped bass.

[TABLE 2]

COMBINED FLOW OF SACRAMENTO AND SAN JOAQUIN TRIBUTARIES

(Flow in Second Feet)

Year	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1916	66,670	92,200	99,830	88,621	73,060	55,619	23,990	11,112	9,300	12,261	11,522	19,986
1917	16,712	56,000	34,521	71,153	69,307	63,407	20,082	9,787	8,309	7,875	8,639	11,071
1918	9,180	21,849	50,360	51,091	39,145	32,183	9,563	6,885	8,621	13,041	11,956	12,118
1919	19,653	58,664	44,948	63,700	65,666	18,261	8,975	7,275	7,049	7,733	7,172	11,460
1920	9,075	9,550	26,759	41,822	49,582	27,404	9,931	6,722	6,059	8,557	39,737	48,539
1921	73,000	58,400	69,470	55,291	65,385	50,246	15,606	8,297	7,435	7,589	8,389	19,407
1922	17,560	50,030	41,389	61,190	109,494	82,327	20,879	9,022	7,329	8,334	11,828	35,715
1923	29,742	22,089	23,785	55,290	54,199	31,844	17,138	9,798	8,809	10,004	7,810	7,919
1924	8,617	19,248	10,222	15,623	14,438	7,007	5,981	5,601	5,171	7,056	13,214	15,029
1925	15,018	89,005	34,394	63,127	59,990	32,824	13,486	9,030	8,535	8,626	9,361	11,720
1926	13,056	57,377	26,323	60,494	30,503	13,603	9,732	8,522	7,364	7,730	32,243	31,338
1927	35,293	109,044	54,556	75,100	59,973	45,353	16,984	11,349	10,652			

No allowance for power storage or regulation.

Combination of
Sacramento at Red Bluff,
Feather at Oroville,
Yuba at Smartsville,
Bear at Van Trent,
American at Fair Oaks,

and
Mokelumne at Clements,
Stanislaus at Knights Ferry,
Tuolumne at La Grange,
Merced at Exchequer,
San Joaquin at Friant.

[TABLE 4]

POPULATION OF BAY COUNTIES— U. S. CENSUS

	1920	1910	1900	1890	1880	1870	1860	1850
State	3,426,861	2,377,459	1,485,053	1,213,398	864,694	560,247	379,994	92,597
Alameda	344,171	246,131	130,197	93,864	62,976	24,237	8,927	
Contra Costa	53,889	31,674	18,046	13,515	12,525	8,461	5,328	323
Marin	27,342	25,114	15,702	13,072	11,324	6,903	3,334	405
Napa	20,678	19,800	16,451	16,411	13,235	7,163	5,521	9,087
Sacramento	91,029	67,806	45,915	40,339	34,390	26,830	24,142	
San Francisco	506,676	416,912	342,782	298,997	233,959	149,473	56,802	3,647
San Joaquin	79,905	50,731	35,452	28,629	24,349	21,050	9,435	
San Mateo	36,781	26,585	12,094	10,087	8,669	6,635	3,214	
Solano	40,602	27,559	24,143	20,946	18,475	16,871	7,169	

[TABLE 5]

SCHOOL ENROLLMENT
BAY SHORE DISTRICTS—CONTRA COSTA COUNTY

	1915	1921	1927
Elementary Schools:			
Oakley	85	118	158
Antioch	333	454	731
Pittsburg	668	1122	1485
Bay Point	85	------	162
Martinez	403	792	1068
Port Costa	122	108	75
Carquinez (Crockett)	447	572	617
Selby	72	99	128
Rodeo	108	132	198
Pinole Hercules	227	258	217
San Pablo	182	227	282
Richmond	2288	3380	3997
Total Elementary	5020	7262	9118
High Schools:			
Antioch	105	142	149
Pittsburg			183
Alhambra, Martinez	77	121	294
John Swett, Crockett	86	119	206
Richmond	242	655	754
Total High School	510	1037	1586
Total both	5530	8299	10,704

[TABLE 6]

WATER-BORNE TRAFFIC
U. S. ENGINEERING DEPARTMENT DATA

(Total Movement, Tonnage and Values in Thousands of Tons and Thousands of Dollars)

	Suisun Bay		Carquinez Strait		San Pablo Bay		Grand Total	
Year	Tons	Value	Tons	Value	Tons	Value	Tons	Value
1917	Do Data		Incl. in San Pablo		11,946	$212,592		
1918	No Data		Incl. in San Pablo		4,330	152,206		
1919	305	$ 7,034	Incl. in San Pablo		4,634	184,476	4,939	191,510
1920	433	13,877	2,079	$97,991	1,696	54,620	4,208	166,488
1921	562	19,670	1,720		2,019	96,177	4,301	
1922	1,329	32,006	No Data		2,652	118,234		
1923	2,659	43,764	No Data		2,466	109,022		
1924	2,341	51,066	No Data		4,200	156,999		
1925	4,204	88,670	7,673	183,000	4,754	234,409	16,631	506,079
1926	4,205	90,687	7,844	135,522	4,667	260,920	16,716	487,129

Totals are only shown where data are complete for all divisions.

In addition to above, in 1926, there was a total of 1,752,000 tons valued at $124,077,616 to or from the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, most of which passed through Carquinez Strait. However, all of this having origin and destination in the above Bay division, it appears there also.

Railroad ferry freight traffic across Carquinez Strait was, in 1925, 2,706,000 tons; in 1926, 2,650,000 tons.

[TABLE 7]

OCEAN-GOING WATER-BORNE TRAFFIC
U. S. ENGINEERING DEPARTMENT DATA

(Tonnage in Thousands of Tons and Values in Thousands of Dollars.)

	Suisun Bay		Carquinez Strait		San Pablo Bay		Grand Total	
Year	Tons	Value	Tons	Value	Tons	Value	Tons	Value
1925	2659	$43,823	5188	$147,485	4011	$66,999	11,858	$258,307
1926	2495	41,173	4264	107,228	3866	58,942	10,625	207,343

Data do not permit a separation of bay business from ocean-going business previous to 1925, and Carquinez Straits' data are entirely lacking for thee years.

The magnitude of the Petroleum Products traffic and the proportion of the total it occupies are obvious when the following tables are compared with the above.

	Suisun Bay		Carquinez Strait		San Pablo Bay		Grand Total	
Year	Tons	Value	Tons	Value	Tons	Value	Tons	Value
1925	2464	$34,391	4415	$ 49,562	3837	$45,714	10,716	$129,667
1926	2168	33,663	3409	40,454	3708	43,837	9,285	117,954

OUTGOING BAY AND OCEAN WATER-BORNE PETROLEUM PRODUCTS

1925	547	$20,811	2949	$ 38,217	1019	$19,783	4,515	$ 78,811
1926	615	29,989	2746	35,197	940	23,837	4,301	89,023

Does not include Standard Oil Co. Richmond plants.

[TABLE 8]

SACRAMENTO AND SAN JOAQUIN RIVER TRAFFIC
U. S. ENGINEERING DEPARTMENT DATA

(Tonnage and Values)

	Sacramento River		San Joaquin River	
Year	Tons	Value	Tons	Value
1910	496,147	$ 29,522,151	631,681	$ 32,878,108
1911	505,285	32,139,048	600,128	35,768,215
1912	477,292	27,755,325	632,591	38,854,539
1913	733,594	35,856,791	820,399	38,341,174
1914	721,090	38,211,760	772,156	35,479,741
1915	766,935	38,027,703	831,234	36,358,240
1916	875,780	46,908,093	824,222	42,179,160
1917	947,690	96,820,992	1,890,856	50,367,760
1918	1,053,510	113,991,123	2,114,382	65,204,825
1919	1,666,025	78,601,238	647,156	54,100,043
1920	1,377,700	53,946,146	692,306	42,203,211
1921	976,596	52,092,263	646,657	37,263,122
1922	1,291,135	60,606,728	678,751	34,291,675
1923	1,264,821	62,470,235	697,773	38,027,909
1924	1,796,105	58,662,997	727,499	38,185,313
1925	1,427,230	80,500,145	849,687	47,192,499
1926	1,222,993	85,315,284	934,809	56,455,662

Contains also movements between river points only.

[TABLE 9]

WATER REQUIREMENTS FOR OPERATION OF SALT WATER BARRIER WHEN FULLY DEVELOPED

(Quantities in Second Feet)

Point San Pablo

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Fish Ladder	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35
Industries, etc.	322	322	322	322	322	322	322	322	322	322	322	322
Gate Leakage	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166
Oper. Locks	705	705	705	705	705	705	705	705	705	705	705	705
Evaporation	250	300	450	650	950	1200	1250	1170	1020	800	500	200
Irrigation	......	......	......	......	610	1680	2290	1910	1150	......	......	......
Flushing	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
Totals, S. F.	1678	1728	1878	2078	2988	4308	4968	4508	3598	2228	1928	1628

[TABLE 10]

WATER REQUIREMENTS FOR OPERATION OF SALT WATER BARRIER WHEN FULLY DEVELOPED

(Quantities in Second Feet)

Army Point

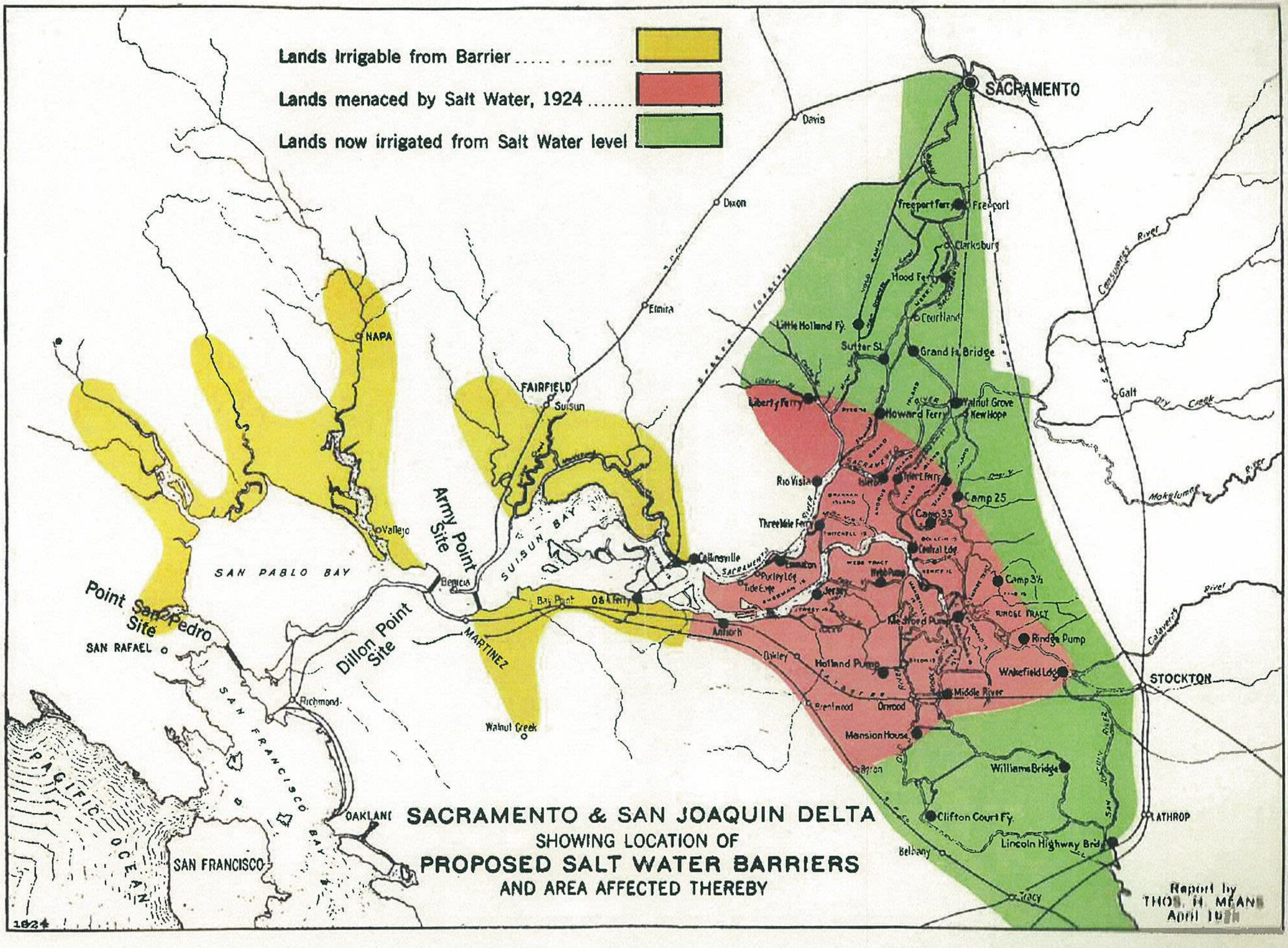
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Fish Ladder	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35
Industries, etc.	155	155	155	155	155	155	155	155	155	155	155	155
Gate Leakage	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166	166
Oper. Locks	246	246	246	246	246	246	246	246	246	246	246	246
Evaporation	110	146	200	288	422	530	555	522	455	355	222	89
Irrigation	......	......	......	......	380	1050	1430	1190	710	......	......	......
Flushing	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
Totals, S. F.	912	948	1002	1090	1604	2382	2787	2514	1967	1157	1024	891

[TABLE 11]

WATER REQUIREMENTS ABOVE SALT WATER BARRIER WHEN FULLY DEVELOPED

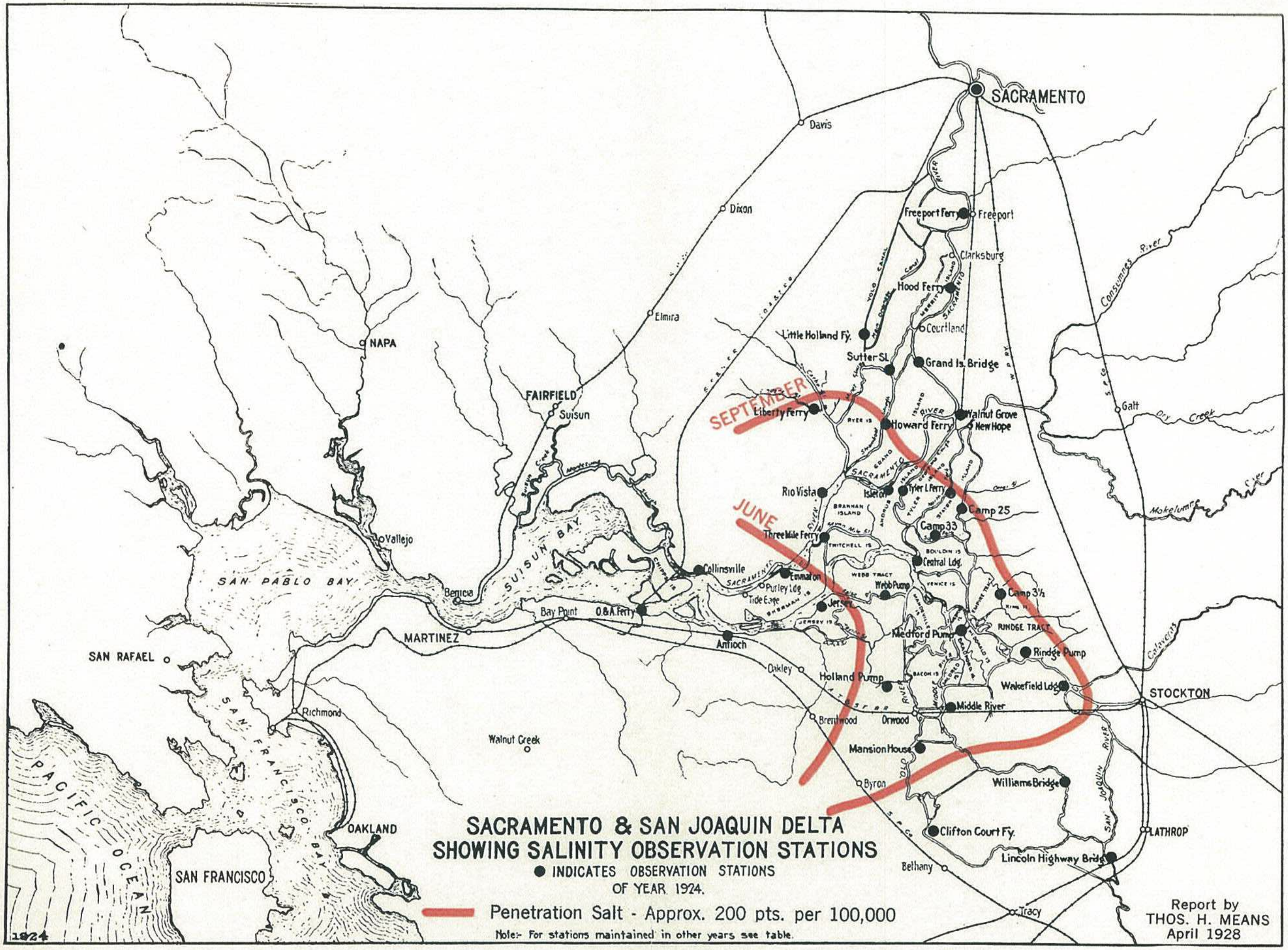
(Quantities in Acre Feet)

	Army Point	Point San Pablo
January	56,000	102,500
February	52,500	95,500
March	62,000	115,000
April	65,000	123,000
May	98,500	184,000
June	147,500	256,000
July	171,000	305,000
August	154,000	277,000
September	117,000	214,000
October	71,000	137,000
November	61,000	115,000
December	54,500	100,000
Totals	1,110,000	2,024,000



SACRAMENTO & SAN JOAQUIN DELTA
SHOWING LOCATION OF
PROPOSED SALT WATER BARRIERS
AND AREA AFFECTED THEREBY

Report by
THOS. H. MEANS
April 1924



SACRAMENTO & SAN JOAQUIN DELTA SHOWING SALINITY OBSERVATION STATIONS

● INDICATES OBSERVATION STATIONS OF YEAR 1924.

▬ Penetration Salt - Approx. 200 pts. per 100,000

Note:- For stations maintained in other years see table.

Report by
THOS. H. MEANS
April 1928

Public Workshop (9/5-6/12)
Bay-Delta Workshop 1
Deadline: 8/17/12 by 12 noon

Flow Science Incorporated
723 E. Green St., Pasadena, CA 91101
(626) 304-1134 • FAX (626) 304-9427

FLOW SCIENCE®

RECEIVED
8-7-12
SWRCB Clerk

August 7, 2012

State Water Resources Control Board
1001 I St.
Sacramento, CA 95814

Via email: commentletters@waterboards.ca.gov

Subject: Bay-Delta Workshop 1 – Ecosystem Changes and LSZ
FSI 064136

Dear Ms. Townsend and Members of the Board,

On behalf of the City of Antioch, Flow Science is pleased to submit comments for consideration by the State Water Resources Control Board (State Board) during its Comprehensive (Phase 2) Review and Update to the Bay-Delta Plan.

Background. The City of Antioch (Antioch), located along the San Joaquin River in the western portion of the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Delta (Delta), is one of the oldest towns in California. Since the 1860s, Antioch has obtained all or part of its freshwater supply directly from the San Joaquin River.[1] The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and its long-term viability as a recreational destination.

Potential Impacts of Preliminary BDCP Proposed Project. The City of Antioch and I participated in the flow criteria hearings in March 2010, and thus have included with this letter only a small portion of the materials provided to the State Board at that time. The new information provided to the State Board in this submittal relates primarily to the Bay-Delta Conservation Plan (BDCP), and new data and information that have become available from the BDCP process following the 2010 flow criteria hearings.

The City of Antioch and I have participated in the BDCP process, and earlier in 2012 received a hard drive from the California Department of Water Resources (DWR) that included the results of model runs made using DWR's Delta Simulation Model II (DSM2) for various BDCP alternatives, including the "preliminary proposal" (Alternative 1, which was the proposed project at the time) and No Action model runs. The data

---

[1] Much of the water in the western Delta (including the City's water supply) comes from the Sacramento River. Historically, significant amounts of Sacramento River water flowed into the San Joaquin River east of Antioch at Three Mile and Georgiana Sloughs. Sacramento River water also reaches Antioch where the river merges with the San Joaquin River just west of the City. Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District et al. (1922) 188 Cal. 451, 455.

provided to the City included simulated salinity levels at the City's intake for the 16-year simulation period (water years 1975-1991).

Flow Science reviewed the results of the BDCP DSM2 model runs received in 2012, which showed that under almost all modeled conditions, the water at the City's intake in the western Delta was predicted to become significantly saltier than under current conditions. For future conditions, the BDCP model runs incorporated both a no-project alternative (which incorporated varying levels of anticipated sea level rise) and with-project alternatives. These model runs generally showed that the BDCP project increased salinity significantly as compared both to the baseline (existing) condition and to future conditions without the BDCP project (i.e., with sea level rise alone).

The BDCP model runs reviewed by Flow Science indicated that the period of time that the City of Antioch could divert water at its intake (i.e., when water at the intake had a chloride level below 250 ppm, called "usable water") declined significantly with the proposed project. This effect was particularly acute in the late summer and fall months of wet years; in these time periods, model results showed that usable water would be present about 80% of the time for baseline and future-no-project model runs, but that usable water would be present less than 40% of the time for the then-preliminary proposal. Even the 6,000-cfs BDCP alternative indicated that significant salinity impacts could occur in the western Delta, indicating that it may not be the size of the diversion so much as the way in which it is operated that results in salinity impacts in the western Delta.

In addition to diverting water from the north Delta, the DSM2 model runs incorporated two features that would also result in higher salinity conditions in the western Delta and at Antioch's intake. First, the DSM2 model runs moved a point of compliance for water quality criteria. Specifically, the compliance point in the Sacramento River at Emmaton (incorporated into D-1641 and the Bay-Delta Plan) was moved upstream to Three Mile Slough in the DSM2/CALSIM II modeling performed in support of the BDCP project. (Such a change in compliance point would require a change in the water quality objectives of the Bay-Delta Water Quality Control Plan.)

Second, the then-proposed BDCP project incorporated restored habitat within the Delta. Depending on the design and location of habitat restoration, the volume of water that "sloshes" into and out of the Delta on every tidal cycle may be increased, increasing salinity intrusion within the Delta, with the most significant effects observed in the western Delta.

With respect to salinity and chloride concentrations at Antioch, the draft EIR/EIS for the BDCP Project (February 2012) concluded as follows: "Based on the additional seasonal exceedances of the municipal objective and magnitude of long-term average water quality degradation with respect to chloride at Antioch, the potential exists for <u>substantial adverse effects on the municipal and industrial water supply beneficial uses</u> through reduced opportunity for diversion of water at Antioch and Mallard Slough with acceptable salinity." (Draft EIR/EIS at p. 8-183, emphasis added).

Potential Impacts of "New" BDCP Project. On July 25, 2012, Governor Brown and the Obama administration outlined revisions to the proposed BDCP, including a change in the amount of water to be diverted from the Delta via new intakes and a new 9,000-cfs tunneled conveyance. We understand that the operating rules are currently in development, as is the environmental analysis that will assess the potential impacts of the proposed project. DWR has indicated to the City of Antioch that they do not currently know if the proposed project will resemble the alternatives already modeled.

For this reason, the City of Antioch is not providing additional quantitative information regarding the impacts of the (future) proposed BDCP project on salinity at Antioch's intake and on the western Delta. The City looks forward to receiving this information, and we will provide additional submittals, including quantitative assessments of the potential salinity impacts to the western Delta, to the State Board when information about the future proposed project becomes available.

In any case, it appears clear that impacts as a result of the proposed BDCP project at the City's intake are likely.

Historical Conditions. As detailed in our prior submittals, a small portion of which are provided with this letter as **Attachment A**, salinity in the western Delta is important not just to Antioch's drinking water supply (and to the beneficial use of these waters for municipal and domestic supply) but also to the ecological health of the Delta as a whole. The materials in **Attachment A** and others submitted previously by the City (and by others, such as CCWD) to the State Board demonstrate that the current Delta ecosystem is very different than the historical Delta – both flow and salinity are altered compared to historical conditions. For example:

- Since European settlement in the 1850s, dramatic changes to the Delta landscape have occurred, including removal of tidal marsh and building of permanent river channels.
- Water management operations (reservoir storage and diversions) since the early 1900s have increased reservoir storage in the upstream watersheds to more than 30 million acre-feet (MAF).
- Water exports from the Delta have been steadily increasing since the 1950s to the present, from about 0.5 MAF/yr to about 5 MAF/yr.

Before large-scale diversions for upstream agricultural operations began in 1918, freshwater conditions were pervasive in the western Delta. Salinity monitoring data indicate that salinity at Antioch has increased further from 1965 to present, and that the increase in salinity continues in recent years.

Salinity intrusion under current management conditions occurs earlier in the year (currently beginning in about March, as compared to June-July historically). Salinity intrusion also persists longer; currently, the period of high salinity persists for about 10 months on average, compared to about 5 months on average for unimpaired flow conditions (i.e., without any current management operations but with the current Delta channel configuration).

It is the historical freshwater condition to which the Delta ecosystem and its native species are adapted.

Antioch's Request. As outlined above, Antioch believes that it is in the City's best interest, and in the interest of the Delta ecosystem, to maintain freshwater conditions in the western Delta. Thus, the City requests that:

- Given historical conditions, salinity should not be allowed to rise (and outflows should not be allowed to decline) beyond existing levels as required by D-1641 and X2 operations criteria.
- Compliance points (such as the compliance point currently located at Emmaton) should not be moved landward.
- The State Board should consider using the gauging station at Antioch as a point of interest for monitoring of both salinity and flow conditions in the western Delta.
- The State Board should ensure that mitigation is provided for impacts to beneficial uses that occur as a result of the BDCP project.

Please contact me at (626) 304-1134 if you have any questions regarding this submittal. We thank you for your consideration of these comments and for the opportunity to participate in the process to revise the Bay-Delta Plan.

Sincerely,

Susan C. Paulsen

Susan C. Paulsen, Ph.D., P.E.
Vice President and Senior Scientist

ATTACHMENT A

supporting documents

February 16, 2010

Division of Water Rights
State Water Resources Control Board
Attn: Phillip Crader
P. O. Box 2000
Sacramento, CA 95812-2000

Re: Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding

Dear Mr. Crader:

The City of Antioch has been diverting Sacramento River water for drinking water use from the western Delta since the 1860s, and as such, has information and data directly relevant to the SWRCB's current proceedings to establish Delta flow criteria. The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and the long-term viability of the City's historic freshwater fishing and recreational opportunities.

Please find attached the City of Antioch's exhibits and supporting documents describing the historical salinity conditions at Antioch. The City of Antioch believes that it is vitally important to consider historical salinity and flow conditions when establishing flow criteria and water quality standards that will affect the future biological and ecological integrity of the Delta, and we believe that the SWRCB should not allow flow to be reduced below, or salinity to be increased above, levels currently allowed by both D-1641 and X2 requirements. In fact, the City asks the SWRCB to establish flow and salinity standards in line with the Delta's historic fresh condition.

We appreciate your consideration in this matter. Please feel free to contact me with any questions.

Sincerely,

P. Harrington

Phil Harrington
Director of Capital Improvements and Water Rights
City of Antioch

Attachments:

- City of Antioch's Witness List
- City of Antioch's Exhibit Identification List
- City of Antioch's Response to Key Questions
- City of Antioch's Written Summary
- City of Antioch's supporting document – a powerpoint presentation on historical salinity conditions
- City of Antioch's supporting document – A report by Thomas Means (1928): "Salt Water Problem"
- City of Antioch's supporting document – Excerpts from the DWR (1931) Report: "Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay"
- City of Antioch's supporting document – DWR (1960) Report: "Delta Water Facilities"

WITNESS IDENTIFICATION LIST (Revised January 29, 2010)
(Due 12 Noon, Tuesday, February 16, 2010)

Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding

Scheduled to Commence
Monday, March 22, 2010

The City of Antioch plans to call the following witnesses: (name of individual participant or group of participants)

NAME	PROPOSES PARTICIPATION ON THE FOLLOWING PANEL(S) note panel number)	WILL THE WITNESS SUBMIT TESTIMONY (no if only responding to questions)
Susan C. Paulsen, Ph.D., P.E., Vice President, Flow Science Incorporated	Hydrology (Panel 1) and Hydrodynamics (Panel 5)	Yes
E. John List, Ph.D., P.E., Principal Consultant, Flow Science Incorporated	Hydrology (Panel 1) and Hydrodynamics (Panel 5)	No
Phil Harrington, Director of Capital Improvements and Water Rights, City of Antioch	Hydrology (Panel 1) and Hydrodynamics (Panel 5)	No
Matthew L. Emrick, Special Water Counsel to the City of Antioch	Hydrology (Panel 1) and Hydrodynamics (Panel 5)	No

EXHIBIT IDENTIFICATION LIST
(Due 12 Noon, Tuesday, February 16, 2010)

Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding

Scheduled to Commence
Monday, March 22, 2010

PARTICIPANT: **The City of Antioch**

Exhibit Identification Number	Exhibit Description
Antioch Doc #1	City of Antioch's Cover Letter
Antioch Doc #2	City of Antioch's Witness Identification List
Antioch Doc #3	City of Antioch's Exhibit Identification List
Antioch Doc #4	City of Antioch's Response to Key Questions
Antioch Doc #5	City of Antioch's Written Summary
Antioch Doc #6	City of Antioch's supporting document – a powerpoint presentation on historical salinity conditions
Antioch Doc #7	City of Antioch's supporting document – A report by Thomas Means (1928): "Salt Water Problem"
Antioch Doc #8	City of Antioch's supporting document – Excerpts from the DWR (1931) Report: "Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay"
Antioch Doc #9	City of Antioch's supporting document – DWR (1960) Report: "Delta Water Facilities"

Testimony by City of Antioch: Response to key questions
SWRCB Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding
March 22 2010

Response to Key Questions

Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding
March 22, 2010

The following are brief "bullet-point style" responses to the five questions posed by the State Water Board in its original notice. The written testimony and the supporting documents submitted by the City of Antioch elaborate on these responses.

Key Question #1

What key information, in particular scientific information or portions of scientific information, should the State Water Board rely upon when determining the volume, quantity, and timing of water needed for the Delta ecosystem pursuant to the board's public trust obligations?

- The current Delta ecosystem is very different than the historical Delta – both flow and salinity are altered compared to historical conditions. For example:
    - since European settlement in the 1850s, dramatic changes to the Delta landscape have occurred, including removal of tidal marsh and building of permanent river channels
    - water management operations (reservoir storage and diversions) since the early 1900s have increased reservoir storage in the upstream watersheds to more than 30 million acre-feet (MAF)
    - water exports from the Delta have been steadily increasing since the 1950s to the present, from about 0.5 MAF/yr to about 5 MAF/yr
- Before 1918 (i.e., before large-scale diversions for upstream agricultural operations), freshwater conditions were pervasive in the western Delta as indicated by literature and technical reports (e.g., testimony from the Antioch lawsuit in 1920, DPW 1931 and DWR 1960)
- Salinity monitoring data indicate that salinity at Antioch has increased from 1965 to present; the increase in salinity continues in recent years.
- Salinity intrusion under current management conditions occurs earlier in the year (currently beginning in about March, as compared to June-July historically). Salinity intrusion also persists longer; currently, the period of high salinity persists for about 10 months on average, compared to about 5 months on average for unimpaired flow conditions (i.e., without any current management operations but with the current Delta channel configuration).

For large reports or documents, what pages or chapters should be considered?

- Specific page number references have been provided in the detailed exhibit and supporting documents.

What does this scientific information indicate regarding the minimum and maximum volume, quality, and timing of flows needed under the existing physical conditions, various hydrologic conditions, and biological conditions?

- Historic Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta.
- Characterization of the Delta as "historically saline" is false and is not based on scientific evidence.
- Salinity intrusion under current management conditions occurs earlier (timing) and persists longer (duration) compared to unimpaired flow conditions (i.e., without any current management operations but with the current Delta channel configuration).
- Salinity has continued to increase in recent years at Antioch.
- The fraction of time that water at Antioch is suitable for use (when salinity is < 250 mg/L chlorides or 1000 μS/cm EC) has declined significantly.
- Historical fresh conditions must be considered in any effort to restore ecological conditions in the Delta.

With respect to biological conditions, what does the scientific information indicate regarding appropriateness of flow to control non native species?

- This question is not addressed in the City's submittal.

What is the level of scientific certainty regarding the foregoing information?

- Salinity and flow monitoring data were collected using scientific techniques which are universal and reliable.
- Testimony and historical evidence presented is consistent with historical literature reports, measurements made by the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H) during the early 20th century, and also with paleo records constructed from tree rings and sediment cores (presented by others and in CCWD salinity report).

Key Question #2

What methodology should the State Water Board use to develop flow criteria for the Delta? What does that methodology indicate the needed minimum and maximum volume, quality, and timing of flows are for different hydrologic conditions under the current physical conditions of the Delta?

- The City suggests that, given historical conditions, salinity should not be allowed to rise (and flows should not be allowed to decline) beyond existing levels as required by D-1641 and X2 operations criteria.
- The City requests that compliance points should not be moved land-ward.
- The SWRCB should consider using the gauging station at Antioch as a point of interest for monitoring of both salinity and flow conditions in the western Delta.

Key Question #3

When determining Delta outflows necessary to protect public trust resources, how important is the source of those flows?

- Even though Antioch is on the San Joaquin River, the Sacramento River was historically and continues to be the main source of water at Antioch. Thus, the Sacramento River has historically been the main source of water in the western Delta, and the source of water to which Delta species have been historically exposed and to which they may have adapted.
- In the context of flushing of the South Delta, baseline residence times should be established based on current conditions, and to be used as a measure by which future actions (e.g., BDCP) can be assessed.

How should the State Water Board address this issue when developing Delta outflow criteria?

- This question is not addressed in the City's submittal.

Key Question #4

How should the State Water Board address scientific uncertainty when developing the Delta outflow criteria?

- The City of Antioch respectfully suggests, in light of the information provided, that the SWRCB should err on the side of not allowing greater salinity intrusion.

Specifically, what kind of adaptive management, monitoring, and special studies programs should the State Water Board consider as part of the Delta outflow criteria, if any?

- This question is not addressed in the City's submittal.

Key Question #5

What can the State Water Board reasonably be expected to accomplish with respect to flow criteria within the nine months following enactment of SB 1? What issues should the State Water Board focus on in order to develop meaningful criteria during this short period of time?

- This question is not addressed in the City's submittal.

State Water Resources Control Board
Delta Flow Criteria Informational Proceeding
March 22, 2010

Exhibit by City of Antioch
Summary of Historical Freshwater Availability at Antioch

Summary

The historic (pre-1918) Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta. The characterization of the Delta as "historically saline" is false and is not based on scientific evidence. Historical salinity and flow conditions must be considered when: (i) establishing Delta outflows and inflows to protect public trust values which adapted to these conditions, (ii) establishing the criteria (volume, timing and quality) required by Senate Bill 7X 1, and (iii) establishing drinking water quality standards for the Delta.

1. Introduction

The City of Antioch (Antioch), located along the San Joaquin River in the western portion of the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Delta (Delta), is one of the oldest towns in California. Since the 1860s, Antioch has obtained all or part of its freshwater supply directly from the San Joaquin River.[1] The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and its long-term viability as a recreational destination.

As part of the informational proceeding on establishing flow criteria in the Delta, this document summarizes the historical salinity and flow conditions near Antioch and contrasts them with the largely saline conditions prevailing today. The supporting document to this summary is a "powerpoint style" document containing text and figures relevant to the material presented in this summary.

2. Systemic changes have reduced freshwater flows and increased salinity in the western Delta, including at Antioch

Salinity in the western Delta (including at Antioch) is influenced both by natural factors, including ocean tides and hydrology of the upstream watersheds, and by artificial factors, including channelization of the Delta, elimination of tidal marsh, reservoir storage and release operations, and water diversions.

Major anthropogenic modifications to the Delta that affect salinity intrusion began with the European settlement of the region around 1850. Tidal marsh acreage in the Delta decreased from over 250,000 acres in the 1870s to less than 30,000 acres in the 1920s and

---

[1] Much of the water in the western Delta (including the City's water supply) comes from the Sacramento River. Historically, significant amounts of Sacramento River water flowed into the San Joaquin River east of Antioch at Three Mile and Georgiana Sloughs. Sacramento River water also reaches Antioch where the river merges with the San Joaquin River just west of the City. <u>Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District et al.</u> (1922) 188 Cal. 451, 455

has since continued to decrease (CCWD 2010), producing significant changes in the Delta landscape (Att. at pg. 7). For example, dredging of the Delta river channels to create the Stockton and Sacramento Deep Water Ship Channels affected the salt transport and distribution in the Delta (CCWD 2010). Construction of reservoirs for storage purposes started in the early 1900s and the largest reservoirs of the Central Valley Project (CVP, Lake Shasta) and the State Water Project (SWP, Lake Oroville) were completed in 1945 and 1968, respectively (CCWD 2010). Total upstream reservoir storage capacity increased from 1 million acre-feet (MAF) in 1920 to more than 30 MAF by 1979 (CCWD 2010). Water exports from the Delta have been steadily increasing since the 1950s, and the combined annual exports from CVP and SWP have increased, on average, from about 0.5 MAF/yr in the late 1950s to about 5 MAF/yr during the recent period (Att. at pg. 8).

3. Historical extent of freshwater

Testimony from the lawsuit filed by the Town of Antioch in 1920 and from various literature reports demonstrates that freshwater (low salinity conditions) prevailed in the western Delta in the late 1800s and early 1900s.

3.1 Testimony from Antioch's lawsuit in 1920

In 1920, the Town of Antioch filed a lawsuit against upstream irrigation districts alleging that the upstream diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch (Town of Antioch [plaintiff] v. Williams Irrigation District et al. [defendants] (1922, 188 Cal. 451)). The testimony from the Antioch lawsuit provides a perspective of the salinity conditions prevailing in the early 1900s.

3.1.1 Pre-1918: Freshwater was available at Antioch year-round

Testimony from the defendants in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that in the late 1800s, water at Antioch was known to be brackish at high tide during certain time periods, but Antioch was able to pump freshwater at low tide throughout the year, with the possible exception of the fall season during one or two dry years. Water at Antioch was fresh at low tide at least until around 1915 (when the pumping plants started pumping continuously, regardless of tidal stage) (Att. at pg. 11).

Testimony from the plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that Antioch's freshwater supply was obtained directly from the San Joaquin River (see footnote 1 above) from about 1866 to 1918, first by private water companies and then by the municipality after 1903 (when the City acquired pre-existing water rights) (Att. at pg. 12). Plaintiff's testimony included salinity measurements taken at Antioch (1913-1917) that indicated that prior to 1918, freshwater was available at Antioch even during dry years and in the fall (Att. at pg. 12).

3.1.2 Post-1918: Increased upstream diversions drastically increased salinity intrusion

Testimony and measurements from the Delta (1918-1920) presented by the plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit indicated that after 1918, salinity abruptly increased during the irrigation (rice cultivation) season, but returned to a potable level after irrigation ceased (Att. at pg. 13). The effect of upstream diversions was also confirmed by records in the plaintiff's testimony from California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H) (CCWD 2010). Plaintiff's testimony indicated that although Antioch is located along the San Joaquin River, the source of much of the water at Antioch was the Sacramento River, which flowed to Antioch via Georgiana and Three Mile Sloughs (Att. at pg. 14-15); this was confirmed by the California Supreme Court (Att. at p. 15).

Information from the Antioch lawsuit is consistent with literature reports (see the following discussion) and with paleo records of salinity and river flow obtained from tree rings and sediment cores (CCWD 2010).

3.2 Literature reports

Several literature reports confirm that freshwater was available year-round in the western Delta (including Antioch) and Suisun Bay during the late 1800s and early 1900s. For instance, DPW (1931), the precursor to the Department of Water Resources, indicated that the City of Antioch obtained all or most of its freshwater supplies directly from the San Joaquin River until 1917, and that salinity intrusion prevented domestic use of water at the Antioch intake in summer and fall after 1917 (Att. at pg. 9). DPW (1931) and Tolman and Poland (1935) indicated that prior to the 1920s, water near the City of Pittsburg was sufficiently fresh for that City to directly obtain all or most of its freshwater (Att. at pg. 10). Dillon (1980) and Cowell (1963) indicated that prior to the 1920s, freshwater was available in the Suisun Bay and Carquinez Straits for use by the City of Benicia (Att. at pg. 10). Means (1928) indicated that Carquinez Strait (near Martinez in the western Delta) is the approximate boundary between salt water and freshwater under natural conditions. Moreover, Means (1928) also indicated that during the wet season freshwater extended up to the Golden Gate (Att. at pg. 9).

The California Department of Water Resources (DWR, 1960) estimated that water with a chloride concentration of 350 mg/L or less would be available at San Joaquin at Antioch about 85% of the time under "natural" conditions (Att. at pg. 16). DWR (1960) also estimated that chloride concentrations at Antioch would be less than 350 mg/L about 80% of the time in 1900 and about 60% of the time by 1940, with decreasing freshwater availability due to upstream diversions; DWR also projected further deterioration of water quality in 1960 and later, but did not include the effects of reservoir releases for salinity control (Att. at pg. 16).

4. Current Salinity Conditions at Antioch

Salinity data compiled by the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) and California Data Exchange Center (CDEC) were used to analyze the present availability of freshwater at Antioch. These quantitative measurements from the present were compared to the testimony from the Antioch lawsuit and to observation recorded by C&H to establish how salinity at Antioch and in the western Delta has increased over time compared to historical conditions.

4.1 Freshwater availability continues to decline

Availability of freshwater at Antioch continues to decline. Antioch may take water at its intake when salinity is less than 250 mg/L chlorides (equivalent to about 1000 μS/cm EC)[2]. The number of days per year, expressed as a percentage, when daily average salinity at Antioch was below 1000 μS/cm EC declined from about 70% in the late 1960s to about 40% during the recent period (Att. at pg. 19).

Even in years with above normal runoff in the Sacramento River watershed, freshwater at Antioch is less available than historically (Att. at pg. 20). For instance, during the above normal water year 2000, water at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 μS/cm EC for the entire day for about four-and-a-half months (early February through mid-June) and for a portion of the day at low tide for another three-and-a-half months (mid-June through September). For the remaining four months (October-January), water at the City's intakes exceeded 1,000 μS/cm EC for the entire day, regardless of tidal stage. Testimony from the Antioch lawsuit indicates that prior to 1918, water at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 μS/cm EC for the entire day during above-normal years and in all but dry fall months.

Salinity at low tide at Antioch during the present is higher than historical conditions (Att. pg. 21). For instance, during the period 1985 to 2009, the tenth percentile low tide daily salinity was below 1,000 μS/cm EC for about one-and-a-half months, and the 25th percentile low tide daily salinity was below 1,000 μS/cm EC for about nine months. However, testimony from the Antioch lawsuit indicates that during the driest years prior to 1918, low tide salinity at the City of Antioch's intake was below 1000 μS/cm EC for about nine months; for all but the driest years, salinity at low tide was below 1,000 μS/cm EC throughout the year. These data establish that salinity is higher at Antioch for a wider range of hydrologic conditions and for a longer duration of the year than under historic conditions.

4.2 Salinity intrusion occurs earlier and extends farther

Since the early 1900s the California & Hawaiian Sugar Refining Corporation (C&H), located in Crockett near the western edge of Suisun Bay, obtained its freshwater supply in Crockett. When freshwater was not available at Crockett, C&H used barges that traveled upstream on the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers to procure freshwater. The measurements of distance to freshwater from Crockett, recorded during these barge operations, serve as a surrogate for the historical extent of freshwater in the western

---

[2] The freshwater salinity threshold of 250 mg/L chlorides at the San Joaquin River at Antioch is based on the 1968 agreement between the City of Antioch and DWR. This threshold is approximately equivalent to 1000 μS/cm EC, based on the site-specific empirical relationships between chloride concentration and EC (K. Guivetchi, DWR Memorandum dated June 24, 1986).

Delta. A comparison of C&H data during 1908-1917 and estimates[3] of distance to freshwater from Crockett during the post-SWP construction period (1966-1975) indicates that salinity intrusion into the Delta occurs on average about 4 months earlier (in March instead of July) during the post-SWP construction period of 1966-1975 (Att. at pg. 17). Comparison of C&H data from 1908-1917 to estimates of distance to freshwater from Crockett during the period 1995-2004 indicates that salinity intrusion during the recent period not only occurs earlier (by 4 months) but also extends farther in to the Delta (by about 5 to 20 miles) (Att. at pg. 18).

5. Conclusions

- Prior to 1918, freshwater was almost always available at Antioch at least at low tide. Only during dry years and during high tide conditions did salinity at Antioch become brackish.
- Between 1918 and the late 1930s, drought conditions, upstream water diversions, and channelization increased the salinity of water at Antioch.
- By 1940 the drought receded, but salinity at Antioch remained elevated.
- Salinity has continued to increase in recent years at Antioch.
- The fraction of time that water at Antioch is suitable for use (when salinity is < 250 mg/L chlorides or 1000 µS/cm EC) has declined significantly.
- "Historic" Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta.

6. Request

The City of Antioch requests that the State Water Resources Control Board review and incorporate historic salinity data into its analyses when considering Delta outflow requirements to protect public trust resources in the Western Delta and the flow requirements of SB X7 1 (e. g., volume, timing and quality), and that the Board use historic data to establish and to adjust its "baseline" of water quality for both fisheries health and drinking water quality standards. In fact, the City asks the SWRCB to establish flow and salinity standards in line with the Delta's historic fresh condition. The City also requests that the SWRCB consider using the gauging station at Antioch as a point of interest to ensure that flow criteria and salinity objectives are met.

References

[CCWD] Contra Costa Water District. 2010. Report titled "Historical Freshwater and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay".

Cowell, J. W. 1963. History of Benicia Arsenal: Benicia, California: January 1851 – December 1962. Berkeley, Howell-North Books.

[DPW] Department of Public Works. 1931. *Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay.* Bulletin No. 27. State of California, Department of Public Works, Division of Engineering and Irrigation.

[DWR] Department of Water Resources. 1960. *Delta Water Facilities.* Bulletin No. 76. State of California.

Dillon, R. 1980. Great Expectations: The Story of Benicia, California, Fresno, California. 241 pp.

Means, T. 1928. Salt Water Problem: San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, San Francisco, California, April 1928. Report prepared for the Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.

Tolman, C. F. and J. F. Poland. 1935. *Investigation of the Ground-Water Supply of the Columbia Steel Company Pittsburg, California.* Stanford University, California, May 30, 1935.

Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District (1922, 188 Cal. 451).

---

[3] These estimates were made using IEP data in CCWD (2010), which will be presented by the Contra Costa Water District during this informational proceeding.

Testimony by City of Antioch

For SWRCB Delta Flow Criteria
Informational Proceeding
Submitted February 16, 2010
For hearings beginning March 22, 2010

Overview

- Antioch has taken fresh drinking water from the Delta since the 1860s
- Infrastructure and flow diversions have changed distribution and timing of freshwater flows
- Historic conditions were far fresher than current conditions
- Quality of water at Antioch has declined markedly

Why Is This Important ?

- Characterizations of the Delta as “historically saline” are false
- Native species are adapted to historical conditions, so historic salinity and flow patterns must be considered in establishing appropriate flow and salinity standards

What Should Happen ?

- SWRCB should review and incorporate historic salinity data into its analyses
- SWRCB should use historic data to establish an historic baseline of water quality and flows for both fisheries and drinking water quality standards

What Should Happen ?

- SWRCB should ensure that flows are not reduced, nor salinity increased, beyond levels assured by D-1641 and current X2 requirements
- In fact, the City of Antioch asks the SWRCB to establish flow and salinity standards in line with the Delta's historic fresh condition
- SWRCB should state that characterizations of the Delta as "historically saline" are false
- SWRCB should consider using Antioch's gauging station as a 'point of interest' to gauge flow and salinity conditions

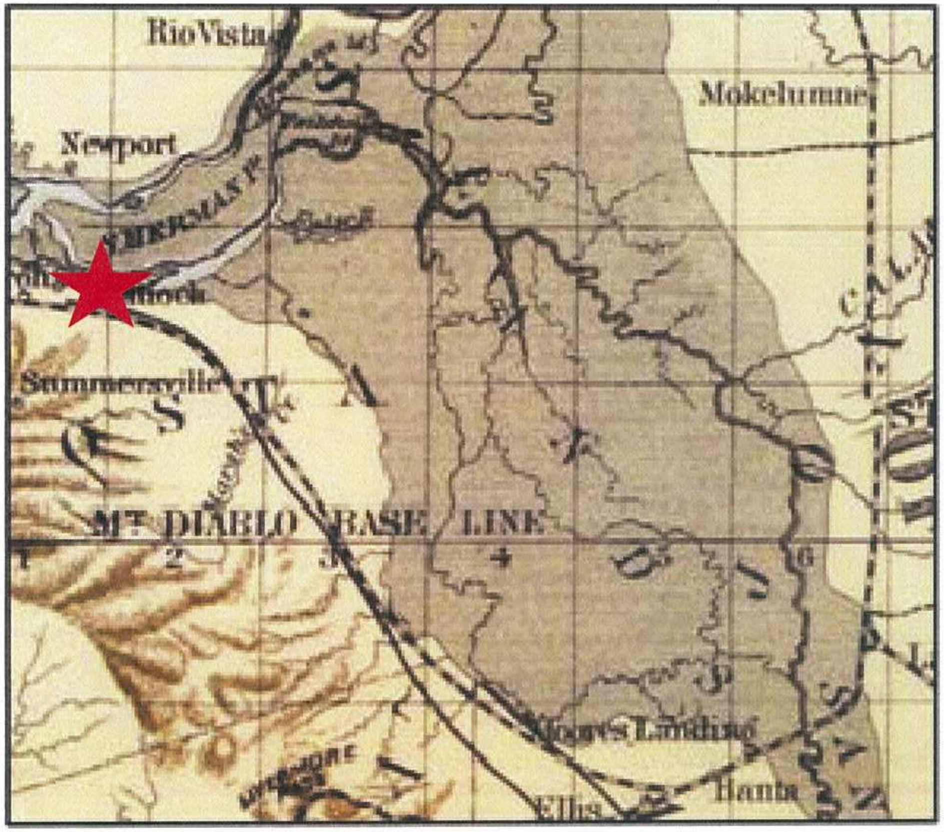
Systemic Changes Have Influenced Flows and Salinity

Factors Influencing Salinity

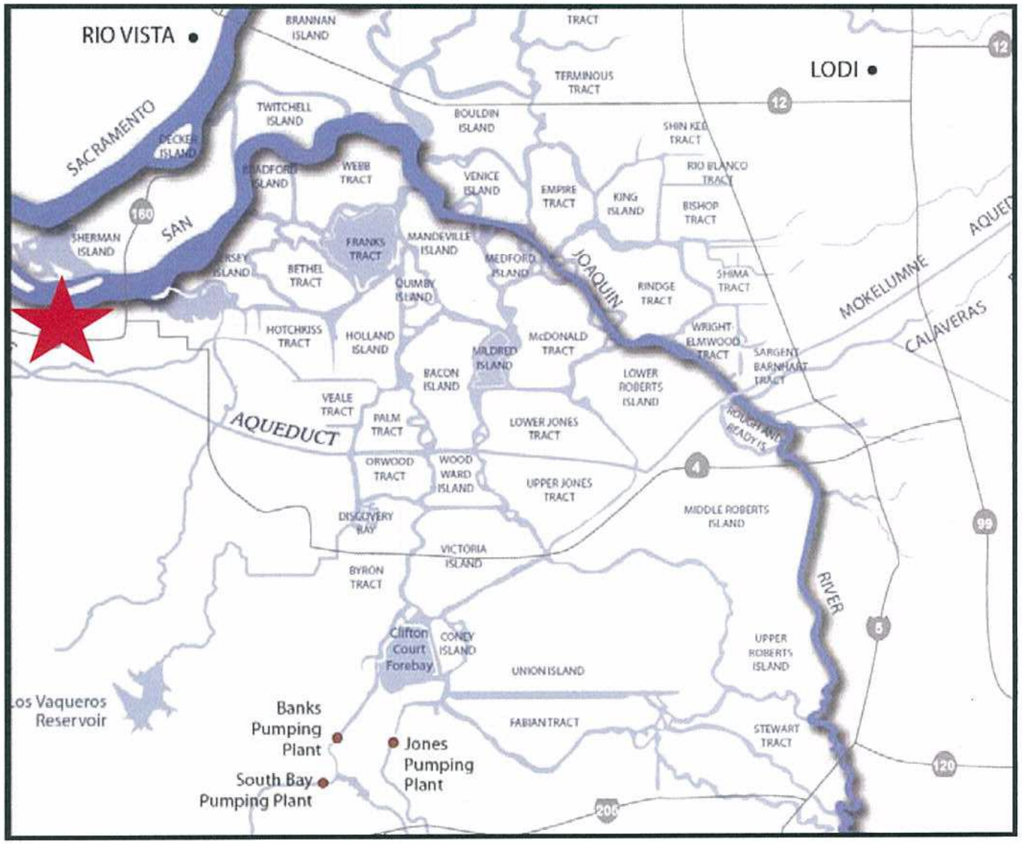
- Hydrology
- Changes to the Delta landscape
- Water Management
  - Exports
  - Diversions
  - Reservoir Storage

The Delta Landscape is Dramatically Different

1873



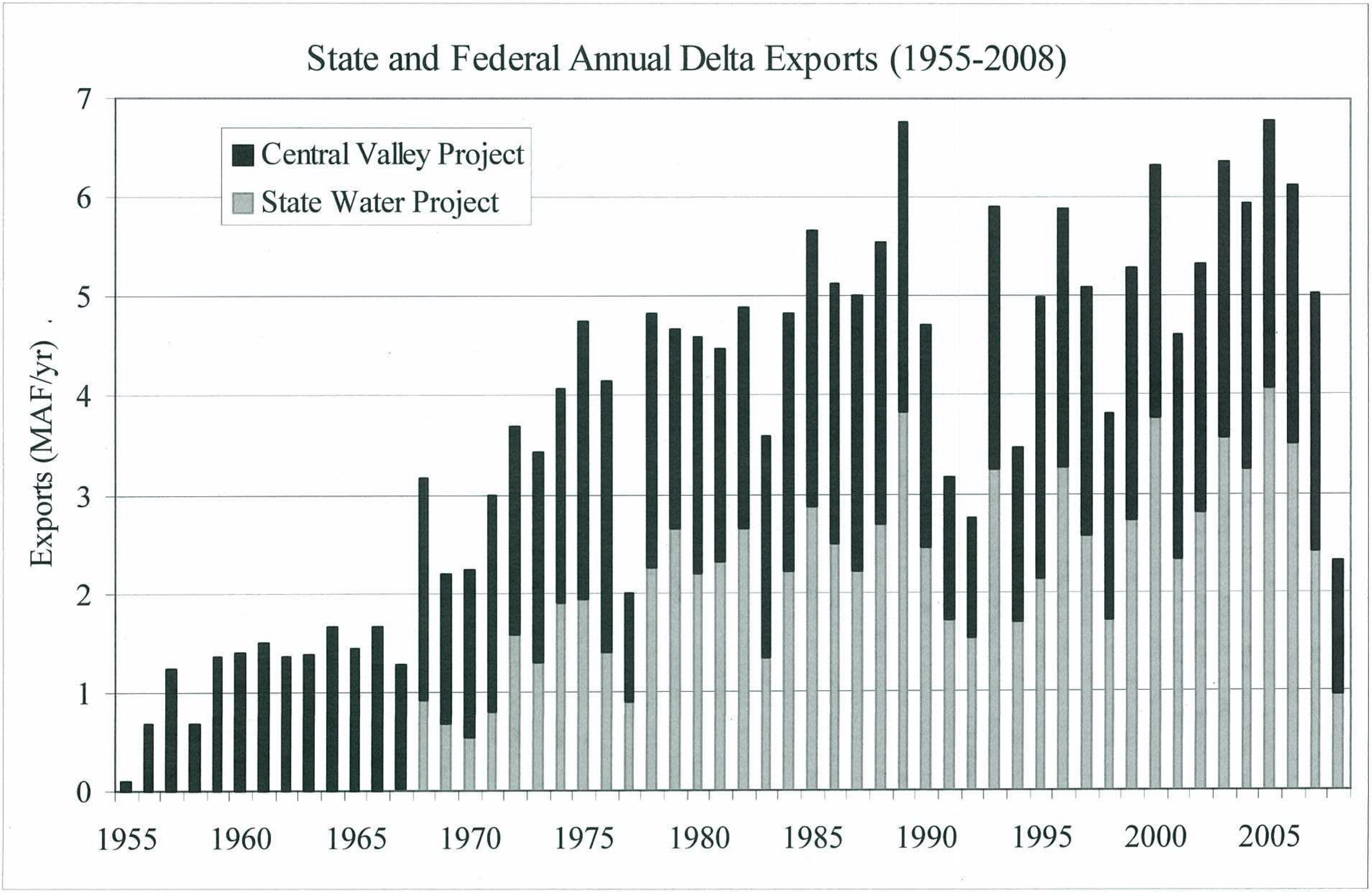
2010



★ Approximate location of City of Antioch's water intake

Source: left panel: DWR archives presented to Delta Vision (2008) final report; right panel: Delta Vision (2008)

Water Exports Have Increased and Remove Fresh Water from Delta



Data from IEP's DAYFLOW Program

Pre-1918, Fresh Water was Available in Western Delta Nearly Year-round

Location	Quotation
Antioch, CA	“*From early days, Antioch has obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from the San Joaquin River immediately offshore from the city… However, conditions were fairly satisfactory in this respect until 1917, when the increased degree and duration of saline invasion began to result in the water becoming too brackish for domestic use during considerable periods in the summer and fall.*” (DPW, 1931, pg. 60)
Western Delta	“*The dry years of 1917 to 1919, combined with increased upstream irrigation diversions, especially for rice culture in the Sacramento Valley, had already given rise to invasions of salinity into the upper bay and lower delta channels of greater extent and magnitude than had ever been known before.*” (DPW, 1931, pg. 22) “*It is particularly important to note that the period 1917-1929 has been one of unusual dryness and subnormal stream flow and that this condition has been a most important contributing factor to the abnormal extent of saline invasion which has occurred during this same time.*” (DPW, 1931, pg. 66)
Carquinez Strait (Western Delta)	“*Under natural conditions, Carquinez Straits marked, approximately, the boundary between salt and fresh water in the upper San Francisco Bay and delta region…*” (Means, 1928, pg. 9) “*For short intervals in late summer of years of minimum flow, salt water penetrated at lower river and delta region, and in wet seasons the upper bay was fresh, part of the time, to the Golden Gate.*” (Means, 1928, pg. 9 & pg. 57)

DPW (1931). Bulletin No. 27. State of California, Department of Public Works, See http://www.archive.org/details/variationcontrol27calirich

Means, T. (1928). Salt Water Problem: San Francisco Bay and Delta of Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, San Francisco, California, April 1928. A report prepared for the Association of Industrial Water Users of Contra Costa and Solano Counties.

Pre-1918, Fresh Water was Available in Western Delta Nearly Year-round

Location	Quotation
Benicia, CA (Suisun Bay)	“*In 1889, an artificial lake was constructed. This reservoir, filled with fresh water from Suisun Bay during the spring runoff of the Sierra snow melt water …*” (Dillon, 1980, pg. 131) “*…in 1889, construction began on an artificial lake for the* [Benicia] *arsenal which would serve throughout its remaining history as a reservoir, being filled with fresh water pumped from Suisun Bay during spring runoffs of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers which emptied into the bay a short distance north of the installation.*” (Cowell, 1963, pg. 31)
Pittsburg, CA	“*From 1880 to 1920, Pittsburg (formerly Black Diamond) obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from New York Slough [near Pittsburg at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers] offshore.*” (DPW, 1931, pg. 60) “*There was an inexhaustible supply of river water available in the New York Slough* [near Pittsburg at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers], *but in the summer of 1924 this river water showed a startling rise in salinity to 1,400 ppm of chlorine, the first time in many years that it had grown very brackish during the dry summer months.*” (Tolman and Poland, 1935, pg. 27)

Cowell, J. W. 1963. History of Benicia Arsenal: Benicia, California: January 1851 – December 1962. Berkeley, Howell-North Books
Dillon, R. 1980. Great Expectations: The Story of Benicia, California, Fresno, California. 241 pp.
Tolman, C. F. and J. F. Poland. 1935. *Investigation of the Ground-Water Supply of the Columbia Steel Company Pittsburg, California*. Stanford University, California, May 30, 1935

Testimony from Antioch Lawsuit: Pre-1918, Fresh Water was Available at Antioch Year-round

- Antioch lawsuit in 1920: Town of Antioch [plaintiff] v. Williams Irrigation District et al. [defendants] (1922, 188 Cal. 451)

- Plaintiff alleged that the upstream diversions were causing increased salinity intrusion at Antioch

- Testimony from defendants in the Antioch lawsuit (from the supporting Supreme Court record on file at the State Archives) (CCWD, 2010)
    - In the late 1800s, water at Antioch was known to be brackish at high tide during certain time periods.
    - Antioch was able to pump fresh water at low tide throughout the year, with the possible exception of the fall season during one or two dry years.
    - Water at Antioch was apparently fresh at low tide at least until around 1915 (when the pumping plants started pumping continuously, regardless of tidal stage).

Testimony from Antioch Lawsuit: Pre-1918, Fresh Water was Available at Antioch in Fall

Testimony from plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit (from the supporting Supreme Court record on file at the State Archives)

- Antioch's freshwater supply was obtained directly from the western Delta from about 1866 to 1918 (pg. 47-48).

- Prior to 1918, freshwater was available at Antioch even during dry years and in the fall (pg. 23-24).

Date	Location	Salinity (ppm)
1913 (Sept; a dry year)	Antioch	66
1916 (Aug. 5th; wet year)	Antioch	22.3
1916 (Aug. 9th; wet year)	Antioch	12.3
1916 (Sept. 19th; wet year)	Antioch	101.3
1917 (Sept. 14th; wet year)	Antioch	141.6

Testimony from Antioch Lawsuit: Post-1918, Upstream Diversions Drastically Increased Salinity Intrusion

Testimony from <u>plaintiff</u> in the Antioch lawsuit (continued)

- After 1918, salinity abruptly increased during irrigation (rice cultivation) season, and returned to a potable level after irrigation ceased (pg. 18-20)

Date	Location	Salinity (ppm)
1918 (Sept. 25th; dry year)	Antioch	1360
1920 (mid-July; critical year)	Pittsburg, CA	4500
1920 (end-July; critical year)	Pittsburg, CA	6000
1920 (mid-Aug.; critical year)	Pittsburg, CA	9500
1920 (end-Sept.; critical year)	Pittsburg, CA	2500
1920 (during rice irrigation; critical year)	Antioch	12,500
1920 (end-Oct, after irrigation; critical year)	Pittsburg, CA	fresh

Measurements at Pittsburg, CA, are from the Great Western Electro Chemical Co.

- Information on the effect of upstream diversions is also confirmed by records in the plaintiff's testimony from C&H Sugar (see CCWD 2010).

Testimony from Antioch Lawsuit: Water at Antioch is from Sacramento River

- Testimony from plaintiff in the Antioch lawsuit (continued)

  - Plaintiff testimony asserted that in 1920 "the amount of water which the San Joaquin carried was dependent entirely upon the amount of water in the Sacramento," and that "the San Joaquin itself carried practically no water at all. In other words, it was demonstrated that the amount of fresh water which came into the San Joaquin and down as far as the Town of Antioch was practically all Sacramento River water." (pg. 15)

  - Water was delivered to the San Joaquin River from the Sacramento River via two main conduits: Georgiana Slough and Three Mile Slough. 1920 flow rates in these sloughs were the basis of the assertion quoted above.

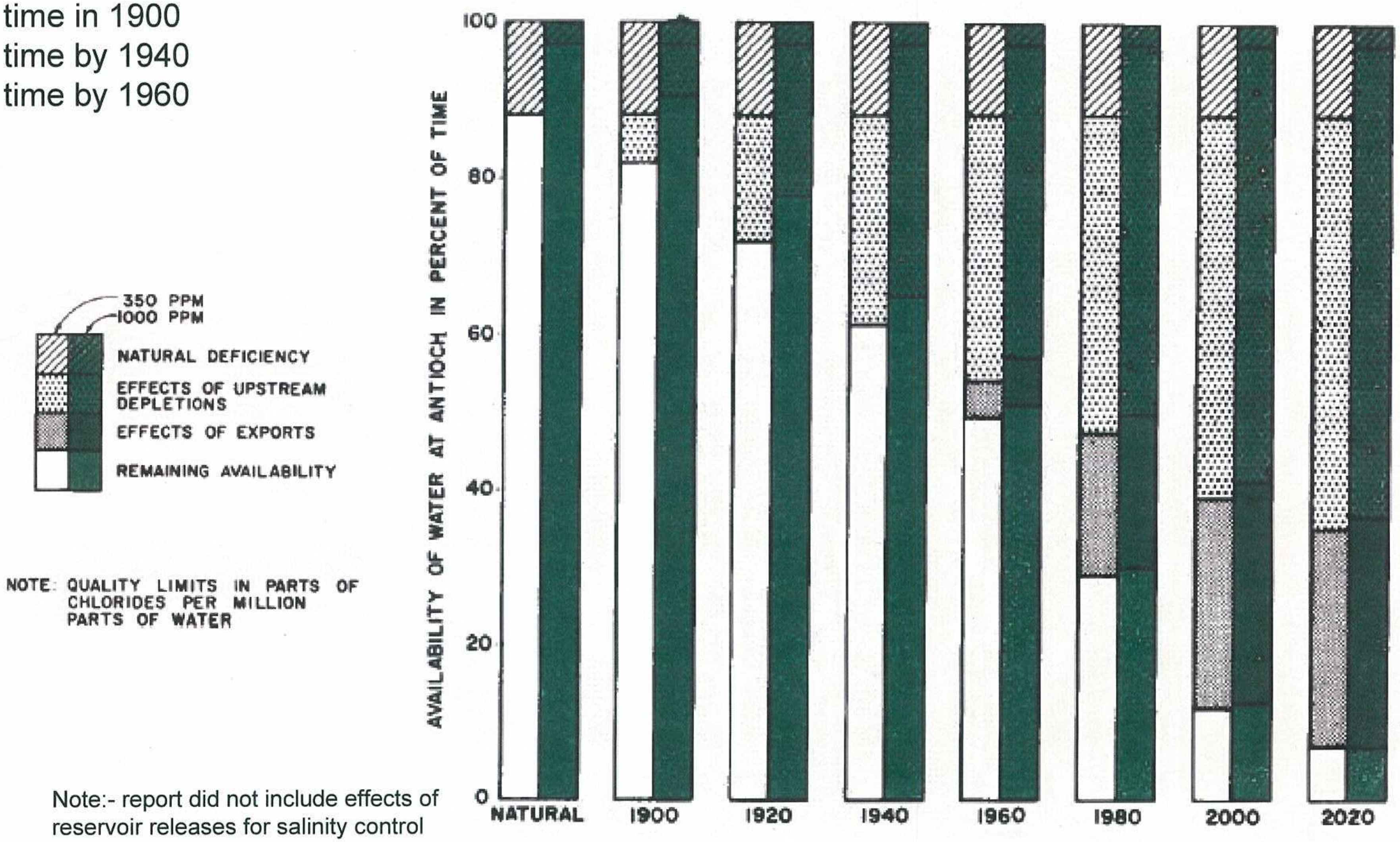
Testimony from Antioch Lawsuit: Water at Antioch is from Sacramento River

- "It is necessary here to state some additional facts to explain how this pollution comes about and why diversions from the Sacramento River may or do affect the volume and quality of the water flowing down the San Joaquin River . . . From the Sacramento River at two points, one about eight [Three Mile] and the other about twenty - three miles [Georgiana] above its mouth, sloughs diverge, into which parts of its waters escape and flow through the said sloughs and into the San Joaquin River at points several miles above the place of the diversion by the city of Antioch." Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District et al. (1922) 188 Cal. 451, 455

Freshwater Availability has Declined

DWR (1960, pg. 13) found that freshwater was available at San Joaquin River at Antioch:

- •85% of the time under “natural” conditions
- •80% of the time in 1900
- •60% of the time by 1940
- •50% of the time by 1960



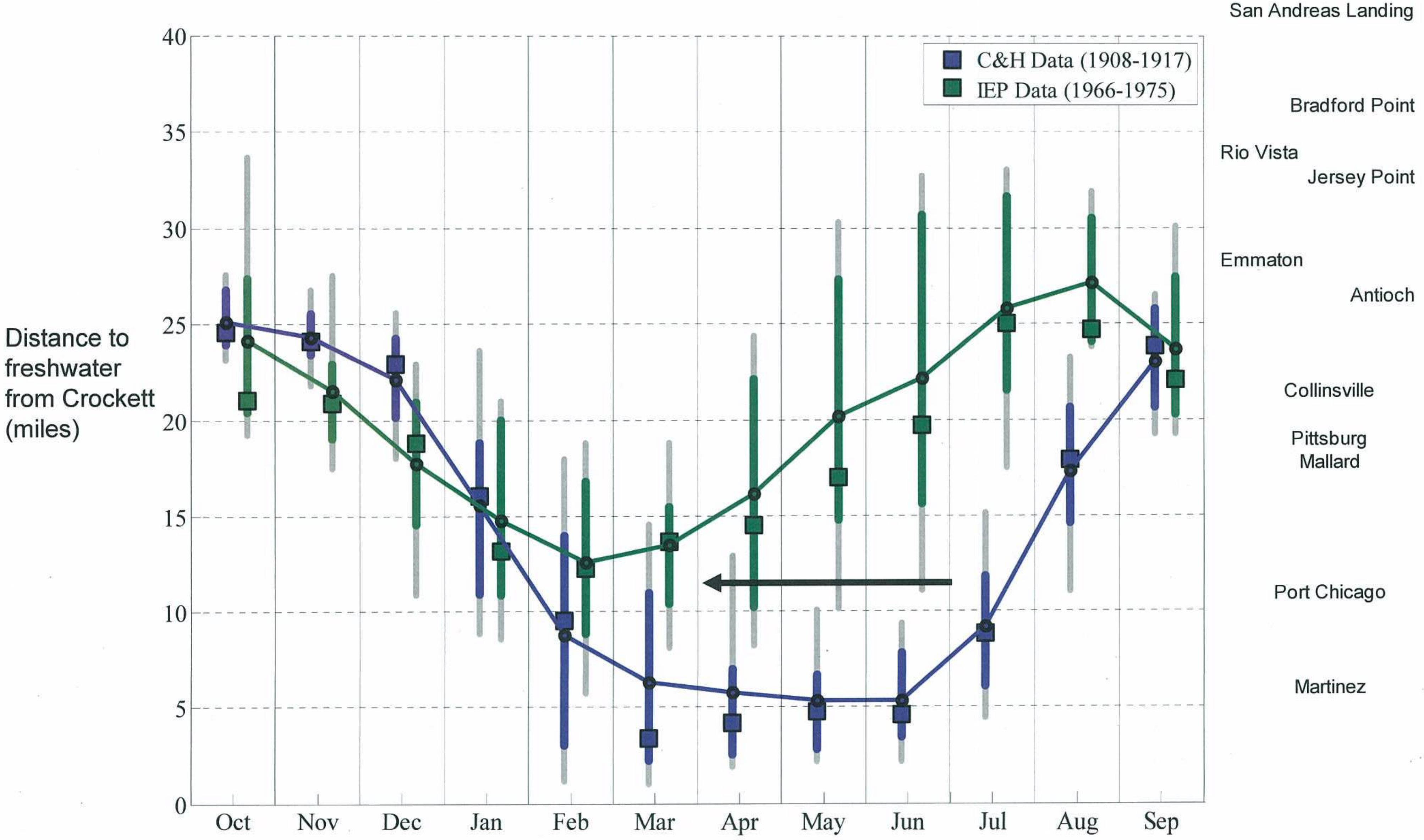
Note:- report did not include effects of reservoir releases for salinity control

DELTA WATER QUALITY WITHOUT SALINITY CONTROL

DWR (1960). Bulletin No. 76. State of California. See http://www.deltacorridors.com/uploads/Bulletin_No._76_Delta_Water_Facilities-Color.pdf

Salinity Intrusion Occurred Earlier by 1975

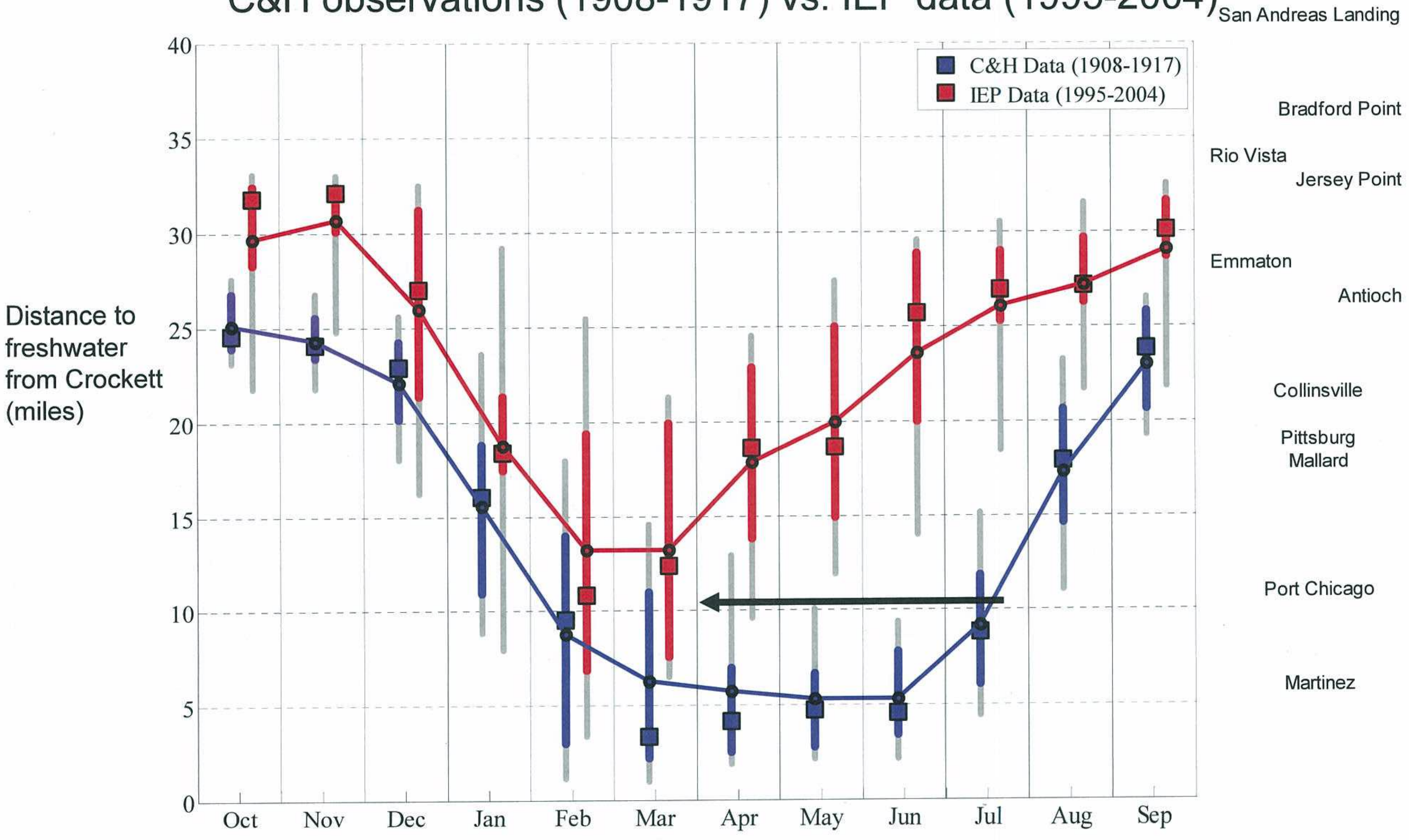
Distance to freshwater from Crockett (~25 miles west of Antioch)
C&H observations (1908-1917) vs. IEP data (1966-1975)



Source: CCWD Salinity Report (2010)

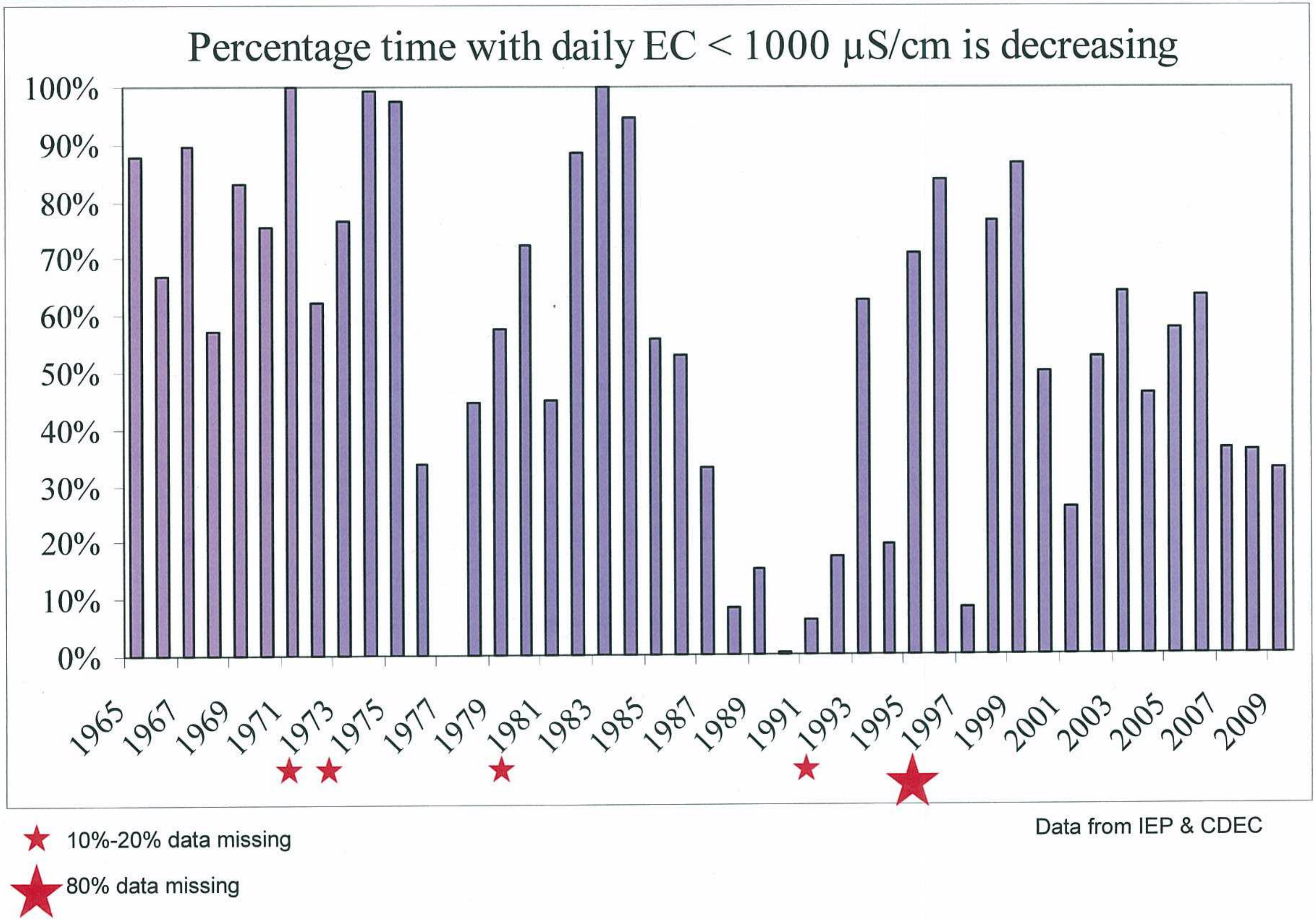
Salinity Intrusion Occurred Even Earlier and Extended Farther by 2004

Distance to freshwater from Crockett (~25 miles west of Antioch)
C&H observations (1908-1917) vs. IEP data (1995-2004)



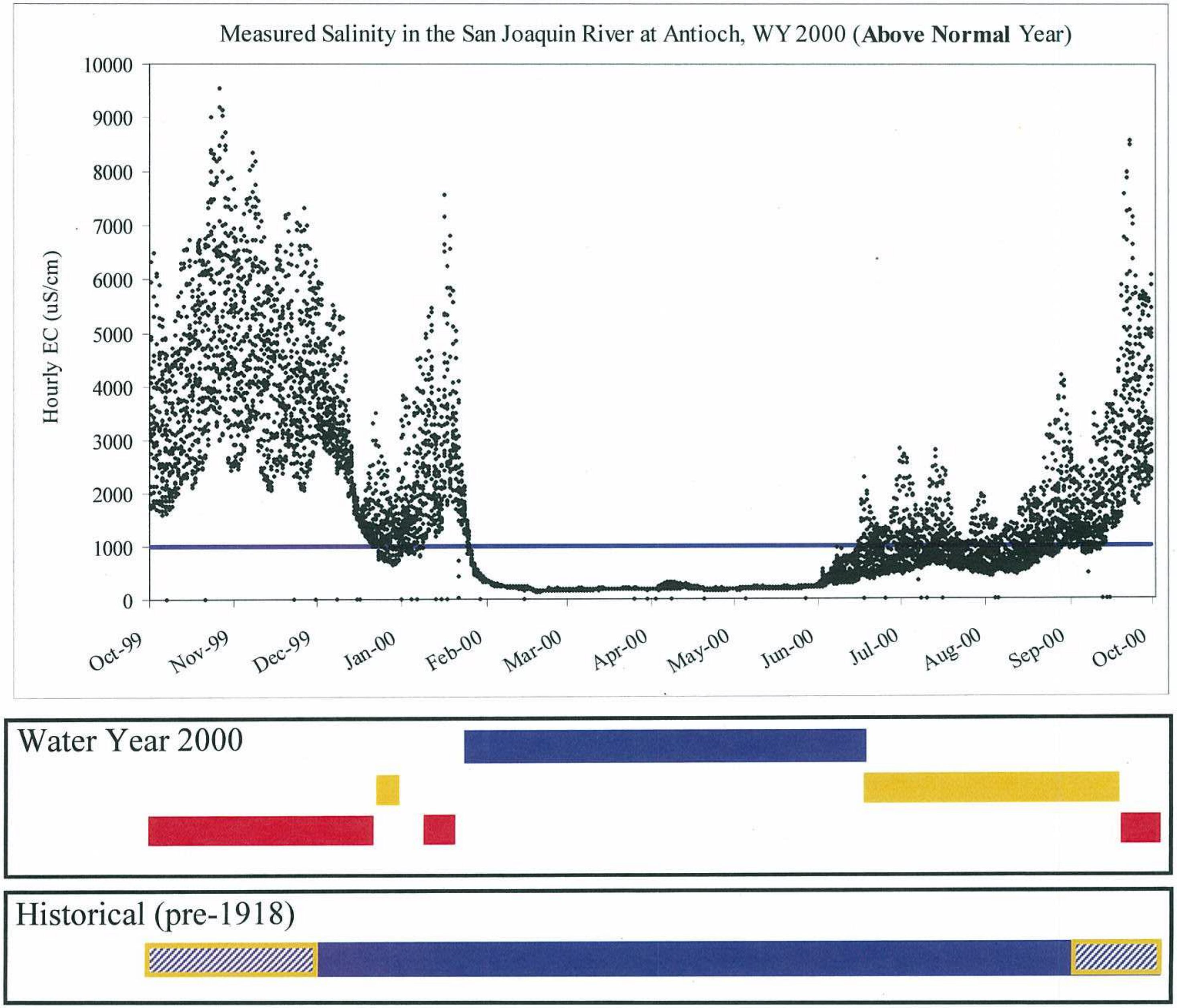
Source: CCWD Salinity Report (2010)

Freshwater Availability at Antioch Continues to Decline



Data from IEP & CDEC

Even in Above Normal Years, Freshwater is Now Unavailable in Summer/Fall



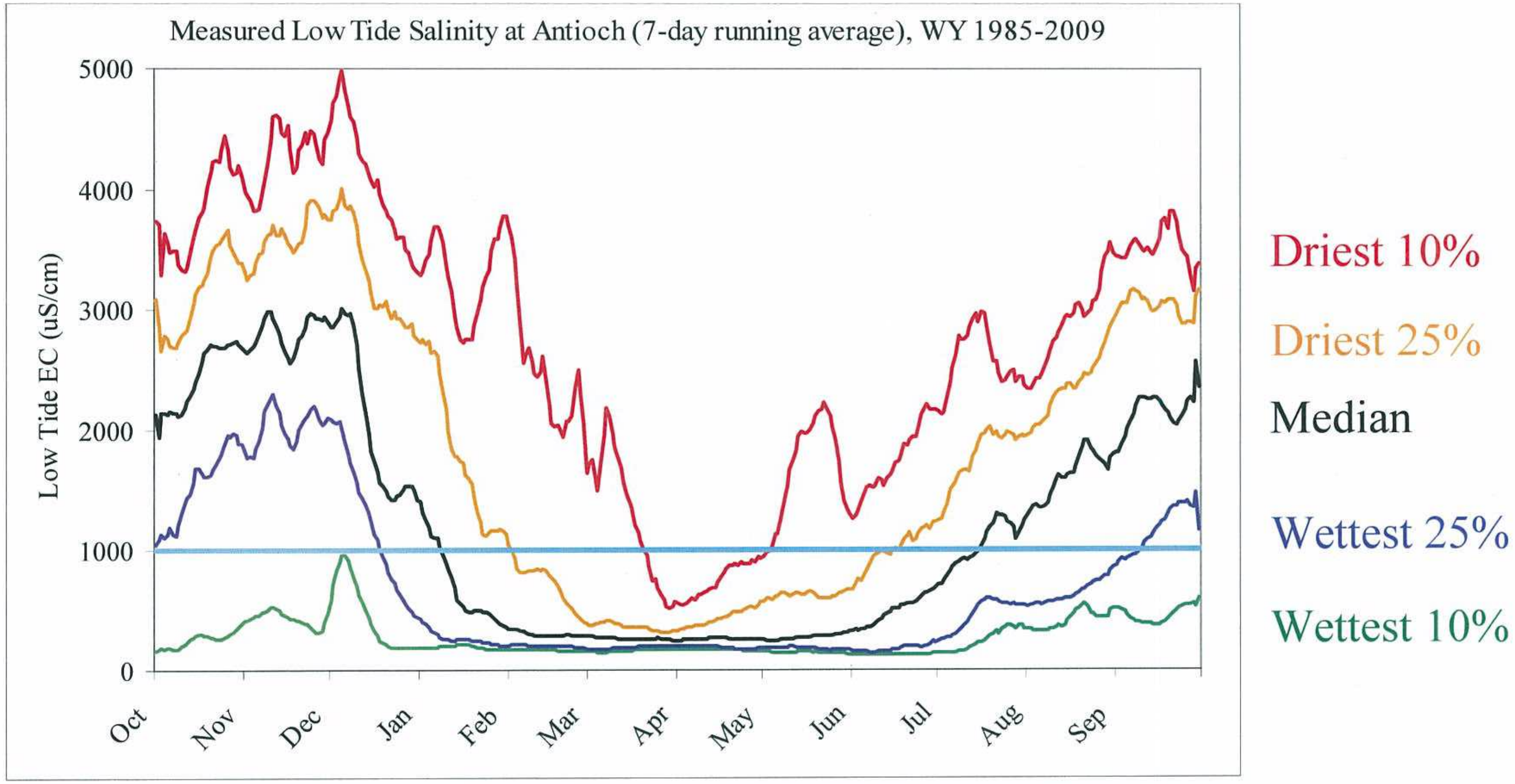
Freshwater Criterion
< 1000 EC

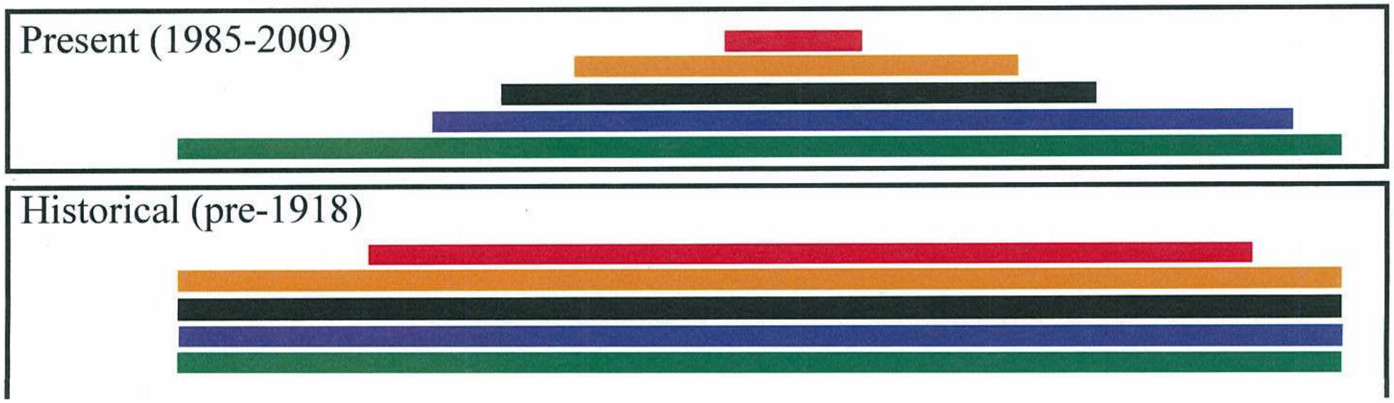
< 1000 EC all day
< 1000 EC low tide only
> 1000 EC all day

Pre-1918,
freshwater was
available year-round

Data from CDEC

Freshwater is Now Available at Antioch Far Less Often





Pre-1918, freshwater was available year-round at low tide in all but driest years

Data from CDEC

Summary: The Western Delta was Historically Fresher

- Pre-1918, freshwater was almost always available at least at low tide.
- Between 1918 and the late 1930s, drought conditions, upstream water diversions, and channelization increased the salinity of water at Antioch.
- By 1940 the drought receded, but salinity at Antioch remained elevated.
- Salinity continues to increase in recent years at Antioch.
- The fraction of time that water at Antioch is suitable for use (when salinity is < 250 mg/L chlorides or 1000 µS/cm EC) has declined significantly.
- “Historic” Delta was significantly fresher than the current Delta.

Conclusions

Consider historic fresh conditions to:

Establish Delta outflows and inflows to protect species adapted to these conditions.

Establish the criteria (volume, timing, quality) required by SB 7X 1.

Establish drinking water quality standards for the Delta.

Flow Science Incorporated
723 E. Green St., Pasadena, CA 91101
(626) 304-1134 • FAX (626) 304-9427

April 14, 2010

Division of Water Rights
State Water Resources Control Board
Attention: Phillip Crader
P.O. Box 2000
Sacramento, CA 95812-2000

Re: Delta Flow Criteria Closing Comments

Dear Mr. Crader:

Flow Science, on behalf of the City of Antioch, appreciates this opportunity to submit closing comments to the SWRCB regarding its development of Delta Flow criteria for the purpose of informing planning decisions for the Delta Plan and the Bay Delta Conservation Plan.

Our closing comments include key points and recommendations for SWRCB consideration, supported by our written testimony and exhibits and the oral testimony provided at the hearings on March 22-24, 2010. Because we do not have the biological expertise to recommend specific flow rates and flow volumes, we are not providing specific quantitative recommendations with this submittal.

At the March 2010 hearing, we suggested that it may be useful for the SWRCB to consider a process of simultaneously working from the "bottom up"—identifying the flow needs of fish—and working from the "top down"—analyzing flows that can be provided by the current system and systems operations, in the context of other beneficial uses, including upstream flow and temperature requirements, and water supply needs. On behalf of the City of Antioch, I would be happy to work with SWRCB Staff to explore the advantages of such a process and to participate in such a process.

Key Points for SWRCB consideration

As discussed in our February 16, 2010, written submittal, the City of Antioch has been diverting water for drinking water use from the western Delta since the 1860s. In its written testimony, the City of Antioch has provided the SWRCB with information and data on historical flows and salinity conditions in the western Delta (testimony submitted by the City of Antioch on February 16, 2010, and incorporated here by reference in its entirety; see http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/deltaflow/antioch.shtml). Key points in the City's oral and written testimony include the following:

1. Historical fresh conditions must be considered in any effort to restore ecological conditions in the Delta.

We believe that it is essential for the SWRCB and its Independent Science Team to consider the historical salinity and flow conditions within which the Delta fisheries thrived, to ensure that the Delta flow criteria and other standards will ensure the protection of public trust resources, i.e. the future biological and ecological integrity of the Delta.

Systemic changes in the Delta over the years have reduced freshwater flows and dramatically increased salinity (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 1). Infrastructure and flow diversions have changed distribution and timing of freshwater flows, and historic conditions were far fresher than current conditions (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 2-4 & Document #6, p. 16-21).

It has sometimes been contended that the Delta was historically saline. As mentioned in our oral testimony (and as documented in the City's written testimony at p. 4-5 of Document #5), while the system experienced variability in flows and salinity in the past, the variability existed in a significantly fresher Delta, especially in the fall, spring and early summer months. As shown in Contra Costa Water District's submittal "Historical Freshwater and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay" (at p. v and p. 47), while variability occurred historically, the levels of salinity were much lower than current conditions.

2. Native species are adapted to historical conditions, so historic salinity and flow patterns must be considered in establishing appropriate flow and salinity standards.

Our oral testimony during the March 2010 Informational Proceeding outlined the changes that have occurred to alter the flow and salinity environment in the Delta. This testimony on such changes was supported by other panelists. These changes include, in approximate chronological order:

- Alterations to Delta channels and loss of marshlands (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 1-2 & Document #6, p. 7)
- Alterations to sedimentation and transport patterns (Antioch testimony, Document #6, p. 7)
- Diversions of flows upstream of the Delta including the dewatering of significant portions of the San Joaquin River (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 2 & Document #6, p. 14-15)
- Diversions/exports of flows from the Delta and from Delta channels themselves (Antioch testimony, Document #6, p. 8 & p. 16)

3. Because of these changes to the Delta, flow now plays a more crucial role than in the past, in order to maintain or improve physical habitat and water quality in the Delta.

We encourage the SWRCB to explore and document the biological significance of the historical changes in flow and salinity regimes, and to consider this information in its recommendations. It is critical to keep in mind the significance of Sacramento River flows on the health of the public trust resources in the Delta.

Closing Recommendations

1. SWRCB should review, consider, and incorporate historic salinity data into its Flow Criteria analyses. The City of Antioch and Contra Costa Water District have provided valuable data regarding historic Delta flow and lower salinity conditions.
2. SWRCB should use historic flow and salinity data to establish a baseline of water quality and flows sufficient to restore public trust resources in the Delta.
3. SWRCB should ensure that flows are not reduced, nor salinity increased, beyond levels assured by D-1641 and current X2 requirements. Ideally, the SWRCB should increase flows to more proximate historic conditions of outflow and low salinity. The City is not recommending that historic flows be completely restored as this is not practical and could potentially impact other beneficial uses. However, historic flows and historic low salinity levels supported native species and must be considered in making any determinations on restoring Delta flows.
4. Compliance points for outflow and salinity should <u>not</u> be moved land-ward (easterly) and should likely be established more westerly than present as supported by the historical data.
5. Due to the loss of historic San Joaquin River flows, it is critical that Sacramento River flows be maintained in and through the Delta – and that the SWRCB recognizes that such Sacramento River flows included significant flows into the Central and Western Delta through Georgiana and Three Mile Sloughs.
6. SWRCB should consider using Antioch's gauging station as a 'point of interest' to gauge flow and salinity conditions, given Antioch's historical diversion of fresh drinking water dating back to the 1860s.

Please feel free to contact me or Phil Harrington with any questions.

Sincerely,

Susan C. Paulsen

Susan C. Paulsen, Ph.D., P.E.
Vice President and Senior Scientist

cc: Phil Harrington

Flow Science Incorporated
723 E. Green St., Pasadena, CA 91101
(626) 304-1134 • FAX (626) 304-9427

November 11, 2012

State Water Resources Control Board
1001 I St.
Sacramento, CA 95814

Via email: commentletters@waterboards.ca.gov

Subject: Bay-Delta Workshop 3 – Analytical Tools for Evaluating the Water Supply, Hydrodynamic, and Hydropower Effects of the Bay-Delta Plan
FSI 064136

Dear Ms. Townsend and Members of the Board,

On behalf of the City of Antioch, Flow Science is pleased to submit comments for consideration by the State Water Resources Control Board (State Board) during its Comprehensive (Phase 2) Review and Update to the Bay-Delta Plan.

Background. The City of Antioch (Antioch), located along the San Joaquin River in the western portion of the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Delta (Delta), is one of the oldest towns in California. Since the 1860s, Antioch has obtained all or part of its freshwater supply directly from the San Joaquin River. The City, because of its position in the western Delta, is also concerned with the ecological health of the Delta and its long-term viability as a recreational destination. Antioch previously provided written comments and testimony for Bay-Delta Workshop 1, and incorporates that information by reference.

Recommendations to the Board. The information provided below is intended primarily to address the State Board's first question, regarding the types of analyses that should be completed to estimate the water supply, hydrodynamic, and hydropower effects of potential changes to the Bay-Delta Plan. The City's comments focus on water supply and hydrodynamic issues, particularly effects to drinking water intakes (such as the City's) that are located within the Delta, and the tools available to address those effects. These comments are organized into three major categories: (1) validation of the operations model; (2) evaluation of water sources and relation to water quality; and (3) modifications necessary to evaluate habitat restoration and sea level rise. Recommendations are provided in italics at the end of each comment.

1. **Modeling should be extended to include recent years to allow validation of the operations model.** Most Delta modeling studies evaluate a period of record that ends approximately ten years ago. For example, the studies that are currently being conducted to evaluate the potential impacts of the Bay-Delta Conservation Plan (BDCP) evaluate an 82-year hydrologic period extending from 1922-2003. These

studies use modeling tools such as CALSIM II to "re-operate" the system—i.e., historical hydrology is used as the basis for simulations of current operations and operations rules.

However, significant changes have occurred in the way in which California's water resources system is operated since 2003. For example, Judge Oliver Wanger delivered a number of decisions beginning in 2007 that reduced the amount of water that could be exported from the Delta, and that imposed specific requirements for flows within the Delta (e.g., Old and Middle River ("OMR") flows). Although these operational changes are simulated by CALSIM II, the models are not being used to simulate hydrologic conditions in 2007 or later. Thus, model results for the period of 2007-present cannot be compared with observed conditions in the Delta for the same time period, and it has not been established that the models adequately simulate these new conditions.

The City recommends that the State Board examine model results for the period of 2007-present to establish that the available models accurately simulate conditions under current operational rules.

2. **The source of water in the Delta is an important determinant of water quality and should be considered when establishing water quality standards.** Much of the water in the western Delta (including the City's water supply) comes from the Sacramento River. Historically, significant amounts of Sacramento River water flowed into the San Joaquin River east of Antioch at Three Mile and Georgiana Sloughs. Sacramento River water also reaches Antioch where the river merges with the San Joaquin River just west of the City, and as a result of tidal mixing within the Delta. (See also Town of Antioch v. Williams Irrigation District et al. (1922) 188 Cal. 451, 455.)

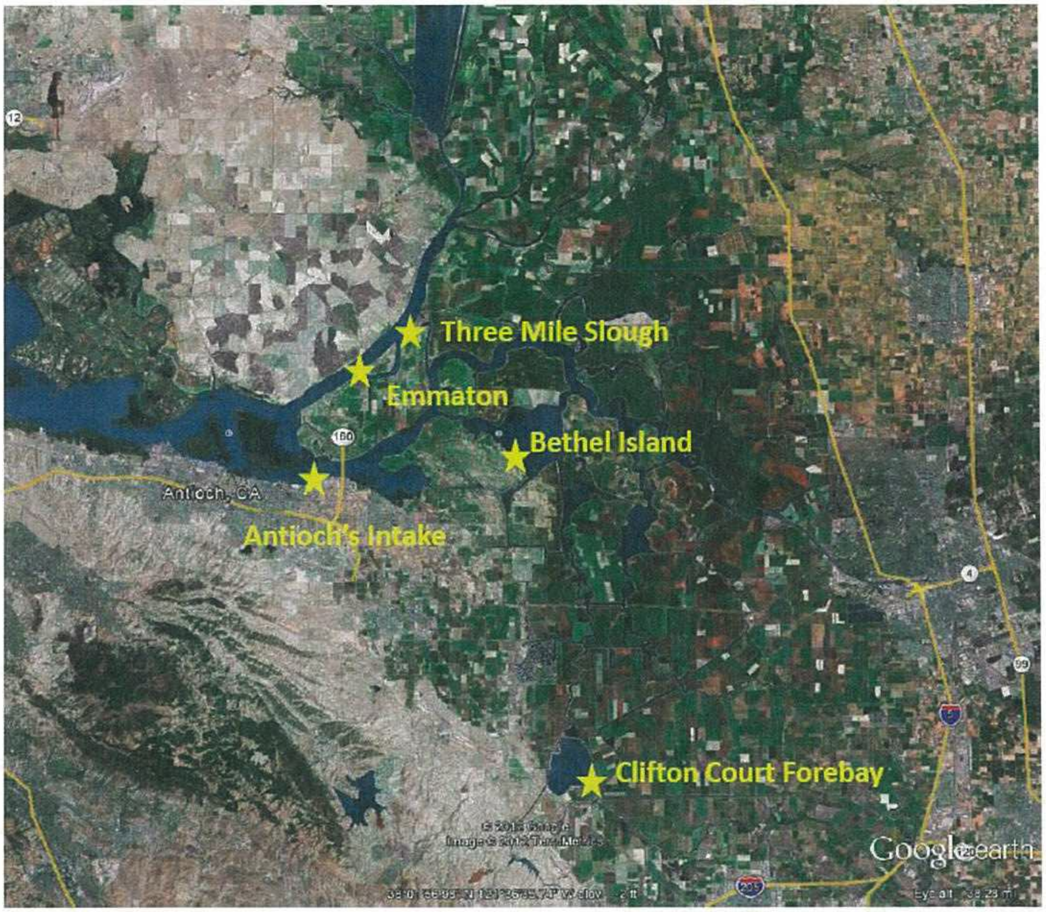
As will be demonstrated below, even though the City's intake is located on the San Joaquin River, very little San Joaquin River water is present at this location. Further, the source of water within the Delta is a strong determinant of the quality of water, and should be considered when evaluating potential future changes to the Delta or to water quality objectives for the Delta.

My graduate work[1] investigated the sources of water in the Delta, and is illustrative in demonstrating the importance of water sources. Daily composite samples were collected at five locations within the Delta in the 1996-1997 time period, and the geochemistry of these samples were used to identify the source of water at the export pumps in the South Delta. Specifically, concentrations of sodium, calcium, magnesium, and strontium were used to develop "fingerprints" for Sacramento River water, San Joaquin River water, and water from San Francisco Bay, and to calculate

---

[1] S. C. Paulsen, 1997. A study of the mixing of natural flows using ICP-MS and the elemental composition of waters. Ph.D. Thesis, California Institute of Technology, May 22, 1997.

the fraction of water from each of those sources in water samples collected at Clifton Court Forebay and at Bethel Island, in the interior of the Delta (see **Map** below).



Map. Location of the City of Antioch's drinking water intake. Clifton Court Forebay, Bethel Island, Emmaton, and Three Mile Slough are also shown, and are referenced in these comments.

As shown in **Figure 1**, the chemical fingerprints were used to compute the source of water at Clifton Court Forebay and at Bethel Island. The blue bars indicate that most water at the State Water Project intakes originated from the Sacramento River; pink bars indicate the fraction that originated in the San Joaquin River, and the green bars (very small, near the top of the figures) indicate the fraction from the Bay at Martinez. (Note that it was assumed, mathematically, that all the water at these locations originated from the three sources; sources of water interior to the Delta were not considered, but were relatively minor.)

Figure 1a: Source fractions determined at Clifton Court Forebay using source "fingerprints"

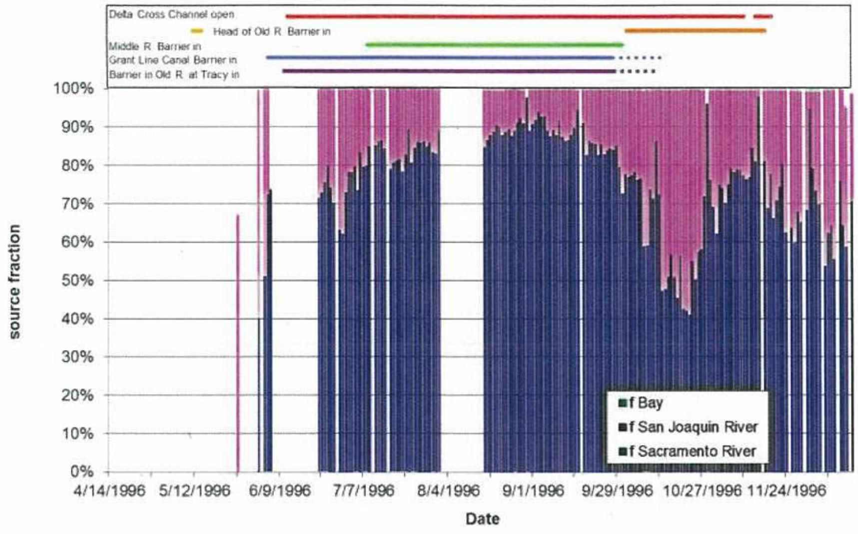


Figure 1b: Source fractions determined at Bethel Island using chemical "fingerprints"

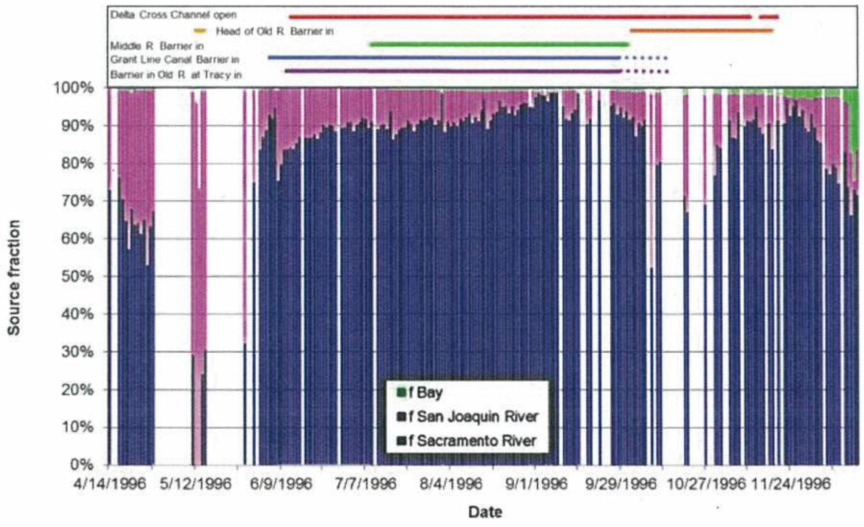


Figure 1. Fraction of water present at Clifton Court Forebay (panel 1a) and Bethel Island (panel 1b) that originated from the Sacramento River, the San Joaquin River, and San Francisco Bay at Martinez. Concentrations of sodium, magnesium, calcium, and strontium were measured in daily composite samples collected at these locations; "source fractions" were calculated to add to 100%.

As shown in **Figure 2**, sodium, a surrogate for salinity, was one of the elements measured at Clifton Court Forebay, the entrance to the State Water Project. **Figure 2** includes open circles, which show the sodium concentration measured in water collected from Clifton Court Forebay on a daily basis. The shaded bars indicate the source of the sodium in those samples based on source fingerprinting – i.e., the fraction of water in each day's sample that was calculated using the source fingerprints to have originated in the two rivers and the Bay. Even though the San Joaquin River was a relatively small fraction of the water (generally 10-30%), the San Joaquin River was the source of just over 50%, on average, of the salinity at this location. As expected, the presence of even small amounts of water from the Bay contributed to a large fraction of the salinity at this location toward the end of the study period. At Bethel Island (in the interior of the Delta), most salinity originated from the Bay.

Figure 2a: Sources and concentration of sodium at Clifton Court Forebay

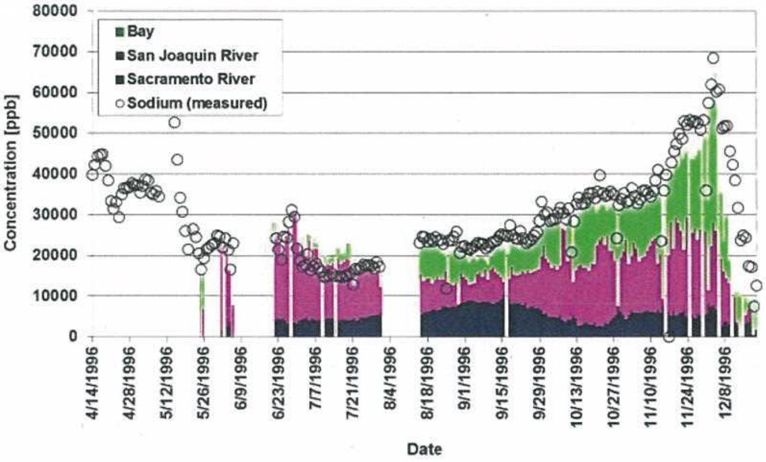


Figure 2b: Source and concentration of sodium (salinity) at Bethel Island

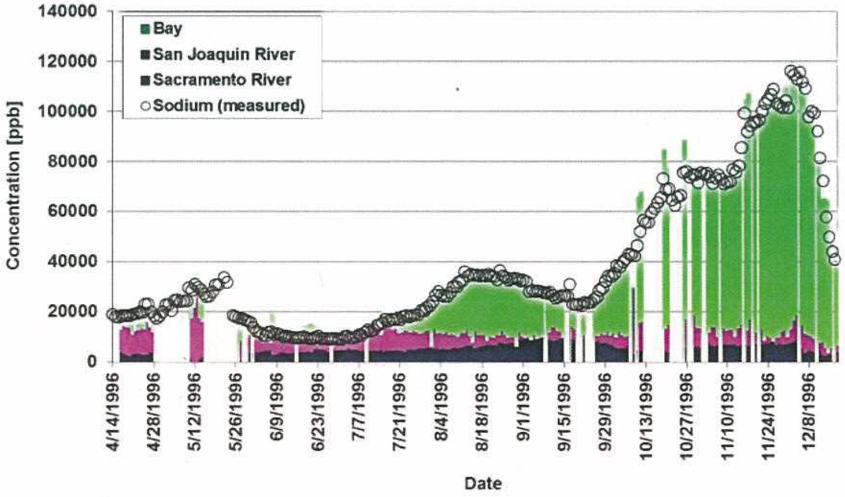


Figure 2. Concentrations and sources of sodium (a surrogate for salinity) at Clifton Court Forebay (panel 1a) and Bethel Island (panel 1b) that originated from the Sacramento River, the San Joaquin River, and San Francisco Bay at Martinez. Open circles show concentrations of sodium measured at these locations; colored bars show the concentration of sodium from each of the three major sources of water to the Delta, calculated from source fingerprints shown in Figure 1.

These results were used to validate source fractions predicted by Delta models. **Figure 3** shows source fractions predicted for this time period by the Fischer Delta Model (FDM); results obtained using the Department of Water Resources Delta Simulation Model II (DSM2) are not shown but are similar. In general, the model reproduces the source fractions that were calculated from direct water chemistry measurements quite well, giving us confidence that the models can simulate the source of water within the Delta with reasonable accuracy.

Figure 3a: Source fractions simulated at Clifton Court Forebay using the Fischer Delta Model (FDM)

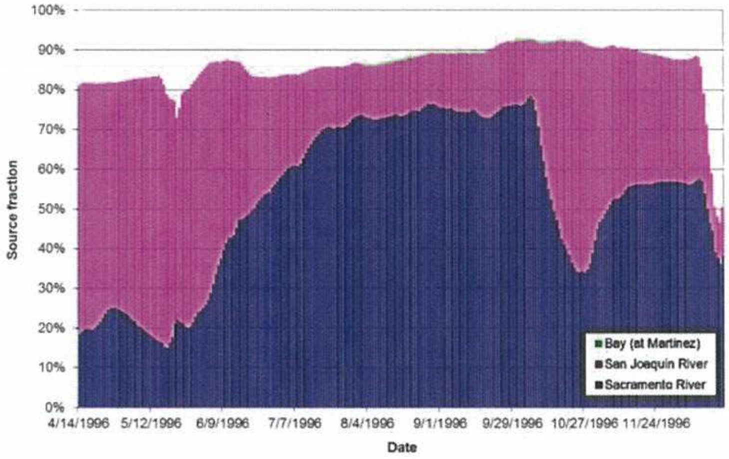


Figure 3b: Source fractions simulated at Bethel Island using the Fischer Delta Model (FDM)

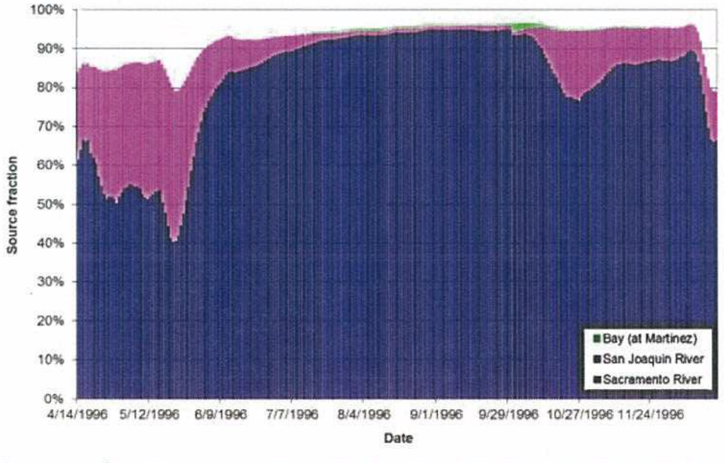


Figure 3. Source fractions predicted by the Fischer Delta Model (FDM) at Clifton Court Forebay (panel 1a) and Bethel Island (panel 1b) that originated from the Sacramento River, the San Joaquin River, and San Francisco Bay at Martinez. Results from the DSM2 model (not shown) are similar.

Model studies have confirmed that, over a much longer period, very little San Joaquin River water reaches San Francisco Bay, particularly during dry conditions. (See, for example, Flow Science 2008, *Effect of Increased Flow in the San Joaquin River on*

Stage, Velocity, and Water Fate, Water years 1964 and 1988.) Most San Joaquin River water is diverted within the Delta (in-Delta consumptive use) or exported from the Delta.

Future changes to the Delta may include the construction and operation of water intakes in the North Delta (as proposed by the BDCP), which would export Sacramento River water from the Delta. Some fraction of the river's flow, which formerly flowed from the Sacramento River into the Central, South, and Western Delta, would be diverted before it reached these areas of the Delta. In addition, exports from the South Delta, which historically have been composed primarily of water from both the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, would decrease or even be eliminated during certain time periods.

Changes in the point at which water is diverted from the Delta would also, therefore, change the composition of water within the Delta, and the residence time of water within the Delta (i.e., the time period water is resident in the Delta before either being diverted/exported or flowing to the Bay).

Antioch's prior testimony presented preliminary model results from the BDCP process that indicated that the proposed project would increase salinity at the City's intake. Salinity increases were simulated to be particularly large during the late summer and fall months of above normal and wet years, and were largely independent of the salinity increases projected to occur as a function of sea level rise. That testimony is incorporated by reference and is not repeated here, except to say that the proposed project has serious and potentially irreversible implications for the City's water supply and for the municipal/domestic supply (MUN) beneficial use in the western Delta.

These comments, instead, focus on a second point: that other aspects of water quality are also important and should be evaluated. Not only does the San Joaquin River have higher salinity water than the Sacramento River, it also has higher concentrations of other water quality constituents, such as pesticides and selenium. Decreasing exports from the South Delta also is likely to increase the residence time of water in the Delta, potentially resulting in worsening water quality due to higher concentrations of in-Delta agricultural discharge water and potentially higher temperature, algae levels, and lower dissolved oxygen levels.

The City recommends that the source of water, water quality impacts, and impacts of changed residence time be modeled and evaluated by the State Board as part of its effort to establish objectives for the Bay-Delta.

3. **Creation of new habitat, combined with sea level rise, has the potential to alter hydrodynamics and salinity within the Delta.** As noted in prior testimony, habitat creation can result in unintended consequences—e.g., depending on the location and design of new habitat, salinity levels in the western Delta could be increased as a direct consequence of habitat creation.

   In addition, models typically retain current geometry when simulating new habitat. However, flooding new areas may affect hydrodynamics throughout the region and will certainly affect currents and sediment transport in the channels adjacent to the new habitat. Over time, there will likely be erosion in some areas and deposition in others, which in turn will affect velocity and turbidity. The geomorphic changes caused by the new habitat should be incorporated into the models, perhaps running multiple scenarios as the habitat evolves.

   Similarly, models typically retain the current geometry when simulating the higher water levels that will occur with sea level rise—i.e., the models typically assume that current channel walls and levees will extend vertically upward to the new water surface. This assumption, which implies that a sea wall will be built along the shoreline of the Bay and all Delta channels, is clearly incorrect. For instance, it is unlikely that levees would be built to prevent inundation of the salt ponds that are currently undergoing restoration in the north Bay. The model designers need input from policy makers to specify which areas in the future will be protected by sea walls and which will be open to inundation. Without this information, the models do not rigorously simulate the new shallow water areas that are likely to be important in determining hydrodynamics and tidal behavior in the Delta.

   The City recommends that model simulations rigorously evaluate the potential salinity and water quality impacts of new habitat that is expected during the life of the plan. Models should be adjusted, if necessary, to include shallow inundated areas that are not currently simulated but would be important at higher water levels.

In addition, and as detailed in prior testimony, Antioch believes that it is in the City's best interest, and in the interest of the Delta ecosystem, to maintain freshwater conditions in the western Delta. Thus, the City reiterates its requests that:

- Given historical conditions, salinity should not be allowed to rise (and outflows should not be allowed to decline) beyond existing levels as required by D-1641 and X2 operations criteria.
- Compliance points (such as the compliance point currently located at Emmaton) should not be moved landward (as is being proposed by the BDCP).
- The State Board should consider using the gauging station at Antioch as a point of interest for monitoring of both salinity and flow conditions in the western Delta.

- The State Board should ensure that mitigation is provided for impacts to beneficial uses that occur as a result of the BDCP project.

Please contact me at (626) 304-1134 if you have any questions regarding this submittal. We thank you for your consideration of these comments and for the opportunity to participate in the process to revise the Bay-Delta Plan.

Sincerely,

Susan C. Paulsen

Susan C. Paulsen, Ph.D., P.E.
President and Senior Scientist

Flow Science Incorporated
723 E. Green St., Pasadena, CA 91101
(626) 304-1134 • FAX (626) 304-9427

April 14, 2010

Division of Water Rights
State Water Resources Control Board
Attention: Phillip Crader
P.O. Box 2000
Sacramento, CA 95812-2000

Re: Delta Flow Criteria Closing Comments

Dear Mr. Crader:

Flow Science, on behalf of the City of Antioch, appreciates this opportunity to submit closing comments to the SWRCB regarding its development of Delta Flow criteria for the purpose of informing planning decisions for the Delta Plan and the Bay Delta Conservation Plan.

Our closing comments include key points and recommendations for SWRCB consideration, supported by our written testimony and exhibits and the oral testimony provided at the hearings on March 22-24, 2010. Because we do not have the biological expertise to recommend specific flow rates and flow volumes, we are not providing specific quantitative recommendations with this submittal.

At the March 2010 hearing, we suggested that it may be useful for the SWRCB to consider a process of simultaneously working from the "bottom up"—identifying the flow needs of fish—and working from the "top down"—analyzing flows that can be provided by the current system and systems operations, in the context of other beneficial uses, including upstream flow and temperature requirements, and water supply needs. On behalf of the City of Antioch, I would be happy to work with SWRCB Staff to explore the advantages of such a process and to participate in such a process.

Key Points for SWRCB consideration

As discussed in our February 16, 2010, written submittal, the City of Antioch has been diverting water for drinking water use from the western Delta since the 1860s. In its written testimony, the City of Antioch has provided the SWRCB with information and data on historical flows and salinity conditions in the western Delta (testimony submitted by the City of Antioch on February 16, 2010, and incorporated here by reference in its entirety; see http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/waterrights/water_issues/programs/bay_delta/deltaflow/antioch.shtml). Key points in the City's oral and written testimony include the following:

1. Historical fresh conditions must be considered in any effort to restore ecological conditions in the Delta.

We believe that it is essential for the SWRCB and its Independent Science Team to consider the historical salinity and flow conditions within which the Delta fisheries thrived, to ensure that the Delta flow criteria and other standards will ensure the protection of public trust resources, i.e. the future biological and ecological integrity of the Delta.

Systemic changes in the Delta over the years have reduced freshwater flows and dramatically increased salinity (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 1). Infrastructure and flow diversions have changed distribution and timing of freshwater flows, and historic conditions were far fresher than current conditions (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 2-4 & Document #6, p. 16-21).

It has sometimes been contended that the Delta was historically saline. As mentioned in our oral testimony (and as documented in the City's written testimony at p. 4-5 of Document #5), while the system experienced variability in flows and salinity in the past, the variability existed in a significantly fresher Delta, especially in the fall, spring and early summer months. As shown in Contra Costa Water District's submittal "Historical Freshwater and Salinity Conditions in the Western Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Suisun Bay" (at p. v and p. 47), while variability occurred historically, the levels of salinity were much lower than current conditions.

2. Native species are adapted to historical conditions, so historic salinity and flow patterns must be considered in establishing appropriate flow and salinity standards.

Our oral testimony during the March 2010 Informational Proceeding outlined the changes that have occurred to alter the flow and salinity environment in the Delta. This testimony on such changes was supported by other panelists. These changes include, in approximate chronological order:

- Alterations to Delta channels and loss of marshlands (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 1-2 & Document #6, p. 7)
- Alterations to sedimentation and transport patterns (Antioch testimony, Document #6, p. 7)
- Diversions of flows upstream of the Delta including the dewatering of significant portions of the San Joaquin River (Antioch testimony, Document #5, p. 2 & Document #6, p. 14-15)
- Diversions/exports of flows from the Delta and from Delta channels themselves (Antioch testimony, Document #6, p. 8 & p. 16)

3. Because of these changes to the Delta, flow now plays a more crucial role than in the past, in order to maintain or improve physical habitat and water quality in the Delta.

We encourage the SWRCB to explore and document the biological significance of the historical changes in flow and salinity regimes, and to consider this information in its recommendations. It is critical to keep in mind the significance of Sacramento River flows on the health of the public trust resources in the Delta.

Closing Recommendations

1. SWRCB should review, consider, and incorporate historic salinity data into its Flow Criteria analyses. The City of Antioch and Contra Costa Water District have provided valuable data regarding historic Delta flow and lower salinity conditions.
2. SWRCB should use historic flow and salinity data to establish a baseline of water quality and flows sufficient to restore public trust resources in the Delta.
3. SWRCB should ensure that flows are not reduced, nor salinity increased, beyond levels assured by D-1641 and current X2 requirements. Ideally, the SWRCB should increase flows to more proximate historic conditions of outflow and low salinity. The City is not recommending that historic flows be completely restored as this is not practical and could potentially impact other beneficial uses. However, historic flows and historic low salinity levels supported native species and must be considered in making any determinations on restoring Delta flows.
4. Compliance points for outflow and salinity should <u>not</u> be moved land-ward (easterly) and should likely be established more westerly than present as supported by the historical data.
5. Due to the loss of historic San Joaquin River flows, it is critical that Sacramento River flows be maintained in and through the Delta – and that the SWRCB recognizes that such Sacramento River flows included significant flows into the Central and Western Delta through Georgiana and Three Mile Sloughs.
6. SWRCB should consider using Antioch's gauging station as a 'point of interest' to gauge flow and salinity conditions, given Antioch's historical diversion of fresh drinking water dating back to the 1860s.

Please feel free to contact me or Phil Harrington with any questions.

Sincerely,

Susan C. Paulsen

Susan C. Paulsen, Ph.D., P.E.
Vice President and Senior Scientist

cc: Phil Harrington

Public Workshop (9/5-6/12)
Bay-Delta Workshop 1
Deadline: 8/17/12 by 12 noon

Flow Science Incorporated
723 E. Green St., Pasadena, CA 91101
(626) 304-1134 • FAX (626) 304-9427

RECEIVED
8-16-12
SWRCB Clerk

August 16, 2012

State Water Resources Control Board
1001 I St.
Sacramento, CA 95814

Via email: commentletters@waterboards.ca.gov

Subject: Addendum to City of Antioch submittal for the Bay-Delta Workshop 1 – Ecosystem Changes and LSZ
Excerpts from Three Relevant Historical Documents
FSI 064136

Dear Ms. Townsend and Members of the Board,

Our previous letter (dated August 7, 2012) provided information demonstrating that the Delta was historically a freshwater ecosystem (prior to about 1918). In addition, prior testimony (March 22, 2010) included three relevant historical documents that clearly indicate that the Delta was historically fresh. We are resubmitting relevant excerpts from these three documents, since the information regarding the historical freshwater nature of the Delta is important for the Board to consider. These excerpts are attached and are listed below:

- Excerpts from a report by Thomas Means (1928): "Salt Water Problem", pages 9, 10 and 57.
- Excerpts from the Department of Public Works (DPW) (1931) Report: "Variation and Control of Salinity in Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Upper San Francisco Bay", pages 22 and 60.
- Excerpts from the DWR (1960) Report: "Delta Water Facilities", page 13.

To facilitate the Board's review we have also provided excerpts of relevant passages from these documents, as follows:

"Under natural conditions, Carquinez Straits marked, approximately, the boundary between salt and fresh water in the upper San Francisco Bay and delta region of the two tributary rivers – the Sacramento and San Joaquin. Ordinarily salt water was present below the straits and fresh water was present above. Native vegetation in the tide marshes was predominantly of salt water types around San Pablo Bay and of fresh water types around Suisun Bay." (Means, 1928, pg. 9).

In response to salt intrusion into the Delta in the dry years of 1918, 1920, 1924 and 1926, Means writes referring to the previous decade (i.e., 1918 through 1928), "It is probable, should all streams be running in a natural way, that salt water would have penetrated no farther in this extremely dry period than Antioch, and then only for a few days at a time." (Means, 1928, pg. 10, emphasis added).

"…salt water under natural conditions did not penetrate higher upstream than the mouth of the river, except in the driest years and then only for afew days at a time, …" (Means, 1928, pg. 10).

The first four points in the Summary of Means (1928, pg. 57) were:

1. "Carquinez Strait marked approximately the boundary between salt and fresh water under natural conditions.
2. Prior to diversions for irrigation, Suisun Bay was brackish in late summer and salt water may have penetrated as far as Antioch, but only for a few days at a time in years of lowest run-off.
3. If the water now diverted for irrigation and held in storage were released, natural conditions would again be brought about.
4. The dry year of 1918, in which the urge of war had encouraged heavy plantings of rice and other crops in the Sacramento Valley, resulted in penetration of salt water into the Delta for a longer time and to a greater distance upstream than ever known before."

"The dry years of 1917 to 1919, combined with increased upstream irrigation diversions, especially for rice culture in the Sacramento Valley, had already given rise to invasions of salinity into the upper bay and lower delta channels of greater extent and magnitude than had ever been known before." (DPW, 1931, pg. 22)

"From 1880 to 1920, Pittsburg (formerly Black Diamond) obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from New York Slough [near Pittsburg at the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers] offshore." (DPW, 1931, pg. 60)

"From early days, Antioch has obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from the San Joaquin River immediately offshore from the city… However, conditions were fairly satisfactory in this respect until 1917, when the increased degree and duration of saline invasion began to result in the water becoming too brackish for domestic use during considerable periods in the summer and fall." (DPW, 1931, pg. 60)

DWR found that freshwater (defined as chloride concentrations less than 350 ppm) was available at San Joaquin at Antioch 88% of the time under "natural" conditions. This had decreased to 73% by 1920 and 49% by 1960 (DWR, 1960, pg. 13. Percentages estimated from figure on right side of page 13.).

We respectfully request that this letter and the attached documents be included in the administrative record for the Bay-Delta Workshop 1 – Ecosystem Changes and LSZ.

Sincerely,

Al Preston, Ph.D., P.E.
Senior Scientist

Frank

SALT WATER PROBLEM

SAN FRANCISCO BAY *and* DELTA *of* SACRAMENTO *and* SAN JOAQUIN RIVERS

APRIL, 1928

THOMAS H. MEANS, *Consulting Engineer*
216 PINE STREET , SAN FRANCISCO, CALIFORNIA

PENETRATION OF SALT WATER IN UPPER BAY AND LOWER RIVER REGION

Under natural conditions, Carquinez Straits marked, approximately, the boundary between salt and fresh water in the upper San Francisco Bay and delta region of the two tributary rivers—the Sacramento and San Joaquin. Ordinarily salt water was present below the straits and fresh water was present above. Native vegetation in the tide marshes was predominantly of salt water types around San Pablo Bay and of fresh water types around Suisun Bay.

In tidal waters, into which run fresh water streams of variable flow, there is an ebb and flow of salt water and the zone of mixing will move up and down stream as the fresh water flow increases and decreases. For short intervals in late summer of years of minimum flow, salt water penetrated the lower river and delta region, and in wet seasons the upper bay was fresh, part of the time, to the Golden Gate. This variation in quality of water was not, however, of sufficient duration to affect the characteristic vegetation growth of the regions on each side of the straits, nor to change the designation of Suisun Bay as ordinarily a fresh water body and San Francisco Bay as salt water.

The works of man have changed conditions in many ways. The most important changes have been brought about gradually,—so slowly as to be hardly noticeable. The dry season of 1918,—when large summer diversions for irrigation in the Sacramento Valley resulted in the sudden penetration of salt water farther upstream than ever known before, at such an early period in summer,—first brought the salt water problem to public notice. The slow effects of increasing diversions in previous years had escaped notice, but were brought prominently to the attention of the inhabitants of the upper bay and delta regions in this year. Since 1918, the dry years of 1920, 1924 and 1926 have more convincingly demonstrated the importance of the salt water problem.

An accurate picture of natural conditions is not possible, because no records have been collected on which such a picture can be based, but very close approximations can be made. The log of the distance traveled by the water barge of the California Hawaiian Sugar Company in going upstream to obtain fresh water has been kept since 1908. These figures give the means of determining approximately the conditions during that period. In 1908 irrigation had been extensively developed in both valleys and conditions then were not natural. For an estimate of earlier conditions we must go to the stream flow records of the tributary streams before important diversions are taken out.

It is the practice of the Sugar Company to send the barge upstream until water of approximately 50 to 70 parts per million chlorine is reached. The crew of the barge are equipped with apparatus by which water is analyzed until this degree of purity is reached. Since trips are made nearly every day during the summer months, the record is a very good indication of the point reached by salt water. A summary of the complete records shows the fluctuation of the line between fresh and salt water. Records of the Sugar Company are attached. (Table 1.)

The Sugar Company requires water of great purity. For irrigation, domestic or ordinary industrial uses, water of a lesser degree of purity may be used. A comparison of the point where the Sugar Company's barge is filled with the point where the remaining uses could be satisfied, indicates that from five to ten miles downstream from the place where the barge turns, water could be obtained satisfactory for domestic supply. Making an allowance of 7½ miles in the average records, we find that an average flow of 5,000 second feet in both streams will maintain fresh water at Collinsville; 7,000 second feet will maintain fresh water at the San Francisco-Sacramento ferry.

If we sum up the flow of the important tributaries of the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers at the points where these streams leave the mountains and assume that this flow under natural conditions would have reached the head of the Suisun Bay, we will find that at no time in the past ten years would the average monthly flow have been less than 5,100 second feet. It is probable, should all streams be running in a natural way, that salt water would have penetrated no farther in this extremely dry period than Antioch, and then only for a few days at a time.

It is not possible to make a more detailed study of this condition without making a number of assumptions as to speed of flow from the gaging stations to the head of the bay, and there is little accurate information on which the assumptions may be made. The definite statement that salt water under natural conditions did not penetrate higher upstream than the mouth of the river, except in the driest years and then only for a few days at a time, is warranted. (See Table 2 for monthly flow of tributary streams.)

At present salt water reaches Antioch every year, in two-thirds of the years running further upstream. It is to be expected that it will continue to do so in future, even in years of greatest runoff. In other words, the penetration of salt water has become a permanent phenomenon in the lower river region.

CAUSE OF CHANGE IN SALT WATER CONDITIONS

The cause of this change in the salt water condition is due almost entirely to the works of man. If natural changes have had any effect, it is too small to be measured. The most important natural condition is the sequence of dry and wet periods. Since 1917 the State has experienced dry years with low runoff in nearly all streams. During this period two years have exceeded normal stream flow in some streams (1921 and 1927). In each of these years excessive salinity (over 100 parts chlorine per 100,000) was present at Antioch about two months.

Irrigation

Storage and diversion of water have been the principal causes of salinity increase in the upper bay country. The area irrigated varies from year to year; in 1926 the acreage of lands on the floor of the valley was approximately as follows:

Estimate of Diversions and Area Irrigated 1926—Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys, Not Including Mountain Areas

	Acre Feet Diverted	Acres Irrigated
Sacramento and tributaries above Sacramento, including rice, 128,439 acres	1,644,973	235,995
Delta uplands	146,906	53,649
Delta area		264,479
San Joaquin Valley estimated	2,100,000	700,000
	3,891,879	1,254,123

In addition to this area on the valley floor, there is a large acreage in the mountains which uses water from the streams tributary to the rivers that drain through Suisun Bay. The acreage irrigated in the mountains is not so accurately known as the area on the valley floor, but it is large and, particularly in low flow season, very

SUMMARY

1. Carquinez Strait marked approximately the boundary between salt and fresh water under natural conditions.
2. Prior to diversions for irrigation, Suisun Bay was brackish in late summer and salt water may have penetrated as far as Antioch, but only for a few days at a time in years of lowest run-off.
3. If the water now diverted for irrigation and held in storage were released, natural conditions would again be brought about.
4. The dry year of 1918, in which the urge of war had encouraged heavy plantings of rice and other crops in the Sacramento Valley, resulted in penetration of salt water into the Delta for a longer time and to a greater distance up-stream than ever known before.
5. Examination of available information shows that the yearly increased diversion of water which had been going on since irrigation commenced in the valleys of California, had been gradually affecting the movements of salt water. This slow effect was hardly noticed until 1918.
6. Irrigation and storage are not solely responsible for the influx of salt water. The load of hydraulic mining debris deposited in the streams draining the Sierra Nevadas is a minor factor in the problem. As the sediment moves down-stream the tidal prism is changed and the movement of water is affected.
7. Leveeing and reclamation of marsh lands, around the bays and in the delta region, have had a slight effect upon tidal movements. The net effect of leveeing marsh land has been to decrease the tendency of salt water to flow up-stream.
8. Leveeing of basin lands and diversion of floods through by-pass channels has had an important effect in sending floods rapidly to tide water and in reducing the late summer flow of water which under natural conditions was stored and slowly released from basins.
9. Dredging, particularly in lower portions of the rivers and in the navigation channels of San Pablo Bay, has increased the tendency for salt water to flow up-stream. Dredging in Suisun Bay and in the deep water channels to Stockton may have the same tendency. All increases in channel depth and in straightening of approach have a tendency to increase up-stream flow of salt water, though a quantitative estimate of this tendency cannot be made.
10. Irrigation now diverts the entire low flow of all streams entering the San Joaquin Valley. The only flows reaching tide water in late summer and early fall are return waters—seepage from irrigation.
11. Pumping plants on the west side of the San Joaquin Valley, lifting water to the west side slopes, now divert more water during late summer than enters tide-levels from the river. The San Joaquin delta under present conditions is dependent in late summer of dry years on flow from the Sacramento River. Additional pumping plants are being installed and there will be a greater tendency in the future than in the past for salt water to flow up-stream into the delta channels.
12. Irrigation in the Sacramento Valley in late summer diverts practically all the flow of streams entering the valley floor. The flow of the river at Sacramento, the head of tide water, is now largely return seepage or waste from canals. The low flow at Sacramento was 500 second feet in 1920; 2750 in 1921;

City of Antioch
Supporting Document
March 22, 2010

STATE OF CALIFORNIA
DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS

PUBLICATIONS OF THE
DIVISION OF WATER RESOURCES
EDWARD HYATT, State Engineer

Reports on State Water Plan Prepared Pursuant to Chapter 832, Statutes of 1929

BULLETIN No. 27

VARIATION AND CONTROL OF SALINITY IN SACRAMENTO-SAN JOAQUIN DELTA AND UPPER SAN FRANCISCO BAY

1931

municipal and agricultural use in the upper bay region will necessitate the importation of supplies from some suitable source to supplement the local water resources which are capable of economic development. The nearest source of supply would be the lower Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers. The studies of water supply, yield and demand in the operation of the initial and ultimate developments of the State Water Plan show that most of the water supply required to be imported to the upper San Francisco Bay region could be furnished from this source. Therefore, the industrial, municipal and agricultural developments adjacent to Suisun and San Pablo bays are directly interested in the investigation of salinity, and particularly in the determination of a means of controlling saline invasion in such a way that water supplies now available or hereafter made available in the lower Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers would be maintained fresh at all times for diversion to supply the future needs of the upper bay region.

Previous Investigations.

The first investigations of salinity by the State were made in the fall of 1916 when a preliminary study and a few samples and analyses of the water were made by the State Water Commission. At this time, the potential seriousness of the salinity problem began to be recognized. Again in 1918 and 1919 some samples and analyses of the water at Antioch were made by the State Board of Health and the State Water Commission. However, the investigation of salinity in the upper bay and delta channels was not started on any extensive scale until 1920. The dry years of 1917 to 1919, combined with increased upstream irrigation diversions, especially for rice culture in the Sacramento Valley, had already given rise to invasions of salinity into the upper bay and lower delta channels of greater extent and magnitude than had ever been known before. At the beginning of 1920, it was evident that another dry year was impending which might result in serious water shortage and a possibly greater saline invasion. Accordingly, in February 1920, the State Water Commission and the State Engineer in cooperation with an organization of the delta land owners, designated the River Lands Association, arranged a cooperative program for a detailed investigation of the salinity conditions. Funds were provided partly by the State and partly by the River Lands Association. The State Water Commission furnished most of the personnel and equipment. Actual field work was started on May 25, 1920. Salinity observation stations, 28 in number, were established at various points in the delta channels and a regular schedule initiated for sampling of water. The samples were tested for salinity in terms of chlorine content by standard titration methods. The water samples were generally taken about every two days at about the time of high tide. In addition to these regular observation stations, a few special surveys were made to determine the variation of salinity through a tidal cycle and also the variation with depth, but these were not extensive enough to come to any definite conclusions. However, it was discovered that the highest degree of salinity usually occurred about one and one-half to two hours following high-high tide and the minimum salinity about the same time after low-low tide. In addition to the investigations made by the State in 1920, a large amount of additional investigational work was done by not greatly increase the expense of cooling water to the industries and the actual cost per 1000 gallons is small. Over 80 per cent of the total amount of water used by industries in the upper bay region is for cooling and condensing purposes. The use of saline water from the bay channels for cooling and condensing is satisfactory and little, if any, advantage would be gained if fresh water were available for this purpose.

From 1880 to 1920, Pittsburg (formerly Black Diamond) obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal water supply from New York Slough offshore. Although the records show that the water became too brackish to be suitable for domestic use during certain periods in the summer and fall months even before 1917 (See Table 34 for record of salinity, 1910 to 1916), the degree and duration of salinity greatly increased from 1917 on and necessitated the provision of a new source of supply. After providing temporary expedients, including the hauling of water in barges filled at points upstream where fresh water was available, the use of the river as a source of domestic and municipal water supply was discontinued in 1920 and since that time the supply has been obtained from local wells. From early days, Antioch has obtained all or most of its domestic and municipal supply from the San Joaquin River immediately offshore from the city. This supply also has always been affected to some extent by saline invasion with the water becoming brackish during certain periods in the late summer and early fall months. However, conditions were fairly satisfactory in this respect until 1917, when the increased degree and duration of saline invasion began to result in the water becoming too brackish for domestic use during considerable periods in the summer and fall. To meet this change in conditions, Antioch finally constructed a reservoir which is filled with fresh water from the river in the winter and spring and which is designed to supply the city during the period of the year when the water in the river is too brackish for municipal use.

The remaining cities and towns in the upper bay region have obtained fresh-water supplies from various local sources such as surface streams and wells and hence have not been affected by recent changes in salinity conditions. One public utility, serving the cities and towns of Contra Costa County from Pittsburg to Oleum as well as several industrial plants, has recently completed a new water supply development, pumping water from the lower river near Mallard Slough about two miles west of Pittsburg and piping the same to a storage reservoir at Clyde just south of Bay Point. Water is pumped when fresh and free from saline invasion and the storage capacity is designed to supply the demands during the remainder of the year when the water at the intake is too salty for fresh-water purposes.

The marshlands adjacent to Suisun Bay, especially the portion thereof in the upper half of the bay, have been affected to some extent by the more prolonged invasions of salinity of high degree since 1917. Although the area farmed is relatively small in extent, comprising only 5000 acres in 1929, water suitable in quality for irrigation has been available for much shorter periods during the last ten to fifteen years than in former years. This not only has curtailed irrigation diversions to crops, but also has limited the development of these marshlands because of the lack of availability for a sufficient period of time of fresh

City of Antioch
Supporting Document
March 22, 2010

John A. Wilson

Preliminary Edition

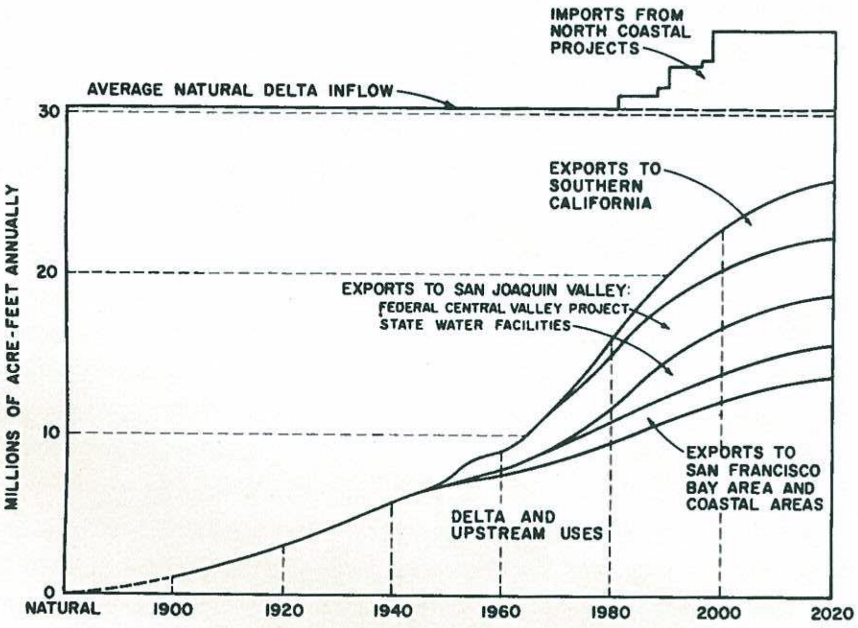
Bulletin No. 76
DELTA WATER FACILITIES

EDMUND G. BROWN
Governor
State of California

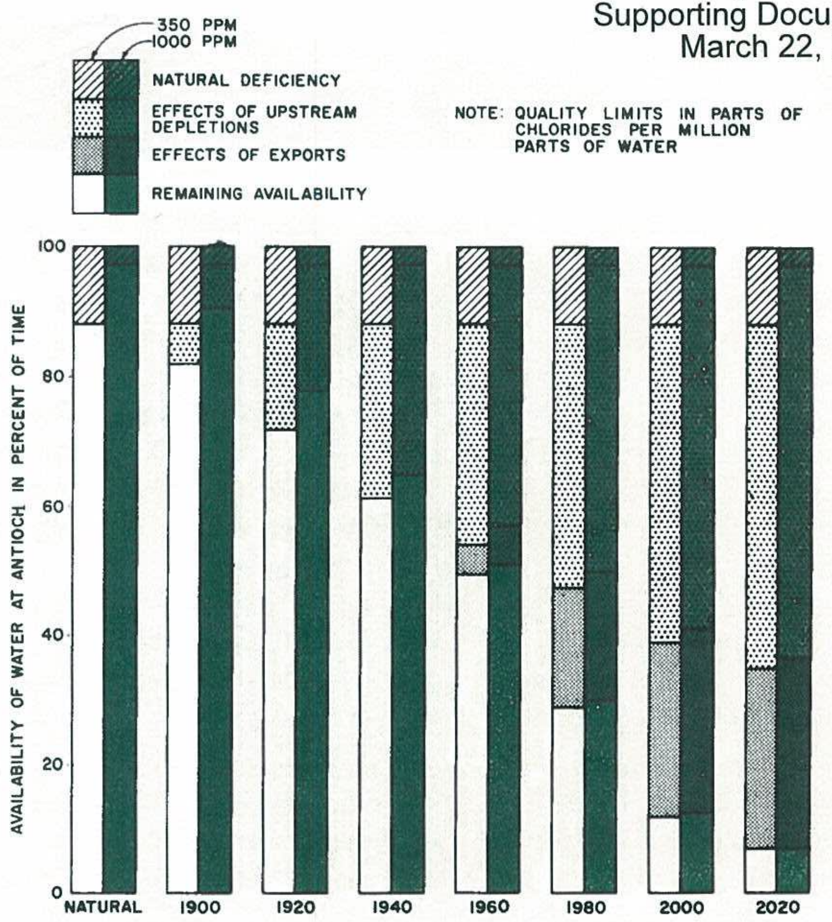
December 1960

HARVEY O. BANKS
Director
Department of Water Resources

The natural availability of good quality water in the Delta is directly related to the amount of surplus water which flows to the ocean. The graph to the right indicates the historic and projected availability of water in the San Joaquin River at Antioch containing less than 350 and 1,000 parts chlorides per million parts water, under long-term average runoff and *without* specific releases for salinity control. It may be noted that even under natural conditions, before any significant upstream water developments, there was a deficiency of water supplies within the specified quality limits. It is anticipated that, without salinity control releases, upstream depletions by the year 2020 will have reduced the availability of water containing less than 1,000 ppm chlorides by about 60 percent, and that exports will have caused an additional 30 percent reduction.



USE OF DELTA WATER SUPPLIES



DELTA WATER QUALITY WITHOUT SALINITY CONTROL

The magnitude of the past and anticipated future uses of water in areas tributary to the Delta, except the Tulare Lake Basin, is indicated in the diagram to the left. It may be noted that, while the present upstream use accounts for reduction of natural inflow to the Delta by almost 25 percent, upstream development during the next 60 years will deplete the inflow by an additional 20 percent. By that date about 22 percent of the natural water supply reaching the Delta will be exported to areas of deficiency by local, state, and federal projects. In addition, economical development of water supplies will necessitate importation of about 5,000,000 acre-feet of water seasonally to the Delta from north coastal streams for transfer to areas of deficiency.